



RAF DRILL AND CEREMONIAL

Approved by:

Air Officer Administration Headquarters Personnel and Training Command

INTRODUCTION AP 818

1. Drill is a powerful aid to discipline. It develops a sense of corporate pride, alertness, precision and readiness to obey orders instantly. Good drill in aircraft is directly fostered by the habit of drilling smartly on parade. Personnel are better prepared for combat and any work they have to do – on the ground or in the air – if fit and mentally alert. Thus, smartness on parade is not only a sign of good discipline, but a basic factor in raising the standard of performance of all Service duties.
2. The immediate reaction to orders shown by highly disciplined personnel derives directly from the performance of carefully conceived close-order exercises. It is this property that will enable a unit to keep cohesion and efficiency under a strain that would normally break it, thus enhancing the fighting unit.
3. This introduction is deliberately the same as in previous editions.

AP818

CHAPTER LIST

Part One - Drill

Chapter No	Title	Subject Matter
1	Principles	Sequence of Instruction / Commands / Timings / Aids to Instruction / Notes for Inspecting Officers
2	Foot Drill At the Halt	Lesson Plans with Photographs
3	Foot Drill In Quick Time	Lesson Plans with Photographs
4	Foot Drill In Slow Time	Lesson Plans with Photographs
5	Arms Drill	Lesson Plans with Photographs
6	Sword Drill	Introduction / Lesson Plans with Photographs
7	Stick Drill - Basic	Stick Drill (Closed) Lesson Plans with Photographs
8	Funeral Drill	Lesson Plans with Photographs (Arms & Sword)
9	Colour/Standard Drill	Lesson Plans with Photographs

Part Two - Ceremonial

Chapter No	Title	Subject Matter
1	Paying Compliments	Reasons / Occasions for Saluting / Service Ranks
2	Cheering	Tradition / Commands
3	Squad Drill	Format / Commands
4	Flight Drill	Format / Commands / Diagrams
5	Squadron Drill	Format / Commands / Diagrams
6	Wing Drill	Format / Commands / Diagrams
7	Parades - General Instructions	Parade Ground / The Review / Diagrams Key / Spectators
8	Review of a Flight	Format / Commands
9	Review of a Squadron	Format / Commands
10	Review of a Wing	Format / Commands
11	Guards of Honour	Half & Royal Guard Format / Commands / Diagrams
12	Queen's Colours and Sqn Standards	Marching On & Off Parade / Ceremonial in Church
13	Queen's Colours - Presentation	Presentation
14	Squadron Standards - Presentation	Presentation
15	Colours & Standards - Handing Over	Format for Squadron Reformation and Disbandment
16	The RAF Ensign	Handling / Flagstaff / Rank Flags
17	Royal Standards	Handling / Ordering
18	Freedom of Entry to a City or Town	Initial & Subsequent Parades
19	Service Funerals	Planning, Preparation, Ceremonial & Bearer Party Drill
20	Services at Local War Memorials	Order of Events

Part Three - Public Duties

Chapter No	Title	Subject Matter
1	Stick Drill - Advanced	Stick Drill (Open) Lesson Plans with Photographs
2	Sentry Drill	Duties of Single & Double Sentries including Patrolling
3	State Ceremonial	Street Lining / Carpet Lining / Step Guards
4	Forming	Change of Direction by Forming
5	London Public Duties	Changing the Guard at Buckingham Palace

FOREWORD

BACKGROUND

1. The 7th Edition of AP818 has been compiled against the requirement for up-to-date instructional techniques, the increasing level of joint ceremonial at unit level and a revision of all chapters to reflect current practice.

USEAGE

2. The AP818 is split into 3 parts for ease of use. Part 1 is for use by drill instructors and contains lesson plans. Part 2 contains the ceremonial chapters for use in the formulation of parades and ceremonial and Part 3 is for the use of units employed on Public Duties (primarily the Queen's Colour Squadron).

3. There is no necessity to print out the AP818 from the CD ROM; however, for ease of reference Part 2 may be printed (single-sided) and bound in a 2/4 hole A4 ring binder. Instructors should only print off lesson plans from Part 1 as and when required.

CONDUCT OF DRILL AND CEREMONIAL

4. The instruction of drill movements is clearly defined and must be taught by qualified drill instructors who have attended either the RAF Drill Instructor's course or the All Arms Drill course at the Guards' Depot.

5. Ceremonial will depend upon a number of variable factors; manpower, time for rehearsals, the size of the parade ground and the nature of the event. The building block of the parade is the Review of the Squadron and this chapter should be used as the basis for all squadron parades. The preliminary drill can be found in the chapters on drill in Part 2 and additional ceremonial, such as the presentation of a squadron standard, must be added to the basic format of the review.

MAJOR CHANGES FOR 7TH EDITION

6. The major changes for the 7th Edition are as follows:

a. **Part 1 – Drill.**

- (1) Instructional chapters are in lesson plan format.
- (2) L85 rifle replaces the SLR.
- (3) Word of command “**SHUN**” replaces “**ATTENTION**”.
- (4) Alternate Stand Easy position is introduced for long parades.

(5) Change Step in Mark Time – command to be given as the right foot strikes the ground.

(6) Forward in Slow Time from Mark Time – the command “**FORWARD**” is to be given as one word as the left heel strikes the ground, when moving from Mark Time to the Slow March.

b. **Part 2 – Ceremonial.** All the relevant chapters have been revised to account for L85 Arms Drill and the word of command “**SHUN**”. In addition the following major changes have been made:

(1) Position of Squadron Commander. The position of the squadron commander has been standardised for all parades with a squadron standard or Queen’s Colour. With the squadron in Line of Flights the squadron commander is to be positioned 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 flight (with 2 or 3 flights on parade).

(2) Review of a Squadron – Chapter 9. The formation used for the Review of a Squadron has changed from Column of Flights to Line of Flights to reflect current practice.

(3) Colours and Standards – Chapter 12. Ceremonial for Colours and Standards in Church has been updated.

(4) Handing Over Colours and Standards – Chapter 15. Parade formats for the disbandment and reformation of a squadron are included.

(5) Freedom Parades – Chapter 18. A format for an initial freedom parade is given.

(6) Service Funerals – Chapter 19. The planning, preparation and ceremonial for a Service funeral are detailed.

c. **Part 3 – Public Duties.** All aspects of State Ceremonial have been moved to Part 3.

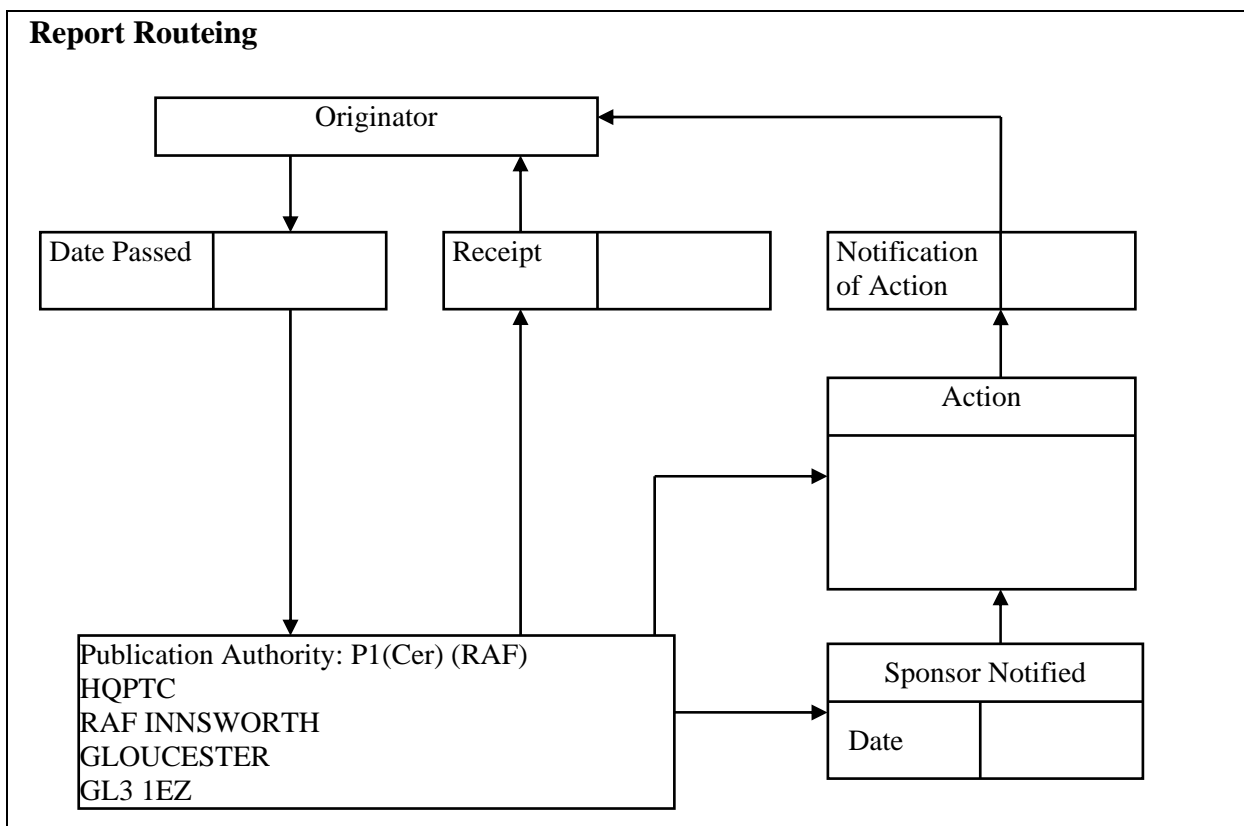
RECOMMENDATIONS

7. Proposed amendments or recommended changes to this document should be made as an Unsatisfactory Features Report (UFR). An endorsed copy of the UFR should be submitted to P1(Cer)(RAF) at HQ PTC. A UFR is at pages vi and vii for this purpose.

Unsatisfactory Feature(s) Report Air Publications

Originating Unit	
Title/Address _____ _____ _____ _____	Reference _____
	Date _____

Air Publication			
Publication No	818	Amdt/Issue/Revision Date*	_____
Title	RAF DRILL AND CEREMONIAL		
Elements Affected	_____		



*Delete as appropriate

PART 1 - Originators Report Unsatisfactory Feature(s)

--

Recommended Change(s) (Include continuation sheet(s) if necessary)

Photocopies of the original document, with amendments marked in red ink are acceptable.

Signature	Rank and Name	Telephone	Appointment

Unit Specialist Officer's Remarks

Signature	Rank and Name	Telephone	Appointment

PART 2 - Publication Authority: P1(Cer) (RAF) HQPTC

- # # Tick as appropriate
- # Interim report issued, Ref _____ Dated _____
- # AIL issued, formal amendment will follow.
- # Recommendations will be actioned in Amdt/Issue/Revision* _____, estimated date _____
- # Recommendations NOT/PARTLY* agreed, see remarks below/enclosed*
- * Delete as appropriate

Remarks

Signature	Rank and Name	Telephone	Appointment

DEFINITIONS

ALIGNMENT

Any straight line on which a body of personnel is formed, or is to form.

ARMED PARTY

An armed party is a party armed with swords, guns, rifles, sidearms or a party consisting of 2 or more armoured vehicles. Also, a church party is considered an armed party even if arms are not carried.

BLANK FILE

An incomplete file. In 2 (or 3) ranks a front rank person only; in 3 ranks, with front and rear persons only.

CHANGE OF POSITION

The movement when personnel take up a new alignment.

COLUMN

Unit in parallel and successive alignments at a distance from one another equal to their own frontage.

CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS

A squadron with its flights in line on parallel and successive alignments at a fixed distance.

CLOSE COLUMN OF SQUADRONS

A wing with its squadrons in line on parallel and successive alignments at a fixed distance.

CLOSE ORDER (3 RANKS)

The formation of a squad or unit in three ranks, one behind the other at a distance of one pace of 30 in/ 75cm between ranks. The ranks are termed the “front rank”, “centre rank” and “rear rank”; each person in the centre and rear ranks covering the corresponding person in the front rank. To achieve this position from the “Open Order” the “centre rank” stands fast and the “front rank” and “rear rank” moves.

CLOSE ORDER (2 RANKS)

The formation of a squad or unit in 2 ranks, at a distance of 2 paces of 75 cm/30 in between ranks. The ranks are termed the “front rank” and “rear rank” and each person in the rear rank covers the corresponding person in the front rank. To achieve this position from the “Open Order” the “front rank” stands fast and the “rear rank” moves.

COLUMN OF ROUTE

A column of threes with not more than 3 persons abreast in any part of the column, including officers and supernumeraries. This is the normal formation for personnel marching on a road.

COLUMN OF THREES

A succession of personnel standing side by side in threes, covering.

COVERING	The act of one or more personnel or formed bodies being placed directly in rear of another.
DEPTH	The space occupied from front to rear by a body of personnel.
DIRECTING FLANK	The flank by which units march and dress.
DIRECTING BODY	The squadron, flight, file or individual responsible for maintaining direction in a drill movement.
DISTANCE	The space between personnel or units measured from front to rear, measured from heel to heel. In the case of units it is measured from the heels of the front rank of one unit to the heels of the front rank of the next unit.
DRESSING	The act of taking up alignment correctly. It may be “normal” at an arms length between individuals or “without intervals” at one elbow distance (with the left hand clenched and placed on top of the left hip).
DRILL	The means whereby a body of personnel is controlled and directed efficiently, through the executive command of one man, towards the attainment of the aim.
ENSIGN	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Royal Air Force flag is an ensign (ie The Royal Air Force Ensign). 2. The officer appointed (usually the most junior) to bear a Queen’s Colour for his unit or formation.
FILE	Any person of the front rank together with the personnel covering immediately behind.
FLANK	Either side of a formed body, as opposed to its front or rear.
FLIGHT	A sub-unit, 2 or more of which comprise a squadron. Equates in size approximately to a naval or army platoon.
FORMATION	A number of units grouped together under one commander.
FRONT	The direction in which personnel or units are facing or moving at any given time.
FRONTAGE	The extent of ground covered laterally by a body or bodies of personnel.

GUARD OF HONOUR	A parade unit used to present formal ceremonial compliments to royal or presidential (by guard not exceeding 100 personnel) and other particularly distinguished (by a guard not exceeding 50 personnel) persons.
GUIDE	A person placed on the left and/or right of a line to maintain direction and alignment.
HALF GUARD	A colloquial term describing a Guard of Honour of not more than 50 personnel.
INCLINE	The movement by which direction is faced or gained to the front and flank simultaneously.
IN FILE	A succession of personnel, covering one behind the other.
INTERVAL	The lateral space between personnel or units on the same alignment measured between adjacent flanks.
LINE	Personnel or units formed on the same alignment.
LINE OF SQUADRONS IN CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS	A wing with its squadrons in close column of flights at 10 paces interval between squadrons.
MARKER	A person placed in position to mark a point where the flank of a squad or unit is to rest.
OPEN ORDER (3 RANKS)	The formation of a unit or squad in 3 ranks, one behind the other, at a distance of 3 paces of 30 in (75 cm) between ranks. To achieve this position from “Close Order” the “centre rank” stands fast and the “front rank” and “rear rank” moves.
OPEN ORDER (2 RANKS)	The formation of a unit or squad in 2 ranks, one behind the other, at a distance of 3 paces of 30 in (75 cm) between ranks. To achieve this position from “Close Order” the “front rank” stands fast and the “rear rank” moves.
OUTER FLANK	The opposite flank to the inner or directing flank.
PACE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A measured distance on foot. 2. The rate of movement when marching.
PARADE	A formation of 2 or more units.

PARADE COMMANDER	The officer in actual command of all the personnel on a parade (ground).
PATROL	A small party of personnel usually commanded by an NCO carrying out some specific duty such as visiting sentries, inspecting an area or building as guards etc.
PERAMBULATE	Officers walking as individuals or pairs, just off the parade ground, prior to falling in.
PICQUET / PICKET	A party of personnel usually commanded by an NCO, detailed to carry out some specific duty, eg guard, fire picquet etc.
PIVOT FLANK	The flank on which a unit pivots when changing direction.
PIVOT GUIDE	A guide on a pivot flank of a unit.
QUARTER GUARD	A ceremonial guard which may be mounted at the entrance to a unit to pay compliments as required. (The term should not be confused with a Guard of Honour). A Quarter Guard is to consist of one officer, one SNCO and 6 or 8 junior ranks formed up in 2 ranks.
RANK	A line of personnel formed up side by side.
REVIEW	A ceremonial parade mounted for the specific purpose of honouring a particular distinguished person.
ROYAL GUARD	A colloquial term used to describe a Guard of Honour of not more than 100 personnel.
SECTION	A sub-division of a flight (especially RAF Regiment).
SQUAD	A small body of personnel formed for drill or working party.
SQUADRON	A unit consisting of two or more flights (sub-units). Equates in size approximately with a naval or army company.
SUB-UNIT	The smallest body of personnel under their own officer or NCO commander, as part of a unit.
SUPERNUMERARIES	Additional officers and NCOs of a unit who, for parade purposes are not fulfilling an executive role.

SUPERNUMERARY RANK	An extra rank composed of supernumerary officers or SNCOs. The supernumerary rank of NCOs will be 2 paces of 30 in (75 cm) to the rear of the rear rank. That of officers will be three paces of 30 in (75 cm) to the rear of the rear rank.
TO CANT	To incline or tilt an object; to set at an angle.
TO DRESS	To take up a correct alignment.
UNIT	A group of 2 or more sub-units under a commander.
UNIT OF FORMATION	The expression used in drill to describe the squadron or flight on which a change of direction is based.
WHEELING	A movement by which a body of personnel bring forward a flank on a fixed or moving pivot.
WING	A formation consisting of 2 or more squadrons or units. Equates in size approximately with a naval division or army battalion.

PART 1 - CHAPTER 1

PRINCIPLES

OBJECT OF THE MANUAL

1. The purpose of the manual is to set out the correct procedures for RAF drill and ceremonial. The only drill movements which are to be taught in the Service are those laid down in this manual. Exceptions to this ruling can be made when operating on a Dual or Tri-Service parade when the traditions of the senior Service take precedence. Additionally it may be necessary to modify some of the procedures for ceremonial contained in this publication having regard to the size of the parade area, the number of personnel available and the time allowed for rehearsals. Limited variations to drill movements may be authorised exclusively for use by The Queen's Colour Squadron.

THE INSTRUCTOR

2. **Qualities of the Instructor.** Drill is exacting and to teach it successfully the instructor must have the following qualities:

- a. *Patience* – never lose your temper.
- b. *Enthusiasm* – you must inspire your squad with a will to learn.
- c. *Consistent Attitude* – set the standard and do not deviate from it.
- d. *Humanity* – understand the squad's problems. Praise readily but do not become familiar, and never humiliate individual members of the squad.
- e. *Strength of Personality* – as a drill instructor you must impress the squad with your personality and always control them fully.

3. **Example.** Recruits imitate their instructors and it is by example that they will learn most. Therefore:

- a. When drilling a squad, stand at Attention.
- b. When moving, march as you would wish your squad to march.
- c. When demonstrating, do so accurately and if the movement is with a rifle, use a rifle and nothing else.
- d. Do not use foul or abusive language.
- e. Be impeccably turned out.
- f. Never exaggerate a movement of drill.

SEQUENCE OF INSTRUCTION

4. The following sequence is to be used:
 - a. Form the Squad.
 - b. Explanation.
 - c. Demonstration.
 - d. Questions.
 - e. Practice, which should be collective, then individual and collective again.

5. **Formation of a Squad.** Bear 2 factors in mind:
 - a. Consider the comfort of the squad. Make sure that they are not looking into the sun or are unnecessarily exposed to the elements.

 - b. Consider the formation in which they will learn most quickly. The following is a guide:

Use	Formation
Foot Drill	Straight Line/Hollow Square
Rifle Exercise	Half Circle
Saluting at the Halt	Three Ranks, Open Order, Inclined to the Right.

6. **Explanation.** Explain what you are about to teach and why it is necessary.

7. **Demonstration.** Broken down as follows:
 - a. Complete demonstration, calling out the words of command.
 - b. Demonstration by numbers, pointing out important details.
 - c. Another complete demonstration.

8. **Questions.** After giving the first demonstration by numbers, ask the squad if they have any questions and do so after each subsequent demonstration by numbers.

9. **Practice.** After each demonstration by numbers, practise the squad in that movement, checking for faults. Finally, after demonstrating the whole movement, practise the squad judging the time.

INSTRUCTIONAL TECHNIQUE

10. To achieve common standards of drill instruction in the Royal Air Force the following instructional techniques are to be used:
 - a. **Regulation Pause.** The regulation pause is equal to 2 beats in Quick Time. When spoken in the course of instruction this pause is represented by the words “LEFT RIGHT”.

 - b. **Movements.** Parts of a drill movement are to be represented by the word

“ONE” except in the few exceptions detailed in Part 1.

SAFETY




11. Before each lesson or drill practice normal safety precautions (NSPs) are to be carried out on rifles. Due regard is to be given to the safe handling of bayonets.

THE WORD OF COMMAND

12. **Words of Command.** All words of command must be clear and powerful since the way in which they are given affects the reaction that they inspire. The word of command is divided into three parts:

- a. *Introductory.* This tells the squad what movements they are about to carry out ie “**Into Line**”.
- b. *Cautionary.* The drawn out and loud reminder to the squad ie “**Right**”.
- c. *Executive.* The high-pitched, sharp command ie “**Turn**”.

Sometimes there is no need for an introductory word of command ie “**For-ward**”. The following are examples of the delivery of a word of command:

Introductory	Cautionary	Executive
		
<i>Voice</i> Informative, clear and level.	<i>Voice</i> Drawn out, loud and falling.	<i>Voice</i> Sudden, sharp and loud.
Example 1 - “Into Line”	“Right”	“Turn”.
Example 2 - No introductory command	“Squadron”	“Halt”.

13. **Timings of Words of Command.** The table at Annex A shows on which foot the executive word of command is given. The cautionary word of command should be consistently drawn out over about the equivalent of 4 paces in Quick Time. There should be a pause between it and the executive word of command as follows:

- a. At the halt – the regulation pause.
- b. In Quick Time – about four paces.
- c. In Slow Time – about three paces.

TIMINGS

14. Drill instructors should know the following rates of marching, and lengths of pace:

a. **Rates of Marching.** The rates of marching are:

- (1) Quick Time - 116 paces to the minute
- (2) Slow Time - 65 paces to the minute.

b. **Lengths of Pace.** The lengths of pace in marching are:

- (1) Quick and Slow Time - 30 in (750 mm)
- (2) Stepping out - 33 in (830 mm)
- (3) Stepping short - 21 in (530 mm)
- (4) Side Pace - 12 in (300 mm).

THE PARADE/CONDUCTING WARRANT OFFICER

15. The Parade/Conducting Warrant Officer is responsible for the organisation, planning and detailed rehearsals of a parade. All personnel junior in rank to the Warrant Officer are to stand at the position of attention whilst addressing or being addressed by him. The Warrant Officer is responsible for attending to any unplanned incidents that may occur. The Warrant Officer is privileged to be free-lance at any stage of a parade subject to his appreciation of the circumstances of the moment. For example the Warrant Officer would not initiate the retrieval of a hat or dropped bayonet at the instant of a General Salute. Indeed there may be circumstances in which the Warrant Officer decides to do nothing at all. Great responsibility rests with the Warrant Officer to foster the smooth completion of a parade by discreet and appropriate handling of unplanned incidents.

Annexes:

- A. Table for Timings and Words of Command.
- B. Aids to Drill Instruction.
- C. Notes for Inspecting Officers.

TABLE FOR TIMINGS AND WORDS OF COMMAND

COMMAND (In alphabetical order)	EXECUTIVE COMMAND IS GIVEN
(a)	(b)
About – TURN(quick time)	When the left heel strikes the ground
About – TURN(slow time)	When the left foot is on the ground
Break into double time	When the right heel strikes the ground
Double – MARCH (from quick time)	
Break into mark time	When the left heel strikes the ground
Mark – TIME(quick time)	
Break into mark time	When the left foot is on the ground
Mark – TIME(slow time)	
Break into quick time	When the right foot strikes the ground
Quick – MARCH (from double time)	
Break into quick time	When the right foot is on the ground
Quick – MARCH (from slow time)	
Break into slow time	When the left heel strikes the ground
Slow – MARCH (from quick time)	
Change – STEP(quick time)	When the right heel strikes the ground
Change – STEP(slow time) (when marching)	When the right foot is on the ground
Change – STEP(quick time)	When the right foot strikes the ground
Change – STEP(slow time) (when marking time)	When the right foot is on the ground
Eyes – LEFT/RIGHT/FRONT(quick time)	When the left heel strikes the ground
Eyes – LEFT/RIGHT/FRONT(slow time)	When the right foot is on the ground
For – WARD(mark time)	When the left foot strikes the ground

Squad/Flight – HALT(double time)	When the left foot strikes the ground
Squad/Flight – HALT(quick time)	When the left heel strikes the ground
Squad/Flight – HALT(slow time)	When the right foot is on the ground
Squad/Flight – HALT(mark time)	When the left foot strikes the ground
Left – TURN(quick time)	When the right heel strikes the ground
Left – TURN(slow time)	When the right foot is on the ground
Left – FORM(quick time)	When the left heel strikes the ground
Left – FORM(slow time)	When the left foot is on the ground
Quick – MARCH	See Note 1
Right – FORM(quick time)	When the right heel strikes the ground
Right – FORM(slow time)	When the right foot is on the ground
Right – TURN(quick time)	When the left heel strikes the ground
Right – TURN(slow time)	When the left foot is on the ground
To the Left/Right/Front – SALUTE(quick time)	When the left heel strikes the ground
To the Left/Right/Front – SALUTE(slow time)	See Note 2
Slow – MARCH	See Note 1
Variations in pace	
Step – OUT/SHORT(quick time)	When the left heel strikes the ground
Step – OUT/SHORT(slow time)	When the left foot is on the ground
Quick – MARCH (from step out/short)	When the left heel strikes the ground
Slow – MARCH (from step out/short)	When the left foot is on the ground

Note 1 To move off with a preceding unit the Squadron or Flight Commander must step off in the correct cadence. To achieve this he must give the word of command “Quick” as the left heel of the unit in front strikes the ground and “March” as the right heel strikes the ground. Thus when the unit behind the preceding unit steps off it will be in step.

Note 2 Officers Saluting with the sword in Slow Time (The Flourish).

AIDS TO DRILL INSTRUCTION

1. **Calling out the Time.** Personnel in the early stages of training should call out the time until considered proficient. They must learn to be still when calling out “**LEFT RIGHT**” for the regulation pause. Calling out the time will enable:
 - a. Every member of a squad to implement the regulation pause.
 - b. The squad to learn to act together.
2. **Time and Pace.** Para 14 of this chapter contains the lengths of pace, rates of marching and timings of movements.
3. **Mechanical Aids.** There are three aids the instructor may use to help obtain accurate and smart drill. They are as follows:
 - a. *The Pace Stick.* The Pace Stick is used to gauge the correct length of pace and to measure the distance between ranks. It is a difficult instrument to wield and perfection in the art of turning it, requires constant practice. The instructor should march beside the leading person of the squad, with the stick open and turning to control the length of pace. The instructor should periodically check the length of pace by marching behind the squad with the Pace Stick open and turning (see separate chapters).
 - b. *The Metronome.* This gives an accurate check on the rate of marching and on the timing of rifle exercises. It can be set to any number of beats per-minute and should be used frequently to maintain uniformity of instruction with regard to timings. The electronic metronome with an LCD readout is replacing the swinging arm version.

c. *The Drum.* When foot drill and rifle exercises are being taught by numbers at the halt, a drummer may be used by the instructor to provide the cue for a movement. Three scenarios are as follows:

(1) The drummer is stationed behind the squad and will judge the regulation pause between the cautionary word of command and the drum-tap. A specimen word of command would sound like this:

“RIFLE EXERCISES, BY NUMBERS, WORKING WITH THE DRUM, SHOULDER ARMS – TAP!” “SQUAD – TAP!” “SQUAD – TAP!”.

The squad will react more sharply to the tap of the drum than they would to the instructor’s word of command.

(2) When foot and rifle exercises are being done at the halt whilst judging the time, station a drummer to the rear of the squad. The drummer should have a metronome (set at 40) and should be far enough behind the squad for them not to hear the tick of the metronome. A specimen word of command would sound like this:

**“RIFLE EXERCISES, WORKING WITH THE DRUM, SLOPE – TAP!”
“TAP!” “TAP!”**

The drummer will judge the regulation pause between the cautionary word of command and his first tap, if this is possible. Thereafter he will tap the drum on every beat of the metronome for the same number of times as there are movements.

(3) To beat the rate of marching, set the metronome to the rate required. The drummer now beats in time with the metronome and the squad stands still and listens. When the instructor is ready to practise his squad he must have the drummer beating the time to the metronome and then give:

“QUICK MARCH”.

NOTES FOR INSPECTING OFFICERS

INTRODUCTION

1. Before drill personnel should be inspected to ensure that:
 - a. They are dressed correctly.
 - b. Their clothing and equipment is serviceable and clean.
 - c. Their weapons are clean and cared for.
 - d. They are alert and healthy.
2. Personnel should be at Attention when inspected, rifles in the shoulder and with bayonets fixed.
3. The Inspecting Officer, Warrant Officer or NCO should be accompanied by the next most senior NCO who should note down any observations made by the Inspecting Officer. An NCO should be posted in front of the squad to see that they stand still and look to their front.

GENERAL IMPRESSION

4. First of all look at the Squad:
 - a. Are they standing correctly to Attention?
 - b. Are they dressing and covering off correctly?
5. Take a quick look at each individual:
 - a. Are personnel clean and shaved?
 - b. Are they standing well?
 - c. Are uniforms clean and pressed? Do they fit?

DETAIL

6. **Head.**
 - a. *No 1 HD Hat.* The No 1 HD Hat is to be clean and is to be worn square on the head with the front of the peak at a level just above the eyes. The cap badge and peak are to be clean. The black mohair band is to be clean and worn with the stitching in the front centre of the cap, in line with the badge.

b. *Beret.* The beret is to be clean and worn so that the band is horizontal around the head and 1 in (2.5 cm) above the eyebrows. Loose cap material is to be drawn down to the right so that the badge is clearly displayed in a position vertically above the left eye. Loose ends of the draw cord are to be secured inside the head band.

c. *Hair.* The hair of the head is to be kept well cut and trimmed. Women's hair is not to fall below the bottom edge of the back of the jacket collar or show below the peak or front of the cap. Beard or whiskers are not to be worn except by personnel with specific permission in writing on medical grounds; personnel so authorised are not normally to appear on ceremonial parades. If a moustache is worn, the upper lip is to be entirely unshaven and the moustache trimmed neatly for length; exaggerated or "handlebar" whiskers are not permitted.

d. *Glasses.* Glasses may be worn on parade with the exception of state ceremonial parades.

7. **Body.**

a. *Neckwear.* The collar is to be clean and pressed.

b. *Tie.* The tie is to be tied as a full Windsor knot. It is not to be tucked in to the shirt-front nor display any pin, brooch or fastener which can be seen.

c. *Buttons.* All buttons are to be sewn on securely so that the crown is uppermost and the eagle horizontal.

d. *Badges.* Rank and other authorised badges are to be worn in accordance with current dress regulations.

e. *Medals/Medal Ribbons.* When orders, decorations, medals or medal ribbons are worn they are to be appropriately worn and correctly positioned in accordance with current dress regulations. Ribbons are to be clean and in good repair. Personnel should be discouraged from burnishing medals as this destroys the minting; it is sufficient that the metal parts be carefully cleaned with mild soapy water.

f. *Pockets.* All pockets are to be worn flat and emptied of bulky objects. Press studs on tunic breast pockets are to be securely fastened.

g. *Trinkets.* No trinkets, ear-rings or unauthorised badges are to be worn on parade. Plain wedding rings may be worn.

h. *White Ceremonial Belt.* The belt is to be fitted so that it will not be pulled down by a bayonet or allow the jacket to ride up underneath it during a parade. The buckle is to be in line with the centre of the body, correctly fastened and polished, when made of brass. The belt may have to have a looser fit on female personnel to avoid distorting the uniform jacket.

- i. *Bayonet.* When carried, the bayonet is to be clean, with the scabbard scrubbed white and worn on the left side of the body over the left buttock. Brass components are to be polished.
 - j. *Trousers.* The trousers are to be pressed correctly and braced so that they break on the second lace hole from the front of the shoe or boot.
 - k. *Footwear.* Boots and shoes are to be clean and in good repair, laced straight across and laces neatly tied.
8. **Rifles.** When rifles are to be inspected, the Inspecting Officer is to ensure that:
- a. The exterior of the rifle is clean and free from rust.
 - b. The magazine and action are clear and in good order.
 - c. The SUSAT is covered when fitted.
 - d. No parts of the rifle are loose or damaged.
 - e. The barrel is to be cleaned and oiled and free from obstruction.
9. **Mourning Bands.** When mourning bands are worn they are to be of black crepe, 3¼ in (8.3 cm) wide, and are to be secured midway between the point of the elbow of the left arm and the shoulder. See QR J196.

SOME DO'S AND DON'TS FOR INSPECTING OFFICERS

10. Do:
- a. Be consistent and impersonal.
 - b. Be decisive and tell the Warrant Officer or NCO who is accompanying you the action that you require.
 - c. Give praise readily.
11. Do not:
- a. Make it a battle between you and them.
 - b. Allow the Warrant Officer or NCO to touch personnel on parade without first stating: "I am going to touch you because....."
 - c. Ridicule or humiliate individual members of the squad.
 - d. Spend a long time in front of each person.

- e. Allow those accompanying you to inspect for you.
- f. Point vaguely at things and expect them to vanish or change colour.

PART 1 - CHAPTER 2

FOOT DRILL AT THE HALT

CONTENTS

LESSON No	TITLE	PAGE No
1	The Stand Easy	1-2-2
2	Stand At Ease	1-2-6
3	Attention	1-2-10
4	Left Turn At The Halt	1-2-15
5	Right Turn At The Halt	1-2-21
6	About Turn At The Halt	1-2-27
7	Left Incline At The Halt	1-2-33
8	Right Incline At The Halt	1-2-39
9	To The Front Salute At the Halt	1-2-45
10	To The Left/Right Salute At The Halt	1-2-51
11	The Fall out/Dismiss At The Halt	1-2-57
12	An Officer On Parade – Dismiss	1-2-62
13	Right Dress/Left Dress and Eyes Front	1-2-68
14	Dressing Without Intervals	1-2-74
15	Open/Close Order March	1-2-80
16	Paces Forward or Rearward March	1-2-84
17	Paces Sideways March	1-2-87
18	The Formation of a Squad/Flight	1-2-91
19	Sizing of a Squad/Flight	1-2-95

LESSON 1 – THE STAND EASY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To Teach the Position of the Stand Easy.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	To introduce you to foot drill the first position we will cover will be the Stand Easy. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to learn the basic position from which all other drill movements originate.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STAND EASY.</p>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is one part to this movement. 2. There is no timing for this movement.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS (Fig 2-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STAND EASY.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The limbs, head and body may be moved, but not the feet. If the feet are moved the dressing may be lost. Slouching, talking and unnecessary movements are not to be allowed. 2. The back of the left hand is to be against the top of the buttocks, fingers and thumb extended. The back of the right hand is to be in the palm of the left hand with the thumb of the right hand crossed over and on the outside of the left thumb. 3. Heels apart 12 in (30 cm), toes pointing outwards 45 degrees. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure no unnecessary movement. 2. Heels 12 in apart. 3. Toes pointing out at 45 degrees. 4. Ensure the hands are in the correct position. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 2-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STAND EASY.		
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: SQUAD STAND EASY.	Students to execute the movement.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Front View

Fig 2-1



Rear View

Fig 2-1

THE STAND EASY

LESSON 2 – THE STAND AT EASE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To Teach the Stand At Ease.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly at Stand Easy in a straight line.
Revision	Stand Easy.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Stand At Ease. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to learn the basic position from which all other drill movements originate.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS (Fig 2-2).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body is braced with the weight equally over both legs, which are braced. 2. The arms are straight and forced to their fullest extent down behind the back. 3. The back of the right hand is in the palm of the left hand, with the fingers straight and extended. 4. The thumb of the right hand is crossed over the left. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Arms to the rear at their fullest extent. 2. Both knees are braced. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 2-2).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



Front View

Fig 2-2



Rear View

Fig 2-2

STAND AT EASE

LESSON 3 – ATTENTION

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To Teach the Position of Attention.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood At Ease in a straight line.
Revision	Stand At Ease.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Attention from the position of Stand At Ease. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to learn the basic position from which all drill movements originate.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS (Fig 2-3).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Whilst keeping the right foot still and the leg braced, bend the left knee raising the thigh parallel to the ground. Bring the left foot smartly into a position alongside the right foot. 2. At the same time pull the arms to the side of the body by the shortest route. 3. The heels are to be together in line. The feet are turned outwards at an angle of approximately 45 degrees. The knees are straight and the weight of the body is balanced on both feet. 4. The body is erect and is evenly carried over the thighs. The shoulders are level and square to the front, drawn downwards and backwards without strain or stiffness so as bring the chest to its natural position. 5. The arms are to be braced from the shoulders. The wrists are to be straight and the palms of the hands are to be turned towards the thighs. The fingers are to be lightly clenched and the thumbs are to be to the front, touching the forefingers. The thumbs and tips of the fingers are to rest lightly on the thighs with the thumb on the side seam of the trousers or skirt. 6. The neck is to be erect, the neck and eyes are to be square to the front. The eyes are to look straight to the front (except when an individual is being personally addressed when he/she is to look at the person addressing him/her, without turning the head). Breathing is not to be restricted and no part of the body is to be stiff, tense or strained. The mouth is to be closed. 7. The position of Attention is one of alertness in readiness for a word of command. 8. Unless stated, all drill movements follow from the position of Attention. 9. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot comes through the bent knee position, the thigh is brought to a position parallel to the ground. 2. The body is braced and the shoulders pulled back and down. 3. Keep head and eyes steady 4. The wrists are locked and the hands clenched, with the thumbs on the seam of the trousers or skirt, the backs of the fingers touching the thigh. 5. Feet and body are square to the front, heels together, toes pointing out at 45 degrees.

		6. The body is erect and square to the front.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Figs 2-3).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR – SHUN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD SHUN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Final Position

Fig 2-3

ATTENTION

LESSON 4 - LEFT TURN AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the left turn at the Halt.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	The Attention.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Left Turn at the Halt. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the left, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LEFT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) LEFT TURN – ONE (Fig 2-4).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and both feet are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the left by means of pivoting on the heel of the left foot and toes of the right foot. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is flat firm on the ground. 2. The right toes on the ground with the heel raised. 3. The arms remain in the correct position of the Attention. 4. Both knees are braced. 5. The body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **LEFT TURN – TWO (Fig 2-5).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. The foot is then placed down beside the left foot at the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body is now in the correct position of Attention facing its new direction. 2. The arms are at the correct position of the Attention. 3. The feet are at 45 degrees with the heels together. 4. The body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 2-5).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LEFT TURN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE LEFT LEFT TURN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 2-4



Final Position

Fig 2-5

LEFT TURN

LESSON 5 - RIGHT TURN AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Right Turn at the Halt.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Left Turn at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Right Turn at the Halt. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the right, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RIGHT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **RIGHT TURN – ONE (Fig 2-6).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and right foot are forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the heel of the right foot and the toes of the left. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right foot is flat firm on the ground. 2. The left toes on the ground with the heel raised. 3. The arms are in the correct position of the Attention. 4. Both knees are braced. 5. The body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **RIGHT TURN – TWO (Fig 2-7).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. 2. The foot is then placed down beside the right foot at the correct position of Attention. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body is now in the correct position of Attention facing its new direction. 2. The arms are at the correct position of Attention, the thigh being brought to a position parallel to the ground. 3. The body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 2-7).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RIGHT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE RIGHT RIGHT TURN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 2-6



Final Position

Fig 2-7

RIGHT TURN

LESSON 6 - THE ABOUT TURN AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the About Turn at the Halt.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON.

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Attention from Stand Easy and Stand At Ease.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the About Turn at the Halt. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to turn through an angle of 180 degrees to the right, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ABOUT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) ABOUT TURN – ONE (Fig 2-8).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and right foot is forced through an angle of 180 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the heel of the right foot and the toes of the left. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right foot is flat firm on the ground. 2. The toes of the left foot are on the ground with the heel raised. 3. Both knees are braced and the body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively</p>	

2) ABOUT TURN – TWO (Fig 2-9).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The foot is then forced down beside the right foot, into the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body is now in the correct position of Attention facing its new direction. 2. The left leg came through the bend the knee position. 3. The body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 2-9).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ABOUT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ABOUT TURN.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 2-8



Final Position

Fig 2-9

ABOUT TURN

LESSON 7 - LEFT INCLINE AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Left Incline at the Halt.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON.

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	The About Turn at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Left Incline at the Halt. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to turn through an angle of 45 degrees to the left, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LEFT INCLINE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) LEFT INCLINE – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and both feet are forced through an angle of 45 degrees to the left by means of pivoting on the heel of the left foot and the toes of the right. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is flat firm on the ground the right toes on the ground with the heel raised. 2. The arms are at the correct position of Attention. 3. Both knees are braced. 4. The body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **LEFT INCLINE – TWO (Fig 2-10).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the right leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the right foot hanging naturally below the knee. 2. The foot is then placed down beside the left foot at the correct position of Attention. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body is now in the correct position of Attention facing its new direction. 2. The arms are in the correct position of Attention. 3. The body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 2-10).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LEFT INCLINE.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE LEFT LEFT INCLINE.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Fig 2-10
LEFT INCLINE

LESSON 8 - RIGHT INCLINE AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Right Incline at the Halt.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Left Incline at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Right Incline at the Halt. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to turn through an angle of 45 degrees to the right, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RIGHT INCLINE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS

1) **RIGHT INCLINE – ONE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the head, shoulders, body and right foot are forced through an angle of 45 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the heel of the right foot and the toes of the left. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right foot is flat firm on the ground. 2. The left toes on the ground with the heel raised. 3. The arms are at the correct position of Attention. 4. Both knees are braced and the body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) RIGHT INCLINE – TWO (Fig 2-11).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee. The foot is then placed down beside the right foot at the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body is now in the correct position of Attention facing its new direction. 2. The arms are at the correct position of Attention. 3. The body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 2-11).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RIGHT INCLINE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE RIGHT RIGHT INCLINE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



Fig 2-11
RIGHT INCLINE

LESSON 9 - TO THE FRONT SALUTE AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Saluting to the Front when Halted.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line at the Right Incline.
Revision	Right Incline.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Saluting to the Front when halted. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to pay the correct compliment to a commissioned officer or an uncased colour or standard in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SALUTING TO THE FRONT TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP TWO – THREE/DOWN.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are two movements to this lesson. 2. Saluting at the halt is to be carried out at the Right Incline position to avoid injury when the right arm is raised.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) TO THE FRONT SALUTE – ONE (Fig 2-12).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand is to be brought smartly, with a circular motion, to the side of the head. The palm of the hand is to be to the front with the thumb and fingers held closely together. 2. The fore-finger is to be placed 1in (20 mm) behind and to the right of the right eye. The wrist is to be straight and the elbow in line and square with the right shoulder. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body and head remain erect. 2. The forearm is to be forced to the rear. 3. The right hand has straight fingers and flat palm to the front. 4. The left arm remains at the correct position of the attention. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) TO THE FRONT SALUTE – TWO (Fig 2-13).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After a pause equal to two paces in quick time, the right arm is to be brought smartly down to the side of the body by the shortest route, resuming the position of Attention, without striking the thigh. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The hand forms a clenched fist as it returns to the side of the body. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP TWO – THREE/DOWN.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>UP TWO – THREE/DOWN.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 2-12



Final Position

Fig 2-13

TO THE FRONT SALUTE

LESSON 10 - TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Saluting to a Flank when Halted Left or Right.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention at the Right Incline.
Revision	Saluting to the Front at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Saluting to the Flank when Halted. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to pay the correct compliment to a commissioned officer or an uncased colour or standard in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SALUTING TO THE FLANKS TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP TWO – THREE – FOUR - FIVE/DOWN.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are two movements to this lesson. 2. Saluting at the halt is to be carried out at the Right Incline position to avoid injury when the right arm is raised.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE – ONE (Fig 2-14).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A movement is made similar to that of the first movement for Saluting to the Front except that at the same time the head and eyes are to be forced through an angle of 90 degrees square over the shoulder in the direction ordered. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body remains square to the front. 2. The head and eyes are forced across the shoulder to look in the direction ordered. 3. When saluting to the right/left the index finger is to be 1 in (20 mm) behind and to the right of the right eye. 4. The elbow is to be forced well back. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE – ONE (Fig 2-14).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A movement is made similar to that of the second movement for Saluting to the Front except that at the same time the head and eyes are to be forced through an angle of 90 degrees back to the front. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body remains square to the front. 2. The head and eyes are forced back to the front. 3. The arm is forced back to the correct position of Attention, by the shortest possible route. 4. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP TWO – THREE - FOUR – FIVE/DOWN.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>UP TWO – THREE - FOUR – FIVE/DOWN.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



Salute to the Left

Fig 2-14



Salute to the Right.

Fig 2-14

TO THE FLANK SALUTE

LESSON 11 - THE FALL OUT / DISMISS AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Fall Out / Dismiss at the Halt.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	To The Left/Right Salute at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Fall out/Dismiss. The reason this movement is taught is to allow an individual or body of personnel to Fall Out/Dismiss in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME FALL OUT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) FALL OUT/DISMISS – ONE (Fig 2-15).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Execute a Right Incline. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Right Incline, as previously taught, is carried out. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) FALL OUT/DISMISS – TWO (Fig 2-16).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After a pause equal to two beats in quick time, the left foot is advanced forward and the quick march is continued for four paces. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure that full 30 inch marching paces are carried out. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME FALL OUT/DISMISS.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD/FLIGHT/PARADE FALL – OUT/DISMISS.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE - LEFT - RIGHT/ONE - LEFT - RIGHT/LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Fig 2-15
First Movement



Fig 2-16
Final Part

FALL OUT / DISMISS

LESSON 12 - AN OFFICER ON PARADE - DISMISS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach An Officer on Parade - Dismiss.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	The Fall Out/Dismiss at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is An Officer on Parade - Dismiss. The reason this movement is taught is to allow an individual or body of personnel to be dismissed whilst an officer is on parade, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME AN OFFICER ON PARADE FALL OUT / DISMISS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/UP TWO - THREE/DOWN LEFT - RIGHT/LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) AN OFFICER ON PARADE FALL OUT/DISMISS – ONE (Fig 2-17).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Execute a Right Incline. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) AN OFFICER ON PARADE FALL OUT/DISMISS – TWO (Fig 2-18).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After a pause equal to two beats in quick time, a salute to the front is executed. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **AN OFFICER ON PARADE FALL OUT/DISMISS – THREE (Fig 2-19).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After a further pause equal to two beats in quick time, advance the left foot forward and continue to march four paces in quick time. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure a full 30 inch marching pace is carried out. 2. Arm swing up to own shoulder height. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME AN OFFICER ON PARADE FALL OUT/DISMISS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/UP TWO - THREE/DOWN LEFT - RIGHT/LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD/FLIGHT/PARADE AN OFFICER ON PARADE FALL OUT/DISMISS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/UP TWO - THREE/DOWN LEFT - RIGHT/LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Part

Fig 2-17



Second Part

Fig 2-18



Final Part

Fig 2-19

AN OFFICER ON PARADE DISMISS

LESSON 13 - RIGHT DRESS/LEFT DRESS AND EYES FRONT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Right Dress/Left Dress and the Eyes Front.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Dismiss and An Officer On Parade Dismiss.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Right Dress/Left Dress and the Eyes Front. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to take up alignment correctly in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RIGHT DRESS. EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movements the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP - LEFT - RIGHT – DRESSING. ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **RIGHT DRESS/LEFT DRESS – ONE (Fig 2-20).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All personnel except the right markers of each rank are to turn their head and eyes smartly to the right. 2. Personnel in the front rank are to raise their right arm sharply to the right to a horizontal position, hands clenched with backs of the hands upwards, each with the knuckles just touching the person immediately to their right. (The elbow is bent briefly when bringing up the arm). 3. The clenched hand is driven to the right taking care not to strike the next person; the movement must initially be directed behind the person on the right. 4. After a pause equal to two beats in quick time, each person is to take a dressing in line as quickly as possible, moving with short quick paces until they are able to see the lower part of the face of the second person beyond. 5. The shoulders are to be kept square to the front without bending the body or head forward or backward. 6. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arm and head are moved smartly. 2. The arm is locked at the elbow. 3. Keep the shoulders square to the front. 4. Personnel in the centre and rear ranks are to cover, at one pace distance, those in the front rank. The distance of one pace between ranks is measured by the right-hand Markers in the centre and rear ranks who, at the same time as the front rank, are also to raise their arms, hands clenched, to just touch the shoulder of the person in front. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LEFT DRESS.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Exactly the same procedure is to be followed, except that the left arms are to be raised and heads turned to the left.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

2) EYES FRONT – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Each person, except the right (or left) hand person of each rank, is to turn the head smartly to the front. 2. At the same time all those with raised arms are to force their arms smartly to their sides, without bending the elbow or striking their thighs, thereby resuming the correct position of Attention. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (See Fig 2-20).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RIGHT DRESS LEFT DRESS.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: UP LEFT - RIGHT/DRESSING.	
INSTRUCTOR - EYES FRONT.	ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD/FLIGHT/PARADE RIGHT DRESS LEFT DRESS.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: UP LEFT - RIGHT/DRESSING.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.
EYES FRONT.	ONE.	



Right Dress

Fig 2-20



Left Dress

Fig 2-20

DRESSING

LESSON 14 – DRESSING WITHOUT INTERVALS

INSTRUCTOR’S NOTES

Aim	To teach Without Intervals Right/Left Dress and the Eyes Front.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Right Dress/Left Dress and Eyes Front.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Without Intervals Right/Left Dress and the Eyes Front. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to take up alignment correctly without intervals in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME WITHOUT INTERVALS RIGHT DRESS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP LEFT – RIGHT/DRESSING.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) WITHOUT INTERVALS RIGHT DRESS/LEFT DRESS – ONE (Fig 2-21).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. All personnel except the right markers of each rank are to turn their heads and eyes smartly to the right. 2. Personnel in the front rank are to raise their right arm sharply to the right, bending the arm at the elbow, hands clenched and on own hip at waist belt level, with the back of the hand to the front. 3. The right elbow just touching the person immediately to their right. 4. After a pause equal to two beats in quick time, each person is to take a dressing in line as quickly as possible, moving with short quick paces until they are able to see the lower part of the face of the second person beyond. 5. The shoulders are to be kept square to the front without bending the body or head forward or backward. 6. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arm and head are moved smartly. 2. The arm is bent at the elbow, with the clenched hand on own hip at waist belt level. 3. Keep the shoulders square to the front. 4. Personnel in the centre and rear ranks are to cover, at one pace distance, those in the front rank. 5. The distance of one pace between ranks is measured by the first file of three (centre and rear ranks only). 6. Markers who, are to raise their arms, hands clenched, to just touch the shoulder of the person in front. 7. The body is erect and square to the front.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
WITHOUT INTERVALS LEFT DRESS INSTRUCTOR ONE.	1. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE.	1. Exactly the same procedure is to be followed, except that the left arms are to be used and heads turned to the left.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

2) EYES FRONT – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.	1. Each person, except the right (or left) hand person of each rank, is to turn the head smartly to the front. At the same time all those with raised arms are to force their arms smartly to the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 2-21).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME WITHOUT INTERVALS RIGHT DRESS/LEFT DRESS.</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP LEFT – RIGHT/DRESSING.</p> <p>ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively- Individually- Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD/FLIGHT/PARADE WITHOUT INTERVALS RIGHT DRESS/LEFT DRESS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>UP LEFT – RIGHT/DRESSING.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>
<p>EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>ONE.</p>	



DRESSING WITHOUT INTERVALS

1-2-79

LESSON 15 - OPEN/CLOSE ORDER MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Open and Close Order March.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in three ranks.
Revision	The Right Dress/Left Dress/Dressing without Intervals and the Eyes Front.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Open and Close Order March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable a body of personnel to dress in Open Order prior to being inspected or when fixing or unfixing bayonets and when being drilled in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME OPEN/CLOSE ORDER MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE ONE TWO.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) OPEN ORDER MARCH – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR OPEN ORDER MARCH.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On receipt of the command the front rank is to take two paces forward and the rear rank two paces backward. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE ONE TWO. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When in two ranks, the rear rank is to move and the front rank remains still. 2. During these movements the arms do not move. 3. Ensure that the ranks step off on the left foot for a full marching pace. 4. The rank taking paces rearwards need to ensure that they take a full marching pace of 30 ins.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) CLOSE ORDER MARCH – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR CLOSE ORDER MARCH.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The front rank is to take two paces backward and the rear rank two paces forward. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE ONE TWO. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When in two ranks, the rear rank is to move and the front rank remains still. 2. During these movements the arms do not move. 3. Ensure that the ranks step off on the left foot for a full marching pace.

		4. The rank taking paces rearwards need to ensure that they take a full marching pace of 30 ins.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME OPEN ORDER MARCH.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE ONE TWO.	1. Step off with the left foot. 2. The arms remain still.
INSTRUCTOR CLOSE ORDER MARCH.	ONE ONE TWO.	1. Step off with the left foot. 2. The arms remain still.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD OPEN/CLOSE ORDER MARCH.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE ONE TWO.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 16 – PACES FORWARD OR REARWARD MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach moving forward or backward a given number of paces.
Timings	One 15 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Open/Close Order March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is moving forward or backward a given number of paces. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to move forward or backward a maximum number of five paces in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PACES FORWARD MARCH.</p>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. During this movement and depending on the number of paces ordered, the final move will be with either the right (on odd numbers) or left (on even numbers) foot. 2. The foot coming through the bent knee position to Attention.

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) PACES FORWARD/REARWARD MARCH – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR PACES FORWARD/REARWARD MARCH.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The squad are to move forward or backward the given number of paces ordered, starting with the left foot. 2. Arms are to be kept steady at the sides throughout the movements and the whole movement is carried out in Quick Time. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Always stepping off with the left foot in either direction. 2. Keep arms steady at the sides. 3. Take a full length 30 in pace.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PACES FORWARD/REARWARD MARCH.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Always stepping off with the left foot in either direction. 2. Keep arms steady at the sides. 3. Take a full 30 in pace.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: SQUAD FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PACES FORWARD/REARWARD MARCH.	Students to execute the movement.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 17 - PACES SIDEWAYS MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach moving sideways a given number of paces.
Timings	One 15 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Moving forward or backward a given number of paces.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is moving sideways a given number of paces. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to move sideways a maximum number of five paces in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PACES RIGHT/LEFT CLOSE MARCH.		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) LEFT/RIGHT CLOSE MARCH – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR PACES RIGHT CLOSE MARCH.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right foot is to be placed 12 in (30 cm) to the right and the other foot brought up to it in Quick Time. 2. The necessary number of paces is to be completed in this manner without a pause. 3. Shoulders are to be kept square to the front and each knee is to bend sufficiently to enable the foot to clear the ground 6 in (15 cm) during the movement. 4. The whole movement should be carried out in Quick Time. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A 12 in (30 cm) pace is taken. 2. Keep the shoulders square to the front. 3. Each knee is bent sufficiently to avoid dragging the foot along the ground.
<p>INSTRUCTOR PACES LEFT CLOSE MARCH.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is to be placed 12 in (30 cm) to the left and the other foot brought up to it in Quick Time. 2. The same action is to be taken as for moving to the right. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A 12 in (30 cm) pace is taken. 2. Keep the shoulders square to the front. 3. Each knee is bent sufficiently to avoid dragging the foot along the ground.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PACES LEFT/RIGHT CLOSE MARCH.</p>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A 12 in (30 cm) pace is taken. 2. Keep the shoulders square to the front. 3. Each knee is bent sufficiently to avoid dragging the foot along the ground.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>SQUAD/FLIGHT/PARADE PACES LEFT/RIGHT CLOSE MARCH.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 18 - THE FORMATION OF A SQUAD/FLIGHT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach The Formation of a Squad/Flight.
Timings	One 15 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in three ranks.
Revision	Moving sideways a given number of paces.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Formation of a Squad/Flight. The reason this movement is taught is to enable a body of personnel to form a squad/flight in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a complete explanation of the movement.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The instructor may use the squad to assist in the explanation of the movement.

C. MOVEMENTS

1) RIGHT MARKER.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give the words of command:</p> <p>RIGHT MARKER.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. On the RIGHT of RIGHT MARKER, the squad braces up into the At Ease position. <li>2. The marker marches forward 15 paces, halting on the 15th pace. <li>3. The marker stands At Ease. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The marker is to advance 14 paces 1-2.

2) ON PARADE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give the words of command:</p> <p>GET ON PARADE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The marker (in position) and the squad (off-parade position) come to Attention. 2. The squad is to observe a pause, then march forward and form up in three ranks with two persons covering the marker to form the first file; the remainder to form up on the left of the first file. 3. After observing a further pause each file with the exception of the right file, are to turn their heads and eyes to the right. The front rank are to raise their right arms (Right Dress). 4. Each file is then to observe a further pause and take up their dressing in line by moving with short quick paces until they are just able to see the lower part of the face of the second person beyond. 5. The shoulders are to be kept square to the front without bending the body or the head either backwards or forwards. 6. Personnel in the centre and rear are to cover the rank of the first person in their file at a distance of one pace behind each other. (At this distance personnel are in Close Order.) 7. When the right hand person of the leading file is satisfied that the squad is steady, he is to turn the head and eyes to the front and smartly lower the arm to the side. 8. On this movement all personnel, in succession by files, from left to right are to turn their head and eyes to the front. 9. At the same time personnel of the front rank are to lower their arms to their sides. 10. Again, after a pause, and in succession, each file from the left to the right is to Stand At Ease. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If there are only two people in any file, the centre rank is to be left blank. 2. If there is only one person, the centre and rear ranks are to be left blank. 3. Such incomplete files, known as Blank Files, are always to be positioned as the second file from the left flank. 4. If there is less than nine persons to form a squad, they are to be formed up in two ranks with the same intervals between individuals as described. 5. The distance forward may be shortened if there is not enough space.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final explanation of the movement.		
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively.	

E END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Confirm by collective practise: RIGHT MARKER. GET ON PARADE.	Students to execute the movement.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 19 - SIZING OF A SQUAD/FLIGHT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Sizing of a Squad/Flight.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Formation of a Squad.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Sizing of a Squad/Flight. The reason this movement is taught is that a correctly sized squad drills better together and gives a better impression to the spectator. A recruit squad will be sized early in its training. Level ground should be used for sizing. It is done by forming everyone into a single rank and grading them using the top of the head-dress as a guide.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
When sizing a squad the instructor is to use the tallest person of the squad to act as right marker.		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SIZING A SQUAD/FLIGHT – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIMING TALLEST ON THE RIGHT SHORTEST ON THE LEFT IN SINGLE RANK SIZE.</p>	<p>1. Personnel, with the exception of the marker, are to right incline, break ranks and fall in on the left of the marker in a single rank, according to size, and dress off without intervals.</p>	<p>1. A correct Left Turn is carried out. 2. Individuals can most easily assess their height by comparing shoulder height with the person next to them.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SIZING A SQUAD/FLIGHT – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>SQUAD – NUMBER.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 All personnel except the marker are to turn head and eyes smartly to the right. At the same time, the right marker is to start the numbering by calling out: ONE. 2. This is to be followed immediately by the next person on the marker's left turning the head to the front and at the same time calling out: TWO. and so on, until all the personnel are numbered. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Numbering is sometimes necessary while personnel are in three ranks. 2. In this case the procedure is the same, the personnel in each rank taking on the number of the person calling out in the front rank for the file as a whole. 3. Only the front rank are to turn their heads and call out the numbers; the rest pay attention to hear their numbers called.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **SIZING A SQUAD/FLIGHT – THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>ODD NUMBERS TWO PACES FORWARD MARCH.</p>	<p>1. Odd numbered personnel take two paces forward, while even numbers stand fast.</p>	
<p>On the command:</p> <p>NUMBER 1 STAND FAST RANKS RIGHT AND LEFT TURN.</p>	<p>1. Personnel of the front rank (odd numbers), except No 1, are to turn to the right and those of the rear rank (even numbers) are to turn to the left.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) **SIZING A SQUAD/FLIGHT – FOUR.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>On the command:</p> <p>FORM SQUAD QUICK MARCH.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Personnel, except No 1, who stands fast, are to step off in the direction they are facing. The rear rank is to wheel to the right and follow the last person of the front rank. 2. No 3 is to halt one pace to the rear of No 1. No 5 is to halt one pace to the rear of No 3 (to form the first file of threes). No 7 halts to the left of No 1. Those following continue to form files of three until all are assembled. 3. On coming to a halt in their positions, individuals in a file are to wait until the individual forming the rear rank has halted. After a pause, the file is to turn to face the front at the same time, and take up the dressing by the right. 	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME. TALLEST ON THE RIGHT SHORTEST ON THE LEFT IN SINGLE RANK SIZE.</p> <p>SQUAD NUMBER.</p> <p>ODD NUMBERS TWO PACES FORWARD MARCH. NUMBER ONE STAND FAST RANKS RIGHT AND LEFT TURN.</p> <p>FORM SQUAD QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movements.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME. TALLEST ON THE RIGHT SHORTEST ON THE LEFT IN SINGLE RANK SIZE.</p> <p>SQUAD NUMBER</p> <p>ODD NUMBERS TWO PACES FORWARD MARCH. NUMBER ONE STAND FAST RANKS RIGHT AND LEFT TURN.</p> <p>FORM SQUAD QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movements.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>

PART 1 - CHAPTER 3

FOOT DRILL IN QUICK TIME

CONTENTS

LESSON No	TITLE	PAGE No
1	The Quick March	1-3-2
2	Halt from The Quick March	1-3-9
3	The Right Turn on the March	1-3-15
4	The Left Turn on the March	1-3-21
5	The About Turn on the March	1-3-28
6	An Officer Passing Your Front Salute	1-3-37
7	An Officer To Your Left/Right Salute	1-3-44
8	To The Front Salute (Individual)	1-3-53
9	Compliments on the March (Eyes Left/Right)	1-3-57
10	Variations in Pace	1-3-63
11	Mark Time	1-3-71
12	Halt In Mark Time	1-3-77
13	Change Step In Mark Time	1-3-81
14	Forward From Mark Time	1-3-85
15	Change Step in Quick Time	1-3-89

LESSON 1 – THE QUICK MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach marching at the regulation rate of 116 paces per minute.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Open/Close Order March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Quick March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to march at the regulation rate of 116 paces per minute in a smart uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) QUICK MARCH - ONE (Fig 3-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is to advance forward a pace of 30 in (750 mm). The foot making contact with the ground heel first. 2. At the same time, the right arm is forced forward and the left arm to the rear. Fingers are to be clenched with the thumb to the front, on top and touching the forefinger. The arm is locked at the elbow. 3. The right arm is to swing forward to the individuals own shoulder height. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: LEFT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure a 30 in (750 mm) pace is taken. 2. Ensure the right arm is forced forward to the individuals own shoulder height. 3. The left arm is forced to the rear. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) QUICK MARCH – TWO (Fig 3-2).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right foot is to advance forward a pace of 30 in (750 mm). The foot making contact with the ground heel first. 2. At the same time, the left arm is forced forward and the right arm to the rear. Fingers are to be clenched with the thumb to the front, on top and touching the forefinger. The arm is locked at the elbow. 3. The left arm is to swing forward to the individuals own shoulder height. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: RIGHT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure a 30 in (750 mm) pace is taken. 2. Ensure the left arm is forced forward to the individuals own shoulder height. 3. The right arm is forced to the rear. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) QUICK MARCH – THREE (Fig 3-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The movement is the same as squad RIGHT, except the left foot is brought forward a full 30 in (750 mm) marching pace. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: LEFT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure a 30 in (750 mm) pace is taken. 2. Ensure the right arm is forced forward to the individuals own shoulder height. 3. The left arm is forced to the rear. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Figs 3-1 & 3-2).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The instructor is to continue marching in Quick Time for 11 paces. 2. The instructor is to march to 116 paces to the minute.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>SQUAD FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. Ensure the squad march to the regulation pace of 116 paces to the minute.



First Movement

Fig 3-1



Second Movement

Fig 3-2

THE QUICK MARCH

LESSON 2 - HALT FROM THE QUICK MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Halt from the Quick March.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	The Quick March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Halt from the Quick March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Halt from the Quick March in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE ONE TWO.</p>	<p>1 There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **HALT – ONE (Fig 3-3).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground a check pace is to be completed with the right foot. 2. The arm swing is continued in the correct Quick March. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full 30 in pace is completed with the right foot. 2. The arm swing is continued up to shoulder level.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **HALT – TWO (Fig 3-4).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A further check pace of only 15 in (380 mm) is completed by the left foot. 2. The arm swing is continued in the correct Quick March. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A 15 in check pace is completed with the left foot. 2. The arm swing is continued up to shoulder level. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **HALT – THREE (Fig 3-5).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right knee comes through the bent knee position and the right foot is placed smartly down in line with the left at the correct position of Attention. 2. At the same time, the arms are smartly cut to the sides of the body. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right knee comes through the bent knee position, with the thigh parallel to the ground. 2. The arm swing is cut smartly to the sides of the body. 3. The body is erect and square to the front. 4. All movement ceases at the position of Attention.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE ONE TWO.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: SQUAD/FLIGHT/PARADE FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE ONE TWO.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 3-3



Second Movement

Fig 3-4



Final Position

Fig 3-5

HALT FROM THE QUICK MARCH

LESSON 3 - THE RIGHT TURN ON THE MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Right Turn On The March.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Halt from the Quick March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Right Turn on the March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to turn through an angle of 90 degrees without being halted in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RIGHT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK TURN FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **RIGHT TURN – ONE (Fig 3-6).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground, a full 30 in (750 mm) pace is to be completed with the right foot. 2. At the same time swinging the left arm forward and the right arm to the rear, in the correct Quick March. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right leg takes a full marching pace forward. 2. The arm swing is continued. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **RIGHT TURN - TWO (Fig 3-7).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left leg comes through the bent knee position and is placed on the ground approximately 3 in (80 mm), diagonally to the right and in front of the right toecap. 2. The arms are forced, in a scissor-like movement, to the sides of the body. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The forward movement is halted as the left foot hits the ground. 2. The arms are forced smartly to the sides of the body into the correct position of Attention. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **RIGHT TURN - THREE (Fig 3-8).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right foot is forced forward, a full 30 in (750 mm) pace in the new direction ordered. 2. As the right foot is forced forward the left arm is swung forward to shoulder level and the right arm forced fully to the rear in the correct Quick March. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full 30 in (750 mm) pace is completed by the right foot. 2. The correct Quick March arm swing is continued. 3. The body is erect and square to the front. 4. Quick March is now continued in the new direction ordered.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RIGHT TURN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: CHECK TURN FORWARD.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE RIGHT RIGHT TURN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: CHECK TURN FORWARD.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 3-6



Second Movement

Fig 3-7



Final Position

Fig 3-8

RIGHT TURN ON THE MARCH IN QUICK TIME

LESSON 4 - THE LEFT TURN ON THE MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Left Turn On The March.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Right Turn on the Quick March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Left Turn on the March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to turn through an angle of 90 degrees without first being halted in a smart, uniform manner

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LEFT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK TURN FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) LEFT TURN - ONE (Fig 3-9).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the right foot strikes the ground, a full 30 in (750 mm) pace is to be completed with the left foot. 2. At the same time swinging the right arm forward and the left arm to the rear, in the correct Quick March. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left leg takes a full marching pace forward. 2. The arm swing is continued. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) LEFT TURN - TWO (Fig 3-10).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right leg comes through the bent knee position and is placed on the ground approximately 3 in (80 mm), diagonally to the left, in front of the left toecap. 2. The arms are forced in a scissor-like movement to the sides of the body. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The forward movement is halted as the right foot hits the ground. 2. The arms are forced smartly to the sides of the body into the correct position of Attention. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) LEFT TURN – THREE (Fig 3-11).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is forced forward, a full 30 in (750 mm) pace in the new direction ordered. 2. As the Left foot is forced forward the right arm is swung forward to shoulder level and the left arm forced fully to the rear in the correct Quick March. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full 30 in (750 mm) pace is completed by the left foot. 2. The correct Quick March arm swing is continued. 3. The body is erect and square to the front. 4. Quick March is now continued in the new direction ordered.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE LEFT LEFT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK TURN FORWARD.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE LEFT LEFT TURN.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>CHECK TURN FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 3-9



Second Movement

Fig 3-10



Final Position

Fig 3-11

LEFT TURN ON THE MARCH IN QUICK TIME

LESSON 5 - THE ABOUT TURN ON THE MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the About Turn On The March.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Left / Right Turn On The March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the About Turn on the March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to turn through an angle of 180 degrees without first being halted in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ABOUT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. There are four parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION, THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) ABOUT TURN – ONE (Fig 3-12).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground, a full 30 in (750 mm) pace is to be completed with the right foot. At the same time checking the arms into the side of the body. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Arms checked into the side of the body. 2. A full 30 in (750 mm) pace with the right foot. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) ABOUT TURN - TWO (Fig 3-13).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On receipt of the command the body is forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the ball of the right foot. 2. At the same time, the left leg is bent through the bent knee position and the foot placed flat on the ground next to the right foot. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Arms checked into the side of the body. 2. The left leg bends through the bent knee position. 3. The left foot placed flat on the ground next to the right foot.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) ABOUT TURN – THREE (Fig 3-14).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right leg moves through the bent knee position and the foot placed flat on the ground at an angle of approximately 90 degrees to the left foot. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Arms checked into the side of the body. 2. The right leg bends through the bent knee position. 3. The right foot placed flat on the ground 90 degrees to the left foot. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) ABOUT TURN - FOUR (Fig 3-15).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left leg moves through the bent knee position and placed down flat on the ground. Heels together and feet angled at 45 degrees. The arms remain at the side of the body. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Arms checked into the side of the body. 2. The left leg moves through the bent knee position. 3. The left foot placed flat on the ground heels together and feet angled at 45 degrees. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ABOUT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT FORWARD.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The About Turn is completed in three beats equal to three paces in Quick Time. 2. When the squad call out FORWARD the right foot is advanced and the Quick March continued at 116 paces to the minute (Fig 3-16).
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ABOUT TURN.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 3-12



Second Movement

Fig 3-13



Third Movement

Fig 3-14

THE ABOUT TURN ON THE MARCH IN QUICK TIME



Final Position

Fig 3-15



Forward

Fig 3-16

THE ABOUT TURN ON THE MARCH IN QUICK TIME

LESSON 6 - AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR FRONT SALUTE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach An Officer Passing Your Front To The Front Salute.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Halt from the Quick March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is An Officer Passing Your Front Salute. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to pay compliments to a commissioned officer or an uncased colour or standard in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR FRONT TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK/UP - TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE/DOWN SWING.</p>	<p>1. There are four parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR FRONT SALUTE – ONE (Fig 3-17).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground. A full 30 in (75 cm) pace is completed with the right foot and the arms are checked into the sides of the body. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arms are at the sides of the body as in the correct position of Attention. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR FRONT SALUTE – TWO (Fig 3-18).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR UP TWO THREE FOUR FIVE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The salute is executed as the left heel strikes the ground. 2. A further four paces are taken holding the salute. 3. The left arm is to be kept steady at the side of the body during the salute. 4. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: UP – TWO – THREE – FOUR – FIVE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot and the right arm move at exactly the same time. 2. The body, head and shoulders are kept to the front. 3. Look directly at the person/item being saluted.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR FRONT SALUTE – THREE (Fig 3-19).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the right foot completes the next pace, the right arm is to be brought to the side of the body. 2. The left arm is to be kept steady at the side of the body. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot and the right arm move at exactly the same time. 2. The body, head and shoulders are kept to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR FRONT SALUTE – FOUR (Fig 3-20).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the left foot completes the next pace, the right arm is swung forward of the body, back into the Quick March. 2. The left arm is swung to the rear of the body. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot and the right arm move at exactly the same time. 2. The body, head and shoulders are kept to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR FRONT TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK/UP - TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE/DOWN SWING.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR FRONT TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>CHECK/UP - TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE/DOWN SWING.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 3-17



Second Movement

Fig 3-18

AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR FRONT - TO THE FRONT – SALUTE



Third Movement

Fig 3-19



Final Movement

Fig 3-20

AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR FRONT – TO THE FRONT - SALUTE

LESSON 7 - AN OFFICER TO YOUR LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach An Officer To Your Left/Right To The Left/Right Salute.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	An Officer Passing Your Front To The Front Salute.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is An Officer To Your Left/Right Salute. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to pay compliments to a commissioned officer or an uncased colour or standard in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME AN OFFICER TO YOUR LEFT/RIGHT TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK/UP - TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE/DOWN SWING.</p>	<p>1. There are four parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) AN OFFICER TO YOUR LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE – ONE (Fig 3-21).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground. A full 30 in (75 cm) pace is completed with the right foot and the arms are checked into the sides of the body. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arms are at the sides of the body as in the correct position of Attention. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) AN OFFICER PASSING YOUR LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE – TWO (Figs 3-22 & 3-24).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE – TWO – THREE – FOUR – FIVE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When the left foot comes forward and strikes the ground, the salute is to be given. 2. At the same time the head and eyes are forced over to the direction ordered. 3. Then four 30 in (75 cm) paces are taken forward starting with the right foot, holding the salute. 4. The left arm is to be kept steady at the side of the body during the salute. 5. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE – TWO – THREE – FOUR – FIVE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot and the right arm move at exactly the same time. 2. The body and shoulders are kept to the front. 3. Look directly at the person/item being saluted.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) AN OFFICER TO YOUR LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE – THREE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the right foot completes the next pace, the right arm is to be brought to the side of the body. 2. At the same time the head and eyes are forced back to the front 3. The left arm is to be kept steady at the side of the body. 4. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot and the right arm move at exactly the same time. 2. The body, head and shoulders are kept to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) AN OFFICER TO YOUR LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE – FOUR (Fig 3-23).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the left foot completes the next pace, the right arm is swung forward of the body, back into the Quick March. 2. The left arm is swung to the rear of the body. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot and the right arm move at exactly the same time. 2. The body, head and shoulders are kept to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME AN OFFICER TO YOUR LEFT/RIGHT TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE. ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK/UP - TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE/DOWN SWING.</p>	
	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively- Individually- Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME AN OFFICER TO YOUR LEFT/RIGHT TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>CHECK/UP - TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE/DOWN SWING.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 3-21



Second Movement

Fig 3-22

AN OFFICER TO YOUR LEFT - TO THE LEFT – SALUTE



Final Movement

Fig 3-23

AN OFFICER TO YOUR LEFT – SALUTE



Right

Fig 3-24

AN OFFICER TO YOUR RIGHT - SALUTE

LESSON 8 - TO THE FRONT SALUTE (INDIVIDUAL)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To Teach To The Front Salute.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.
Revision	To The Left/Right Salute On The March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is To The Front Salute. The reason this movement is taught is to teach an individual the actions to be carried out when approaching to speak to an officer.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE ONE TWO LEFT RIGHT/UP - TWO - THREE/DOWN TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE/UP - TWO - THREE/DOWN LEFT RIGHT/ONE LEFT RIGHT ONE LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

(1) TO THE FRONT SALUTE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, given as the left heel strikes the ground, personnel are to halt, observe a pause equal to two paces in Quick Time and then salute to the front. 2. After completing the salute as previously taught, personnel are to observe a pause equal to four paces in Quick Time and then salute to the front for a second time. 3. After the second salute personnel are to observe a pause equal to two paces in Quick Time, turn about as previously taught observe another pause equal to two paces in Quick Time and then Quick March (leading with the left foot) back in the direction from which they had approached. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE ONE TWO LEFT RIGHT/UP - TWO - THREE/DOWN TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE /UP - TWO - THREE/DOWN LEFT RIGHT/ ONE LEFT RIGHT/ONE LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pause between salutes represents the delivery or receipt of a message.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE ONE TWO LEFT RIGHT/UP - TWO - THREE/ DOWN TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE/UP - TWO - THREE/DOWN LEFT RIGHT/ONE LEFT RIGHT/ ONE LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE ONE TWO LEFT RIGHT/UP - TWO - THREE / DOWN TWO - THREE - FOUR - FIVE/UP - TWO - THREE/DOWN LEFT RIGHT/ONE LEFT RIGHT/ ONE LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>

LESSON 9 – COMPLIMENTS ON THE MARCH (EYES LEFT/RIGHT)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Eyes Left/Right and Eyes Front.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	To The Front Salute.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Eyes Left/Right. The reason this movement is taught is to enable a body of personnel to pay compliments to a commissioned officer or an uncased colour or standard in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES LEFT/RIGHT. EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK TURN.</p> <p>CHECK TURN.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION, THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) COMPLIMENTS ON THE MARCH – EYES LEFT/RIGHT (Figs 3-25 & 3-26).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES LEFT/RIGHT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground, a full forward pace is to be completed with the right foot. 2. When the left foot again strikes the ground the head and eyes are to be turned smartly in the direction ordered 3. The arms are to continue to swing in the normal manner. 4. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: CHECK TURN. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arms are swung in the correct manner of the Quick March. 2. The head is turned smartly in the direction ordered. 3. Observe the check pace before turning the head in the direction ordered. 4. Keep the chin up to avoid it dropping on the shoulder.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) COMPLIMENTS ON THE MARCH – EYES FRONT.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground a full pace is to be completed with the right foot 2. The head and eyes are to be returned smartly to the front as the left foot next strikes the ground. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: CHECK TURN. 	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES LEFT/RIGHT. EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK TURN. CHECK TURN.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME COMPLIMENTS ON THE MARCH EYES LEFT/RIGHT.</p> <p>EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>CHECK – TURN.</p> <p>CHECK – TURN.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



Eyes Left

Fig 3-25



Eyes Right

Fig 3-26

COMPLIMENTS ON THE MARCH

LESSON 10 – VARIATIONS IN PACE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Step Out and Step Short and Quick March from the Step Out and Step Short.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Eyes Left/Right and Eyes Front.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Variations in Pace and Quick March from Variations in Pace. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to regulate the length of pace in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME VARIATIONS IN PACE STEP OUT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movements the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>STEP OUT QUICK MARCH.</p>	
<p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME VARIATIONS IN PACE</p> <p>STEP SHORT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>STEP SHORT QUICK MARCH.</p>	

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **STEP OUT – ONE (Fig 3-27).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STEP OUT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground, a further pace of 30 in (75 cm) is to be completed with the right foot. 2. After which the pace is to be lengthened to 33 in (85 cm) starting with the left foot, without altering the marching time. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: STEP OUT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The length of the pace is extended to 33 in (85 cm). 2. The arm swing remains constant as in the Quick March. 3. The body is erect and to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **STEP OUT TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME QUICK MARCH.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground, a further pace of 33 in (85 cm) is to be completed with the right foot after which the pace is to be shortened to the normal 30 in (75 cm), starting with the left foot. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: QUICK MARCH. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pace is shortened to 30 in (75 cm). 2. The arm swing remains constant as in the Quick March. 3. The body is erect and to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) STEP SHORT – ONE (Fig 3-28).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME VARIATIONS IN PACE STEP SHORT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground, a further pace of 30 in (75 cm) is to be completed with the right foot. 2. After which the pace is to be shortened to 21 in (53 cm) starting with the left foot, without altering the marching time. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: STEP SHORT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The length of the pace is shortened to 21 in (53 cm). 2. The arm swing is maintained as in the Quick March. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The Squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) **STEP SHORT - TWO**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME QUICK MARCH.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground, a further pace of 21 in (53 cm) is to be completed with the right foot. 2. After which the pace is to be lengthened to the normal 30 in (75 cm), starting with the left foot. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: QUICK MARCH. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pace is lengthened to 30 in (75 cm) starting on the next left foot. 2. The arm swing is continued in the Quick March. 3. The body is erect and to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STEP OUT QUICK MARCH STEP SHORT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>STEP OUT QUICK MARCH STEP SHORT QUICK MARCH.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STEP OUT QUICK MARCH STEP SHORT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>STEP OUT QUICK MARCH STEP SHORT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



Step Out

Fig 3-27



Step Short

Fig 3-28

VARIATIONS IN PACE

LESSON 11 - MARK TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Mark Time.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Variations In Pace.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Mark Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Mark Time in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MARK TIME.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS

1) MARK TIME – ONE (Fig 3-29).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground a pace of 15 in (38 cm) is to be taken with the right foot. 2. At the same time the arms are to be checked into the side of the body. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arms remain still at the side of the body as in the position of Attention. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **MARK TIME – TWO (Figs 3-30 & 3-31).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Mark Time commences on the left foot. 2. Each person is to Mark Time at 116 paces per minute. 3. When marking time each leg is to be raised alternately through the bent knee position without moving forward or backward. 4. Each foot, as it is raised, is to hang naturally from the ankle. The lower leg is to be perpendicular to the ground. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Marking time on the same ground. 2. The rate of marching is maintained at 116 paces per minute. 3. The feet DO NOT stamp on the ground. 4. The arms remain still at the side of the body as in the position of Attention. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MARK TIME.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movements the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MARK TIME.	Students to execute the movements and call out the timing: CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 3-29



Second Movement

Fig 3-30



Next Movement

Fig 3-31

MARK TIME

LESSON 12 – HALT IN MARK TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Halt In Mark Time.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Mark Time.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Halt In Mark Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Halt In Mark Time in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	1. There is one part to this movement.
FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **HALT FROM MARK TIME – ONE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground. The right leg comes through the bent knee position and the foot is placed on the ground next to the left foot, into the position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right leg goes through the bent knee position. 2. The feet are at the position of Attention. 3. The body is erect and square to the front with no further movement. 4. The arms remain still at the side of the body at the position of Attention.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.	On the execution of the movements the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.	Students to execute the movements and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 13 – CHANGE STEP IN MARK TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Change Step in Mark Time.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Halt From Mark Time.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Change Step in Mark Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Change Step in Mark Time in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT LEFT RIGHT.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CHANGE STEP – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement, giving the word of command</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The word of command is given when the right foot strikes the ground. 2. The left leg moves through the bent knee position for two beats. 3. Marking time is then to be restarted alternating between the right and left feet. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: LEFT LEFT RIGHT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arms remain at the sides of the body in the position of Attention. 2. There is no forward, rearward or lateral movement. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to be practised Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: LEFT LEFT RIGHT.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.	Students to execute the movements and call out the timing: LEFT LEFT RIGHT.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 14 – FORWARD FROM MARK TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Forward from Mark Time.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Change Step in Mark Time.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Forward From Mark Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to return to the Quick March from Mark Time in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the drill movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME FORWARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) FORWARD FROM MARK TIME – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground, the movement of the right foot is to be completed and the Quick March resumed, starting with the left foot.</p> <p>2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: CHECK FORWARD.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME FORWARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movements the instructor is to call out: CHECK FORWARD.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME FORWARD.	Students to execute the movements and call out the timing: CHECK FORWARD.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 15 – CHANGE STEP IN QUICK TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Change Step in Quick Time.
Timings	One 10 minute period
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Forward from Mark Time.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Change Step in Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to correct the step on the march in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS

1) CHANGE STEP – ONE (Fig 3-32).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the right heel is on the ground. A full 30 in (75cm) pace is taken with the left foot. 2. The arm swing is continued as in the Quick March. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full marching pace of 30 in (75 cm) is carried out. With the left foot firm and flat on the floor. 2. The arm swing is continued. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CHANGE STEP – TWO (Fig 3-33).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right foot is then brought forward so that the hollow of the right foot is against the heel of the left foot, causing a momentary pause in forward movement. 2. At the same time the arms are checked into the sides of the body in a scissor-like movement. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arms are moved in a scissor-like movement to the sides of the body. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **CHANGE STEP – THREE (Fig 3-34).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is then forced forward a full 30 in (75 cm) marching pace. 2. The right arm is swung forward and the left arm rearwards in the Quick March. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full marching pace is carried out with the left foot. 2. Although the step is changed the timing of the Quick March is not altered. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to be practised Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: LEFT RIGHT LEFT.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: LEFT RIGHT LEFT.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 3-32



Second Movement

Fig 3-33



Third Movement

Fig 3-34

CHANGE STEP ON THE MARCH IN QUICK TIME

PART 1 - CHAPTER 4

FOOT DRILL SLOW MARCH

CONTENTS

LESSON No	TITLE	PAGE No
1	The Slow March	1-4-2
2	Halt from the Slow March	1-4-9
3	The Right Turn on the Slow March	1-4-14
4	The Left Turn on the Slow March	1-4-19
5	The About Turn on the Slow March	1-4-24
6	Compliments on the Slow March – Eyes Left/Right and Eyes Front	1-4-31
7	Slow Mark Time	1-4-35
8	Halt from Slow Mark Time	1-4-40
9	Change Step on Slow Mark Time	1-4-44
10	Forward from Slow Mark Time	1-4-47
11	Change Step on the Slow March	1-4-51
12	Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time	1-4-56
13	Breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time	1-4-61

SLOW MARCH LESSON PLANS

1. The majority of Slow March lesson plans do not contain photographs, as the movements executed are the same as in Quick Time with the exception of the position of the arms (which remain as in the position of Attention).
2. Lessons 1 and 2 are illustrated.

LESSON 1 –THE SLOW MARCH

INSTRUCTOR’S NOTES

Aim	To teach marching at the regulation rate of 65 paces per minute.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Slow March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to march at the regulation rate of 65 paces per minute in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOW MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SLOW MARCH - ONE (Fig 4-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is to advance forward a pace of 30 in (75 cm). The foot is to be turned outward at the same angle as when halted. 2. The foot is to be stretched with the toes pointing towards the ground. 3. The arms remain still at the sides of the body, in the position of Attention. 4. The foot touches the ground toes first. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: LEFT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure a 30 in (75 cm) pace is taken. 2. Ensure the arms are forced into the sides of the body. 3. The knee is bent sufficiently to enable the foot to just clear the ground as the leg swings forward. 4. As the leg extends to take the pace the knee is straightened and braced. 5. The body is to be balanced over the thighs to avoid any tendency to rock. 6. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SLOW MARCH – TWO (Fig 4-2).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right foot is to advance forward a pace of 30 in (75 cm). The foot is to be turned outward at the same angle as when halted. 2. The foot is to be stretched with the toes pointing towards the ground. 3. The arms remain still at the sides of the body, in the position of Attention. 4. The foot touches the ground toes first. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: RIGHT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure a 30 in (75 cm) pace is taken. 2. Ensure the arms are forced into the sides of the body. 3. The knee is bent sufficiently to enable the foot to just clear the ground as the leg swings forward. 4. As the leg extends to take the pace the knee is straightened and braced. 5. The body is to be balanced over the thighs to avoid any tendency to rock. 6. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) SLOW MARCH – THREE (Fig 4-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The movement is the same as squad RIGHT, except the left foot is brought forward a full 30 in (75 cm) marching pace. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: LEFT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure a 30 in (75 cm) pace is taken. 2. Ensure the arms are forced into the sides of the body. 3. The knee is bent sufficiently to enable the foot to just clear the ground as the leg swings forward. 4. As the leg extends to take the pace the knee is straightened and braced. 5. The body is to be balanced over the thighs to avoid any tendency to rock. 6. The body is erect and square to the front. 7. The Slow March is to be smooth and continuous to avoid any tendency to jerk between paces.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Figs 4-1 & 4-2).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOW MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The instructor is to continue marching in Slow Time for 11 paces. 2. The instructor is to march to 65 paces to the minute.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>SQUAD FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT SLOW MARCH.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. Ensure the squad march to the regulation pace of 65 paces to the minute.



First Movement

Fig 4-1



Second Movement

Fig 4-2

THE SLOW MARCH

LESSON 2 - HALT FROM THE SLOW MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Halt from Slow March.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	The Slow March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Halt from Slow March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Halt from Slow March in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE TWO.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **HALT – ONE (Fig 4-3).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the right foot is on the ground a check pace of 15 in (38 cm) is to be completed with the left foot, maintaining the pace of the Slow March. 2. The arms are still at the sides of the body. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A 15 in (38 cm) pace is completed with the left foot. 2. The arms are at the position of Attention.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **HALT – TWO (Fig 4-4).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right leg comes through the bent knee position, and is forced down so that the feet are in the position of Attention. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right leg moves at the pace of the Quick March. 2. The arms remain at the sides of the body. 3. The body is erect and to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE TWO.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: SQUAD FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE TWO.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 4-3



Final Position

Fig 4-4

HALT FROM THE SLOW MARCH

LESSON 3 - THE RIGHT TURN ON THE SLOW MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Right Turn on the Slow March.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Halt from the Quick March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Right Turn on the Slow March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the right without first being halted in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RIGHT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK TURN FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **RIGHT TURN – ONE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot is on the ground, a full 30 in (75 cm) pace is to be completed with the right foot. 2. The arms remain as in the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right leg takes a full marching pace forward. 2. The movement is carried out at the pace of the Slow March. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **RIGHT TURN – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left leg comes through the bent knee position and is placed on the ground approximately 3 in (80 mm), diagonally to the right, in front of the right toe-cap. 2. The arms remain as in the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The movement is carried out at the pace of the Slow March. 2. The forward movement is halted as the left foot hits the ground. 3. The arms remain in the correct position of Attention. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively</p>	

3) **RIGHT TURN – THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right foot is forced forward, a full 30 in (750 mm) pace in the new direction ordered, and the Slow March is continued. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full 30 in (750 mm) pace is completed by the right foot. 2. The Slow March is then continued. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RIGHT TURN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: CHECK TURN FORWARD.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE RIGHT RIGHT TURN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: CHECK TURN FORWARD.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 4 - THE LEFT TURN ON THE SLOW MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Left Turn on the Slow March.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Right Turn on the Slow March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Left Turn on the Slow March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to turn through an angle of 90 degrees to the left without first being halted in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LEFT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK TURN FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) LEFT TURN – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the right foot is on the ground, a full 30 in (750 mm) pace is to be completed with the left foot. 2. The arms remain as in the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left leg takes a full marching pace forward. 2. The movement is carried out at the pace of the Slow March. 3. The arms remain at the position of Attention. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **LEFT TURN – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right leg comes through the bent knee position and is placed on the ground approximately 3 in (80 mm), diagonally to the left, in front of the left toe cap. 2. The arms remain at the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The forward movement is halted as the right foot hits the ground. 2. The movement is carried out at the pace of the Slow March. 3. The arms remain at the correct position of Attention. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **LEFT TURN – THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is forced forward, a full 30 in (750 mm) pace in the new direction ordered. 2. The arms remain at the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full 30 in pace is completed by the left foot. 2. The correct Slow March is then continued. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE LEFT LEFT TURN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: CHECK TURN FORWARD.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE LEFT LEFT TURN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: CHECK TURN FORWARD.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 5 - THE ABOUT TURN ON THE SLOW MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the About Turn on the Slow March.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Left / Right Turn On The Slow March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the About Turn on the Slow March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to turn through an angle of 180 degrees without first being halted in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ABOUT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. There are four parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) ABOUT TURN – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground, a full 30 in (75 cm) pace is to be completed with the right foot. 2. The arms remain as in the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Arms remain checked into the side of the body. 2. The movement is carried out at the pace of the Slow March. 3. A full 30 in (750 mm) pace with the right foot. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) ABOUT TURN – TWO.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On receipt of the command the body is forced through an angle of 90 degrees to the right by means of pivoting on the ball of the right foot. 2. At the same time, the left leg moves through the bent knee position and the foot is placed flat on the ground next to the right foot. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Arms remain checked into the side of the body. 2. The movement is carried out at the pace of the Slow March. 3. The left leg bends through the bend the knee position. 4. The left foot is placed flat on the ground next to the right foot.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) ABOUT TURN – THREE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On receipt of the command the right leg moves through the bent knee position and the foot placed flat on the ground at an angle of approximately 90 degrees to the left foot. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Arms remain checked into the side of the body. 2. The movement is carried out at the pace of the Slow March. 3. The right leg moves through the bent knee position. 4. The right foot placed flat on the ground 90 degrees to the left foot.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) **ABOUT TURN – FOUR.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left leg moves through the bent knee position and placed down flat on the ground. Heels together and feet angled at 45 degrees. 2. The arms remain at the side of the body. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Arms remain checked into the side of the body. 2. The movement is carried out at the pace of the Slow March. 3. The left leg moves through the bent knee position. 4. The left foot placed flat on the ground heels together and feet angled at 45 degrees. 5. The body is erect and square to the new direction.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ABOUT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT FORWARD.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The About Turn is completed in three beats equal to three paces in Slow Time. 2. On completion of the movement and calling out FORWARD the right foot is advanced, and the Slow March continued at 65 paces per minute.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ABOUT TURN.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT FORWARD.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 6 - COMPLIMENTS ON THE SLOW MARCH - EYES LEFT/RIGHT AND EYES FRONT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Eyes Left/Right and Eyes Front on the Slow March.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	About turn on the Slow March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Eyes Left/Right on the Slow March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to pay the correct compliments to a commissioned officer or an uncased colour or standard in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES LEFT/RIGHT EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>TURN TURN.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION, THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) COMPLIMENTS ON THE MARCH – EYES LEFT/RIGHT.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES LEFT/RIGHT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the right foot strikes the ground, as the left foot touches the ground the head and eyes are to be turned smartly in the direction ordered. 2. The arms are to remain at the Attention position in the normal manner of the Slow March. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: TURN. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arms are at the Attention position as in the Slow March. 2. The head is turned smartly in the direction ordered as the left foot touches the ground. 3. Keep the chin up to avoid it dropping on the shoulder.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) COMPLIMENTS ON THE MARCH – EYES FRONT.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the right foot touches the ground. 2. As the left foot touches the ground the head and eyes are to be returned smartly to the front. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: TURN. 	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES LEFT/RIGHT</p> <p>EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>TURN</p> <p>TURN.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME COMPLIMENTS ON THE MARCH</p> <p>EYES LEFT/RIGHT</p> <p>EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>TURN</p> <p>TURN.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. On the ceremonial parade ground this movement would be conducted between points A and B (a distance of 20 paces).

LESSON 7 – SLOW MARK TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Slow Mark Time.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Compliments on the Slow March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Slow Mark Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Slow Mark Time in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MARK TIME.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION, THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SLOW MARK TIME – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground. A pace of 15 in (38 cm) is to be taken with the right foot. 2. The arms are to remain checked into the side of the body. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arms remain still at the side of the body as in the position of Attention. 2. The body is erect and square to the front. 3. The movement is carried out at the pace of the Slow March.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SLOW MARK TIME – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Mark Time commences on the left foot. 2. Each person is to Mark Time at 65 paces per minute. 3. When marking time each foot is to be raised alternately and is to move through the bent knee position with the thigh parallel to the ground. No ground is to be gained or lost. 4. Each foot, as it is raised, is to be pointed downwards and the leg (below the knee) is to be perpendicular to the ground. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Marking time on the same ground. 2. The rate of marching is maintained at 65 paces per minute. 3. The feet DO NOT stamp on the ground. 4. The arms remain still at the side of the body as in the position of Attention. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MARK TIME.	On the execution of the movements the instructor is to call out: CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MARK TIME.	Students to execute the movements and call out the timing: CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 8 – HALT FROM SLOW MARK TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Halt from Slow Mark Time.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Slow Mark Time.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Halt from Slow Mark Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Halt from Slow Mark Time in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) HALT FROM SLOW MARK TIME – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot strikes the ground. The right leg comes through the bend the knee position and the foot is placed firmly on the ground next to the left foot, into the position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right leg goes through the bent knee position. 2. The feet are at the position of Attention. 3. The body is erect and square to the front with no further movement. 4. The arms remain still at the side of the body at the position of Attention.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.	On the execution of the movements the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME HALT.	Students to execute the movements and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 9 – CHANGE STEP ON SLOW MARK TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Change Step on Slow Mark Time.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Halt From Slow Mark Time.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Change Step on Slow Mark Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Change Step on Slow Mark Time in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT LEFT RIGHT.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CHANGE STEP – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.</p>	<p>1. Given when the right foot strikes the ground, two successive movements are to be completed with the left foot; marking time is then to be restarted with the right foot.</p> <p>2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT LEFT RIGHT.</p>	<p>1. The arms remain at the sides of the body in the position of Attention.</p> <p>2. There is no forward, rearward or lateral movement.</p> <p>3. The movement is carried out at the pace of the Slow March.</p> <p>4. The body is erect and square to the front.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to be practised Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: LEFT LEFT RIGHT.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE – STEP.	Students to execute the movements and call out the timing: LEFT LEFT RIGHT.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 10 – FORWARD FROM SLOW MARK TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Forward from Slow Mark Time.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Change Step from Slow Mark Time.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Forward from Slow Mark Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to return to the Slow March from Slow Mark Time in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME FORWARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) FORWARD FROM SLOW MARK TIME – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME</p> <p>FORWARD.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left foot touches the ground, the movement of the right foot is to be completed and the Slow March resumed, starting with the left foot. 2. The arms remain at the sides of the body as in the Attention position. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: CHECK FORWARD. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right leg goes through the bent knee position at the pace of the Slow March. 2. The left foot is forced forward and resumes the Slow March regulation pace of 65 paces a minute. 3. The arms remain at the position of Attention.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME</p> <p>FORWARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK FORWARD.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME FORWARD.	Students to execute the movements and call out the timing: CHECK FORWARD.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 11 – CHANGE STEP ON THE SLOW MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Change Step on the Slow March
Timings	One 10 minute period
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Forward from Slow Mark Time.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is the Change Step on the Slow March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Change Step on the Slow March in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION, THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CHANGE STEP – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the right foot is on the ground. A full 30 in (75 cm) pace is taken with the left foot. 2. The arms remain at the Attention position. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full marching pace of 30 in (75 cm) is carried out. With the left foot firm and flat on the floor. 2. The arms are steady at the sides of the body. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CHANGE STEP – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right foot is then brought forward so that the hollow of the right foot is against the heel of the left foot, causing a momentary pause in forward movement. 2. The arms remain at the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arms are kept at the sides of the body. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-collectively.</p>	

3) **CHANGE STEP – THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is then forced forward a full 75 cm (30 in) marching pace. 2. The arms remain at the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full marching pace is carried out with the left foot at the Slow March. 2. Although the step is changed the timing of the Slow March is not altered. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: LEFT RIGHT LEFT.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE STEP.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: LEFT RIGHT LEFT.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 12 –BREAKING INTO SLOW TIME FROM QUICK TIME

INSTRUCTOR’S NOTES

Aim	To teach Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Change Step on Slow March.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Break into Slow Time from Quick Time in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BREAKING INTO SLOW TIME SLOW MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION, THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **BREAKING INTO SLOW TIME – ONE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The command is given as the left foot is forward and on the ground. 2. A full 30 in (75 cm) pace is completed, in Quick Time with the right foot. 3. At the same time the arms are checked into the sides of the body to the position of Attention. 4. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full Quick March marching pace is carried out with the right leg. 2. The arms are forced into the sides of the body in a scissor-like movement. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **BREAKING INTO SLOW TIME – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is advanced in Slow Time a full 30 in (75 cm). 2. The arms are kept into the sides of the body as in the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pace of the Slow March is continued at 65 paces a minute. 2. The arms are kept at the sides of the body. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BREAKING INTO SLOW TIME SLOW MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movements the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BREAKING INTO SLOW TIME SLOW MARCH.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>CHECK LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>

LESSON 13 – BREAKING INTO QUICK TIME FROM SLOW TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Breaking into Slow Time from Quick Time.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in foot drill is Breaking into Quick Time from Slow Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Break into Quick Time from Slow Time in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BREAK INTO QUICK TIME QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The preliminary words of command are given on consecutive feet, starting on the left, followed by a pause of 4 paces. 2. QUICK is then given on the left and MARCH on the right foot.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **BREAKING INTO QUICK TIME – ONE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The command is given when the right foot is on the ground. 2. The left foot is advanced, in Quick Time, a full 30 in (75 cm) pace. 3. At the same time the Quick March arm swing is adopted. 4. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is advanced in the Quick March. 2. The arms are swung in the Quick March. 3. The body is erect and square to the front. 4. The Quick March is continued.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BREAKING INTO QUICK TIME QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movements the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>FOOT DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BREAKING INTO QUICK TIME QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movements and call out the timing:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>

PART 1 - CHAPTER 5

ARMS DRILL

CONTENTS

LESSON No	TITLE	PAGE No
1	Attention	1-5-2
2	Stand At Ease	1-5-7
3	The Stand Easy	1-5-12
4	Attention From Stand At Ease	1-5-17
5	Change Arms At The Shoulder	1-5-23
6	Slope Arms from the Shoulder	1-5-31
7	Shoulder Arms from the Slope	1-5-38
8	Change Arms at the Slope/Change Arms on the March	1-5-45
9	Present Arms from the Slope	1-5-53
10	Slope Arms from the Present	1-5-61
11	Ground Arms from the Shoulder	1-5-67
12	To the Shoulder Take Up Arms	1-5-77
13	On Guard from the Slope	1-5-87
14	Slope Arms from the On Guard	1-5-95
15	Port Arms from the Slope	1-5-103
16	Slope Arms from the Port Arms	1-5-109
17	Recover Arms from the Slope Arms	1-5-116
18	Slope Arms from the Recover Arms	1-5-122
19	Saluting to the front at the Halt	1-5-128
20	Saluting to a Flank at the Halt	1-5-134
21	Saluting to a Flank on the March	1-5-141
22	Fix Bayonets	1-5-149
23	Unfix Bayonets	1-5-156

LESSON 1 – ATTENTION

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the position of Attention.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is the position of Attention. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to stand in a position from which all rifle exercises can originate, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.</p>	<p>1. On the execution of this movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) ATTENTION – ONE (Fig 5-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The position of Attention is taken as for foot drill. 2. The rifle is to be held in the right shoulder, with the fingers curled under the butt plate and thumb curled around the toe of the butt and in line with the seam of the trousers. 3. The rifle is to be held at the fullest extent of the right arm with the foresight in the right shoulder and the magazine square to the front. 4. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Butt pulled back fully and the thumb in line with the seam of the trousers. 2. Foresight forced in to the shoulder. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD SHUN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Fig 5-1
POSITION OF ATTENTION

LESSON 2 - STAND AT EASE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the position of Stand At Ease.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Attention.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is the position of Stand At Ease. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to adopt a relaxed position without any unnecessary movement or talking in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.</p>	<p>1. On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **STAND AT EASE – ONE (Fig 5-2).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The same movement is carried out as in foot drill except that the left arm remains still at the side. 2. The rifle does NOT move throughout the execution of this movement and remains as for the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Butt pulled back fully and the thumb in line with the seam of the trousers. 2. Foresight kept in to the shoulder. 3. The body erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 5-2).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively- Individually- Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Fig 5-2

POSITION OF AT EASE

LESSON 3 – THE STAND EASY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the position of Stand Easy.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Stand At Ease.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is the position of Stand Easy. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to adopt a relaxed position in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND EASY.</p>	<p>1. The instructor is to execute the movement.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement. 2. There is no timing for this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) THE STAND EASY – ONE (Fig 5-3).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STAND EASY.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is to be brought across the front of the body to a position front and centre. 2. At the same time the left hand is brought sharply from the left side of the body to encompass the right hand in a full grip. 3. Both arms are to hang straight towards the ground with the elbows straight, but relaxed. 4. On the execution of the movement the instructor is not required to call out the timing. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The magazine is pointing off to the left. 2. The butt is held approximately ½ in (12 mm) out from the waist belt under control of the right hand. 3. The foresight of the rifle is kept into the shoulder. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND EASY.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is not required to call out the time.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND EASY.	Students to execute the movement and there is no requirement to call out the time.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. When the word of command: "Squad", "Flight", "Squadron" or "Parade" is received the rifle is pulled back into the At Ease position.



Fig 5-3

STAND EASY

LESSON 4 - ATTENTION FROM STAND AT EASE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Attention from the Stand At Ease position.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Stand At Ease from Attention.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is the position of Attention from the position of Stand At Ease. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to come to the correct position of Attention from the position of Stand At Ease in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME INSTRUCTOR SHUN.</p>	<p>1. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SHUN – ONE (Fig 5-4).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The same movement is carried out as in foot drill except that the arms do not move. 2. The rifle does NOT move throughout the execution of this movement. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Butt pulled back fully and the thumb in line with the seam of the trousers. 2. Rifle does not move and the foresight is kept in to the shoulder. 3. The left leg must go through the bent knee position. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.</p>	<p>1. On the execution of this movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD SHUN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Fig 5-4

ATTENTION

LESSON 5 - CHANGE ARMS AT THE SHOULDER

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Change Arms at the Shoulder.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. After teaching the Change Arms from the right shoulder to the left shoulder the instructor is to teach the Change Arms from the left to the right.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	The Shoulder Arms.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is Change Arms at the Shoulder. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to rest a limb in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are four parts to the movement. 2. To Change Arms to the right side reverse the process.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CHANGE ARMS – ONE (Fig 5-5).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is to be forced into a vertical position 4 to 6 in (100 to 150 mm) in front of the centre of the body with the right arm at its fullest extent. 2. At the same time the left hand comes across the body, by the shortest possible route and strikes and seizes the hand guard just above the trigger guard, in a full grip. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to callout: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand is to strike, seize and grasp the hand guard with a full grip, just above the trigger guard. 2. The rifle remains vertical. 3. The rifle is 4 to 6 in (100 to 150 mm) in front of the centre of the body. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CHANGE ARMS – TWO (Fig 5-6).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand releases its grip and strikes and seizes the hand guard immediately above the left hand. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Strike, seize and grasp the hand guard with a full grip just above the left hand. 2. The rifle remains vertical. 3. The rifle is 4 to 6 in (100 to 150 mm) in front of the centre of the body. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) CHANGE ARMS - THREE (Fig 5-7).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement, giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand forces the rifle into a vertical position at the left side of the body, ensuring the rifle is touching the shoulder. 2. At the same time the left hand releases its grip on the hand guard and strikes and seizes the base of the butt plate, fingers curled under the butt and the thumb curled around the toe of the butt. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad will call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure the rifle is vertical in the left shoulder. 2. Ensure a cup-like grip with the left hand. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to be practised Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) CHANGE ARMS - FOUR (Fig 5-8).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right arm is cut away by the shortest possible route to the right side of the body, the left hand pulling the butt of the rifle back to resume the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure the rifle butt is forced back. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to be practised Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 5-5



Second Movement

Fig 5-6



Third Movement

Fig 5-7

CHANGE ARMS AT THE SHOULDER



Final Position

Fig 5-8

CHANGE ARMS AT THE SHOULDER

LESSON 6 - SLOPE ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Slope Arms From the Shoulder.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Change Arms at the Shoulder.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is Slope Arms from the shoulder. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to adopt the Slope Arms position from the Shoulder Arms in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SLOPE ARMS - ONE (Fig 5-9).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand forces the butt forward so the rifle is vertical. 2. At the same time, the left hand comes smartly across the body and strikes and seizes the hand guard just above the trigger guard keeping the forearm horizontal to the ground. 3. At the same time, the right hand changes position to a 'Y'-like grip on the small of the butt. The right elbow is to be kept in to the side of the body. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is in the vertical position in the right shoulder. 2. The right hand has a 'Y'-like grip on the small of the butt. 3. The left forearm is parallel to the ground. 4. The body erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SLOPE ARMS – TWO (Fig 5-10).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand forces the rifle up and across the body, by the shortest possible route, placing the rifle on the left shoulder with the magazine facing the left and ensuring the right hand changes to a full grip. 2. At the same time the left hand releases the grip and strikes and seizes the butt plate with a cup-like grip. 3. On completion of this part of the movement, the left forearm is to be parallel to the ground. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Rifle moved across body by the shortest possible route. 2. Head remains still throughout the movement. 3. The left hand has a full grip on the butt. Left forearm parallel to the ground. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **SLOPE ARMS – THREE (Fig 5-11).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand is to be cut sharply away to the right side of the body to the position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand is cut away sharply to the side of body. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to be practised Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. **END OF LESSON DRILLS.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 5-9



Second Movement

Fig 5-10

SLOPE ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER



Fig 5-11

SLOPE ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER

LESSON 7 - SHOULDER ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Shoulder Arms from the Slope.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Slope arms from the Shoulder.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is Shoulder Arms from the Slope. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to adopt the Shoulder Arms position from the Slope Arms in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME INSTRUCTOR SHOULDER ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are four parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SHOULDER ARMS – ONE (Fig 5-12).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<p>1. The right hand is forced across the body, by the shortest possible route, to strike and seize the small of the butt with a full grip, fingers curled around.</p> <p>2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. Ensure a full grip with the right hand around the small of butt.</p> <p>2. The body is erect and square to the front.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SHOULDER ARMS – TWO (Fig 5-13).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced down to a vertical position on the right side of the body under control of the right hand. At the same time the right hand reverts to a ‘Y’-like grip. 2. The left hand quits the rifle and strikes and seizes the hand guard in a full grip directly above the trigger guard. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced back fully into the right shoulder in a vertical position. 2. Right hand changes to a ‘Y’-like grip on small of butt. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **SHOULDER ARMS - THREE (Fig 5-14).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand changes its grip and strikes and seizes the butt plate in a cup-like grip. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Right hand assumes a cup-like grip on the butt. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to be practised Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) **SHOULDER ARMS - FOUR (Fig 5-15).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left arm is to cut away by the shortest possible route to the left side of the body, the right hand pulling the rifle back to resume the position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Rifle butt pulled back fully. 2. Left hand cut away to the left side of body. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHOULDER ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT / ONE LEFT - RIGHT / ONE LEFT - RIGHT / ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHOULDER ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 5-12



Second Movement

Fig 5-13

SHOULDER ARMS FROM THE SLOPE



Third Movement

Fig 5-14



Final Position

Fig 5-15

SHOULDER ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

LESSON 8 - CHANGE ARMS AT THE SLOPE/CHANGE ARMS ON THE MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Change Arms at the Slope/and on the March.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. After teaching the Change Arms from the left to right the Change Arms from right to left is to be taught.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	The Shoulder Arms.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is Change Arms at the Slope. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to rest a limb in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are four parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CHANGE ARMS – ONE (Fig 5-16).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right arm is forced across the body by the shortest possible route to strike and seize the small of the butt with a full grip. 2. The left forearm is kept parallel to the ground. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Right hand takes a full grip on the small of the butt. 2. Left forearm is kept parallel to the ground. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) CHANGE ARMS – TWO (Fig 5-17).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced across to the front centre of the body so it is vertical, about 4 to 6 in (100 to 150 mm) away from the body, with the foresight level with the mouth. 2. At the same time the left hand quits its grip on the butt plate and strikes and seizes the hand guard, directly above the trigger guard, with a full grip (back of the hand to the left) forcing the left forearm and elbow into the rifle. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Rifle moved to centre of body. 2. Rifle 4 to 6 in away from body. 3. Foresight level with mouth. 4. The left hand takes a full grip around the hand guard. 5. Left forearm and elbow forced into the rifle. 6. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) CHANGE ARMS –THREE (Fig 5-18).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand forces the rifle across the body onto the right shoulder turning the rifle so the magazine is facing right. 2. At the same time the right hand changes its grip to strike and seize the butt plate in a cup-like grip keeping the right forearm parallel to the ground. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Rifle turned to right. 2. Head remains steady throughout. 3. Right hand assumes cup-like grip on the butt. 4. Right elbow pulled back fully, right forearm parallel to ground. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to be practised Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) CHANGE ARMS FOUR (Fig 5-19).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left arm is cut away by the shortest possible route to resume the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Left arm is cut away by shortest possible route to left side of body. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to be practised Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE - LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. The Change Arms from right to left should now be taught.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. The instructor is now to teach the Change Arms on the March.</p> <p>2. The order is given as the left heel strikes the ground.</p> <p>3. Movements are executed each time the left heel strikes the ground.</p>



First Movement

Fig 5-16



Second Movement

Fig 5-17

CHANGE ARMS



Third Movement

Fig 5-18



Final Position

Fig 5-19

CHANGE ARMS

LESSON 9 - PRESENT ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Present Arms from the Slope.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Change Arms at the Slope.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is Present Arms. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to pay compliments with a rifle in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **PRESENT ARMS - ONE (Fig 5-20).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right arm is forced across the body to strike and seize the small of the butt with a full grip. 2. The right arm is to be kept parallel to the ground. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand has a full grip on the small of butt. 2. The right forearm is kept parallel to the ground. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **PRESENT ARMS – TWO (Fig 5-21).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Under control of the right hand the rifle is to be forced to the front and centre of the body so that it is vertical. 2. The magazine is to be to the front and the base of the hand guard on line with the mouth. 3. At the same time the left hand is to quit its grip from the butt and move approximately 6 in (150 mm) from the rifle. 4. The wrist, forearm and elbow running parallel to the rifle strike the left side of the rifle with fingers extended. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is kept close to the body and vertical. 2. Ensure the fingers of the left hand are extended. 3. The left forearm is forced well in and parallel to the rifle. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **PRESENT ARMS - THREE (Fig 5-22).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is pulled straight down in front of the body to the fullest extent of the right arm, the rifle being kept vertical 4 to 6 in (100 to 150 mm) in front of the body. 2. The right hand changes its grip to a 'Y'-like grip on the small of the butt. 3. At the same time the left hand is forced approximately 6 in (150 mm) from the rifle, to strike and seize the hand guard just above the trigger guard in a full grip, the exception being the thumb which is extended vertically to the left. 4. At the same time the right knee is bent and the hollow of the right foot is placed smartly behind and against the left heel. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure the rifle is vertical. 2. The right hand has a 'Y'-like grip. 3. The left hand has a full grip on the hand guard, except for the thumb. The left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in. 4. The instep of the right foot is touching the heel of the left at an angle of 30 degrees. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PRESENT ARMS.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PRESENT ARMS.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement
Fig 5-20



Second Movement
Fig 5-21

PRESENT ARMS



Front



Side

Final Position

Fig 5-22

PRESENT ARMS

LESSON 10 - SLOPE ARMS FROM THE PRESENT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Slope Arms from the Present Arms.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Present Arms.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is Slope Arms from the Present. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to return the rifle to the Slope in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SLOPE ARMS – ONE (Fig 5-23).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Under control of the right hand, taking a full grip around the small of the butt, the rifle is forced across the body by the shortest possible route so that the hand guard comes to rest on the left shoulder. 2. The magazine faces to the left, as in the Slope. 3. The right forearm is parallel to the ground with the elbow pointing out to the right. 4. At the same time the left hand releases its grip on the hand guard and strikes, seizes and grasps the butt plate in a cup-like grip, with the thumb around the toe of the butt. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call Out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Left hand releases its grip and strikes the butt plate. 2. The right forearm is parallel to the ground. 3. The head remains steady throughout. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SLOPE ARMS –TWO (Fig 5-24).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand quits its grip on the small of the butt and cuts across the front of the body by the shortest possible route back to the position of Attention. 2. At the same time the right leg comes through the bent knee position back into the position of Attention. 3. Any minor adjustment required to ensure the left arm is in the position of the Slope is carried out as the right arm is cut away. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand in the correct position of Attention. 2. The rifle is in the correct position of the Slope Arms. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 5-23



Final Position

Fig 5-24

SLOPE ARMS

LESSON 11 - GROUND ARMS FROM THE SHOULDER

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Ground Arms.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Slope Arms from the Present.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is the Ground Arms. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to Ground Arms in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME GROUND ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are five parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FIVE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **GROUND ARMS – ONE (Fig 5-25).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Under the control of the right hand the rifle is brought to the vertical position. 2. At the same time the left hand is forced across the body by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the hand guard just above the trigger guard. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to callout ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical in the right shoulder. 2. The left forearm is parallel to the ground. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **GROUND ARMS – TWO (Fig 5-26).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand releases its grip and is forced 4 to 6 in (100 to 150 mm) away from the rifle by bending the elbow, to strike, seize and grasp the rifle between the magazine housing and the pistol grip. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle and left arm do not move throughout this movement. 2. The right hand has a cup-like grip between the magazine housing and the pistol grip, with exception of the thumb. 3. The right wrist, elbow and forearm forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) GROUND ARMS –THREE (Fig 5-27).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The grip of the left hand is released and it is forced across the body by the shortest possible route to the position of Attention. 2. At the same time the rifle is forced down to the right side of the body and under the control of the right hand allow the rifle to rotate forward so that it is parallel to the ground. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right arm is at its fullest extent with the rifle barrel square to the front and parallel to the ground. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) GROUND ARMS – FOUR (Fig 5-28).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A 15 in (375 mm) pace is taken with the left foot and the flat of the foot is placed on the ground. 2. Both knees are bent and the rifle lowered to the ground, with the wrist of the right hand twisted to force the magazine to the right. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is square to the front with the magazine pointing to the right. 2. The heel of the butt plate is in line with the toecap. 3. The left arm remains in the position of Attention. The head and eyes remain upright. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

5) **GROUND ARMS – FIVE (Fig 5-29).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fifth movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The grip on the rifle with the right hand is released. 2. Stand up taking a pace of 375 mm (15 in) to the rear with the left foot and adopt the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure the butt plate is in line with the toecap. 2. The rifle is square to the front. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME GROUND ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME GROUND ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 5-25



Second Movement

Fig 5-26

GROUND ARMS



Third Movement

Fig 5-27



Fourth Movement

Fig 5-28

GROUND ARMS



Final Position

Fig 5-29

GROUND ARMS

1-5-76

LESSON 12 - TO THE SHOULDER TAKE UP ARMS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach To The Shoulder Take up Arms.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Ground Arms from the Shoulder.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is To The Shoulder Take Up Arms. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to Take Up Arms to the Shoulder from the ground in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE SHOULDER TAKE UP ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are five parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FIVE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) TAKE UP ARMS - ONE (Fig 5-30).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A short 15 in (375 mm) pace is taken with the left foot, and the flat of the foot is placed on the ground. 2. Both knees are bent and the rifle is grasped with a cup like grip with the right hand between the magazine housing and the pistol grip. The left arm is to remain straight. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground, the toes of the right foot are on the ground with the heel raised. 2. The rifle remains on the ground under the control of the right hand. 3. The left hand is not to be placed on the left thigh. 4. The head and eyes remain upright. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) TAKE UP ARMS – TWO (Fig 5-31).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Straightening the legs and returning the feet to the position of Attention raises the body. 2. At the same time, the rifle is rotated downwards by the right wrist and kept horizontal to the ground, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced into the side of the body. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 45 degrees front and centre of the body and both knees are braced, heels together. 2. The rifle is horizontal with the magazine pointing downwards. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) TAKE UP ARMS –THREE (Fig 5-32).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced to a vertical position on the right side of the body under control of the right hand. 2. At the same time the left hand is forced across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the hand guard just above the trigger guard. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical on the right side of the body, the right hand retains its cup-like grip on the rifle with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 2. The left hand has a full grip on the hand guard of the rifle with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 3. The left forearm is parallel to the ground. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to be practised Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) TAKE UP ARMS –FOUR (Fig 5-33).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The grip of the right hand is released and the hand is forced 4 to 6 in (100 to 150 mm) from the rifle to strike, seize and grasp the butt plate with a cup-like grip. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle, left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the execution of this movement. 2. The right arm is fully extended with a cup-like grip on the butt plate. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

5) TAKE UP ARMS –FIVE (Fig 5-34).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fifth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The grip of the left hand is released and it is forced across the body by the shortest route to assume the position of Attention. 2. At the same time the rifle is forced back to the position of Shoulder Arms. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is now in the position of Shoulder Arms. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE SHOULDER TAKE UP ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE SHOULDER TAKE UP - ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT- RIGHT /ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 5-30



Second Movement

Fig 5-31

TAKE UP ARMS



Third Movement

Fig 5-32



Fourth Movement

Fig 5-33

TAKE UP ARMS



Final Position
Fig 5-34

TAKE UP ARMS

LESSON 13 - ON GUARD FROM THE SLOPE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach On Guard from the Slope.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	To The Shoulder Take Up Arms.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is On Guard from the Slope. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel to challenge whilst on sentry duty in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ON GUARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) ON GUARD - ONE (Fig 5-35).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. With the rifle in the position of the Slope the right arm is forced across the body to strike, seize and grasp the rifle in the area of the small of the butt, with a full grip. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure the right hand has a full grip of the small of the butt. 2. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are parallel to the ground. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **ON GUARD - TWO (Fig 5-36).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Force the rifle under control of the right hand across the body to the right shoulder. 2. At the same time the left hand releases its grip on the butt plate to strike, seize and grasp the hand guard with a full grip, while the right hand changes to a 'Y'-like grip. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure the right hand has a 'Y'-like grip. 2. Ensure the left hand has a full grip on the hand guard. 3. Ensure the rifle is vertical in the right shoulder. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **ON GUARD - THREE (Fig 5-37).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A pace forward of 30 in (750 mm) is to be taken with the left foot. 2. At the same time the rifle is to be forced forward, in front of the right shoulder, in an aggressive stance so that it is at an angle of 45 degrees. 3. The right hand changes position to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip, with the index finger running along the trigger guard; the butt is to be forced into the hip by the right arm and the muzzle is to be level with the shoulder. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensure a 30 in (750 mm) pace forward with the left foot. 2. Allow the left knee to bend. 3. Keep the rifle in line with right shoulder. 4. Keep the butt in contact with right hip at an angle of 45 degrees. 5. Ensure finger is outside the trigger guard. 6. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ON GUARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ON GUARD.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 5-35



Second Movement

Fig 5-36

ON GUARD



Final position

Fig 5-37

ON GUARD

1-5-94

LESSON 14 - SLOPE ARMS FROM THE ON GUARD

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Slope Arms from the On Guard.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	On Guard from the Slope Arms.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is the Slope Arms from On Guard. The reason this lesson is taught is to enable an individual or body of personnel, whilst on sentry duty, to return to the Slope after the challenge, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **SLOPE ARMS - ONE (Fig 5-38).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand forces the rifle back into the vertical position at the right shoulder, the right hand quitting the pistol grip then striking and seizing the small of the butt in a 'Y'-like grip. 2. At the same time the left leg is moved through the bent knee position to resume the position of Attention. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Force the rifle back in to the correct vertical position in right shoulder. 2. Strike and seize the small of the butt with a 'Y'-like grip. 3. Resume position of Attention with left foot. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SLOPE ARMS –TWO (Fig 5-39).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced across the front of the body, by the shortest possible route, under control of the right hand which changes its grip from ‘Y’-like to a full grip around the area of the small of the butt, to resume the Slope Arms position. 2. At the same time the left hand quits its grip on the hand guard to strike, seize and grasp the butt plate in a cup-like grip with the thumb curled around the toe of the butt. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Rifle moves by the shortest possible route. 2. Throughout this movement the head does not move. 3. The left hand has a cup-like grip. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **SLOPE ARMS – THREE (Fig 5-40).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand quits its grip on the small of the butt and returns to the right side of the body, by the shortest possible route, into the position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left arm moves by the shortest possible route. 2. Throughout this movement the head does not move. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 5-38



Second Movement

Fig 5-39

SLOPE ARMS FROM THE ON GUARD



Final Position

Fig 5-40

SLOPE ARMS FROM THE ON GUARD

LESSON 15 - PORT ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Port Arms from the Slope Arms.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Slope Arms from the On Guard.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is Port Arms. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to Port Arms, when safe carriage of a rifle with bayonet fixed is required in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PORT ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) PORT ARMS -ONE (Fig 5-41).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right arm comes across the body by the shortest possible route to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip. 2. On the execution of this drill movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand has a full hold of the pistol grip. 2. The index finger curled round the pistol grip. 3. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) PORT ARMS TWO (Fig 5-42).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand quits its grip to strike, seize and grasp the hand guard with a full grip. 2. At the same time the rifle is forced across the front centre of the body until it is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees in front of the chest. 3. At the same time the index finger is extended along the outside of the trigger guard. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is held at 4 to 6 in (100 to 150 mm) in front of and at an angle of 45 degrees across the chest. 2. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger, which runs up and along the trigger guard. 3. The right wrist, elbow and forearm are well forced in. 4. The left hand has a full grip of the hand guard with the wrist, elbow and forearm forced well in. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PORT ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of this movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PORT ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 5-41



Final Position

Fig 5-42

PORT ARMS

LESSON 16 - SLOPE ARMS FROM THE PORT ARMS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Slope Arms from the Port Arms.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Port Arms from the Slope Arms.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is Slope Arms from the Port Arms. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to Slope Arms from the Port Arms in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SLOPE ARMS – ONE (Fig 5-43).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Under control of the right hand the rifle is forced to the left shoulder. 2. At the same time, change the right hand to a full grip whilst forcing the left hand away from the rifle, to strike and grasp the butt plate in a cup-like grip. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is in the left shoulder at an angle of 45 degrees, the magazine square to the left. 2. The right hand has a full grip on the pistol grip. 3. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in and the left hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the wrist and forearm parallel to the ground and the elbow forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SLOPE ARMS –TWO (Fig 5-44).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand quits its grip of the pistol grip and by the shortest possible route returns to the position of Attention at the right side of the body. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is in the position of Slope Arms. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of this movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 5-43



Final Position

Fig 5-44

SLOPE ARMS FROM THE PORT ARMS

LESSON 17 - RECOVER ARMS FROM THE SLOPE ARMS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Recover Arms from the Slope Arms.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Slope Arms from the High Port.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is the Recover Arms from the Slope Arms. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to Recover Arms when acting as a marker on a parade in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RECOVER ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of this movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) RECOVER ARMS – ONE (Fig 5-45).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand is forced across the body, by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the small of the butt with a full grip. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle and left arm do not move throughout this movement. 2. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt, just below the magazine housing with the right arm, wrist and elbow parallel to the ground. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **RECOVER ARMS - TWO (Fig 5-46).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced to the front centre of the body under the control of the right hand. At the same time, rotate the grip of both hands to ensure total control of the rifle. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front. Cocking handle in line with the mouth. 2. The left hand has a cup-like grip of the butt plate with the thumb along the left side of the butt plate with the left wrist, forearm and elbow well in. 3. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RECOVER ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of this movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RECOVER ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 5-45



Final Position

Fig 5-46

RECOVER ARMS

LESSON 18 - SLOPE ARMS FROM THE RECOVER ARMS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Slope Arms from the Recover Arms.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	The Recover Arms.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is the Slope Arms from the Recover Arms. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to Slope Arms from the Recover position in a smart, uniform manner, having achieved the correct alignment on parade as a right marker.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SLOPE ARMS – ONE (Fig 5-47).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Under control of the right hand the rifle is forced back to the left shoulder to the position of the Slope Arms. 2. At the same time, rotate the grip of both hands to resume the ‘Recover Arms – ONE’ position. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is held at the Slope with the magazine square to the left. 2. The left hand has a cup-like grip on the butt with the thumb around the toe of the butt. The left wrist, forearm and elbow are parallel to the ground. 3. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt just below the magazine housing, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) SLOPE ARMS – TWO (Fig 5-48).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand quits its grip of the rifle, and is forced by the shortest possible route into the position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is in the position of Slope Arms. 2. The left hand has a cup-like grip on the butt with the thumb around the toe of the butt. The left wrist, forearm and elbow are parallel to the ground. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of this movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 5-47



Final Position

Fig 5-48

SLOPE ARMS FROM THE RECOVER ARMS

LESSON 19 - SALUTING TO THE FRONT AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach saluting to the front at the Halt.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Recover Arms.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is saluting to the front at the Halt. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to pay the correct compliment to an officer or an uncased colour or standard in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP TWO THREE DOWN.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) TO THE FRONT SALUTE - ONE (Fig 5-49).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Force the right arm from the Attention position across the body to strike the rifle in the area of the small of the Butt. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle remains in the position of Slope Arms. 2. The right hand with fingers extended and together is against the small of the butt with the thumb touching the index finger. 3. The wrist, forearm and elbow are straight and parallel to the ground. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) TO THE FRONT SALUTE - TWO (Fig 5-50).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand is forced across the body by the shortest possible route, at the same time clenching the fingers to form a fist to resume the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is in the position of Slope Arms. 2. The right hand is forced across the body by the shortest possible route. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of this movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP TWO THREE DOWN.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>UP TWO THREE DOWN.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement
Fig 5-49



Final Position
Fig 5-50

SALUTING TO THE FRONT AT THE HALT

LESSON 20 - SALUTING TO A FLANK AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach saluting to a flank at the Halt.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. The instructor is to teach saluting to the left then saluting to the right
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Saluting to the front at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is saluting to a flank at the Halt. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to pay the correct compliment to an officer or uncased colour or standard in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP TWO THREE FOUR FIVE DOWN.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) TO THE RIGHT SALUTE - ONE (Fig 5-51).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Force the right arm across the front of the body, by the shortest possible route into the correct position of the Salute. 2. At the same time force the head and eyes to face square across the right shoulder. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle remains in the position of Slope Arms. 2. The fingers of the right hand are extended and together against the small of the butt. 3. The head and eyes are in the correct position of the Salute. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **TO THE RIGHT SALUTE - TWO (Fig 5-52).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Force the right arm across the front of the body, by the shortest possible route into the position of Attention, at the same time clenching the hand to form a fist. 2. Force the head and eyes square to the front. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle remains in the position of Slope Arms. 2. The right hand is forced across the body, by the shortest possible route, to the position of Attention. 3. The head and eyes are forced to the front. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of this movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>UP TWO THREE FOUR FIVE DOWN.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The instructor is to teach saluting to the left at the Halt in the same way, ensuring that the head and eyes look over the right shoulder. 2. See (Fig 5-53).
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE LEFT / RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>UP TWO THREE FOUR FIVE DOWN.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. Practise both saluting to the right and left flank.



First Position

Fig 5-51



Final Position

Fig 5-52

SALUTING TO THE RIGHT AT THE HALT



First Position

Fig 5-53

SALUTING TO THE LEFT AT THE HALT

LESSON 21 - SALUTING TO A FLANK ON THE MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Saluting to a flank on the March.
Timings	One 40 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. The instructor is to teach saluting to the left then saluting to the right.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Saluting to the left and right at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Arms drill is saluting to a flank on the march. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to pay the correct compliment to an officer, or uncased colour or standard, whilst approaching from a flank in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK UP TWO THREE FOUR FIVE DOWN SWING.</p>	<p>1. There are four parts to the movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SALUTING TO A FLANK – ONE (Fig 5-54).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Given when the left heel strikes the ground, a further pace of 30 in (750 mm) is to be completed with the right foot and at the same time the right arm is to be checked in to the side of the body. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is in the correct position of the Slope Arms. 2. The right hand, wrist, forearm, elbow and eyes are in the position of the salute to the right. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SALUTING TO THE RIGHT – TWO (Fig 5-55).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE - UP - TWO THREE FOUR FIVE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the left foot completes a further marching pace and the heel strikes the ground the right arm is forced across the body to the position of the salute, a further FOUR full marching paces are taken. 2. At the same time, the head and eyes are forced to face square over the right shoulder. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: UP - TWO THREE FOUR FIVE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right heel strikes the ground first. The foot is flat and firm on the ground. 2. The rifle, right hand, wrist, forearm, elbow, head and eyes are in the position of the salute throughout these four paces.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) SALUTING TO THE RIGHT THREE (Fig 5-56).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full marching pace is taken with the right foot. 2. As the right heel strikes the ground the right arm is forced across the body to the position of Attention. 3. At the same time the head and eyes are forced to face square to the front. 4. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left foot is flat and firm on the ground. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) SALUTING TO THE RIGHT-FOUR (Fig 5-57).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A full marching pace is taken with the left foot. 2. At the same time, force the right arm forward and continue to march in Quick Time. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left heel strikes the ground and the right arm is forced forward. 2. Continue to march at the regulation pace of 116 paces to the minute. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK UP TWO THREE FOUR FIVE DOWN SWING.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The instructor is to teach Saluting to the left on the March, in the same way, ensuring that the head and eyes are forced over the right shoulder. 2. See (Fig 5-58).
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>CHECK UP TWO THREE FOUR FIVE DOWN SWING.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 5-54



Second Movement

Fig 5-55

SALUTING TO THE RIGHT ON THE MARCH



Third Movement

Fig 5-56

SALUTING TO THE RIGHT ON THE MARCH



Final Position

Fig 5-57



Fig 5-58

SALUTING TO THE LEFT ON THE MARCH

LESSON 22 - FIX BAYONETS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Fix Bayonets.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Bayonet frogs and Bayonets.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Slope Arms from the Shoulder.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is the Fix Bayonets. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to Fix Bayonets in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR WILL FIX BAYONETS FIX BAYONETS SHUN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement there are no timings to call out.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **FIX BAYONETS - FIX (Fig 5-59).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR WILL FIX BAYONETS FIX.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand is forced to the rear to grasp the bayonet handle with a full grip. 2. It is rotated anti-clockwise and forced out of the scabbard by forcing the left hand towards the ground, at its fullest extent. 3. The blade points to the right, parallel to the ground cutting edge uppermost. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Rifle must be vertical in the right shoulder with the arm forced well in. 2. The left arm is at its fullest extent with a full grip on the bayonet handle. 3. Blade pointing directly to the right cutting edge uppermost. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **FIX BAYONETS - BAYONETS (Fig 5-60).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR BAYONETS.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand is forced across the body by the shortest route to engage the bayonet onto the flash eliminator of the rifle. 2. At the same time the head and eyes are forced across the right shoulder to look at the bayonet. 3. The wrist is rotated so that the cutting edge is directly to the front and the bayonet is engaged. 4. Once the bayonet is engaged the left hand changes its grip to a 'Y'-like grip by straightening the fingers to point directly to the rear. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical in the right side of the body. 2. The left hand has a 'Y'-like grip with the fingers closed and directly pointing to the rear. 3. The left wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in. 4. The head and eyes look at the bayonet. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) FIX BAYNOTES - SHUN (Fig 5-61).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR SHUN.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand quits the bayonet and is forced across the body by the shortest route to the position of Attention. 2. At the same time the head and eyes are forced directly to the front and the rifle is forced to the rear to resume the position of the Shoulder Arms. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is now in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms with bayonet fitted. 2. The body is in the position of Attention.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL INSTRUCTOR WILL FIX BAYONETS FIX BAYONETS SHUN.</p>	<p>The instructor is to execute the movements.</p>	<p>1. The instructor should demonstrate the movement showing both front and rear profiles.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>SQUAD WILL FIX BAYONETS FIX BAYONETS SHUN.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movements.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



Front



Rear

**Fix
Fig 5-59**



Bayonets

Fig 5-60



Shun

Fig 5-6

FIX BAYONETS

LESSON 23 - UNFIX BAYONETS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Unfix Bayonets.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Bayonet frogs and bayonets.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Fix Bayonets (retain them on the rifle).
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in arms drill is the Unfix Bayonets. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or a body of personnel to unfix bayonets in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR WILL UNFIX BAYONETS UNFIX BAYONETS SHUN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movements the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE. (NO TIMING) ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement – each movement being executed on a separate word of command.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS EACH INTRODUCED BY A SEPARATE WORD OF COMMAND.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) UNFIX BAYONETS – UNFIX (Figs 5-62/5-63/5-64).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME UNFIX.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Force the rifle to the vertical position on the right side of the body. 2. At the same time force the left hand across the body to strike, seize and grasp the top of the hand guard in a full grip. 3. After a pause, under control of the left hand, force the rifle down in front of the body bending the knees sufficiently to be able to grip the rifle between the pistol grip and magazine with the knees. 4. At the same time the right hand comes across the body to strike, seize and grasp the bayonet handle in a full grip. 5. After a further pause, the left hand quits the hand guard to strike, seize and grasp the barrel, just below the right hand, in a full grip depressing the bayonet release catch. 6. The bayonet should be gently eased just clear of the flash eliminator. 7. On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with the heels together. 2. The rifle is gripped between the knees with the barrel forced well into the body, magazine square to the front. 3. The left hand has a full grip on the barrel and the right hand has a full grip of the bayonet handle. 4. Wrists, forearms and elbows are forced well in. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) UNFIX BAYONETS - BAYONETS (Fig 5-65).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR BAYONETS.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand is forced to the rear to grasp the scabbard in a 'Y'-like grip, turning the head and eyes toward the scabbard. 2. At the same time the right hand forces the bayonet across the body, rotating the blade to the left point down and strikes the scabbard. 3. The right hand changes its grip from a full grip to a 'Y'-like grip then engages the bayonet into the scabbard, so that the cutting edge is uppermost. 4. The left elbow is forced to the rear and the right elbow is forced well into the body, shoulders square to the front. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle remains vertical between the knees. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with the heels together. 2. The left hand has a 'Y'-like grip of the bayonet scabbard with the right hand having a 'Y'-like grip on the bayonet handle. 3. The head and eyes are forced square across the left shoulder and are looking down at the bayonet. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) UNFIX BAYONETS – SHUN (Figs 5-66/5-67/5-68).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SHUN.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand quits the bayonet and is forced by the shortest possible route to the right side of the body. 2. At the same time, the left hand releases its grip on the scabbard to strike, seize and grasp the rifle in a full grip on the barrel. The head and eyes are forced square to the front. 3. After a pause, under control of the left hand, the rifle is forced into the vertical position on the right side of the body. The right hand is brought 4 to 6 inches (100 to 150 mm) away from the rifle, to strike, seize and grasp the butt plate in a cup-like grip. 4. At the same time the legs are straightened at the knees. 5. After a further pause, the left hand is cut away, by the shortest possible route, to the left side of the body, at the same time the right hand pulls the butt of the rifle back into the correct position of Attention. 6. On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT – RIGHT / ONE LEFT – RIGHT / ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with the heels together. 2. The rifle is in the correct position of the Shoulder Arms. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME INSTRUCTOR WILL UNFIX BAYONETS</p> <p>UNFIX</p> <p>BAYONETS</p> <p>SHUN.</p>	<p>On the execution of this movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>(UNFIX) ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE</p> <p>(BAYONETS) NO TIMING</p> <p>(SHUN) ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SQUAD WILL UNFIX BAYONETS</p> <p>UNFIX</p> <p>BAYONETS</p> <p>SHUN.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>(UNFIX) ONE LEFT – RIGHT / ONE LEFT – RIGHT / ONE</p> <p>(BAYONETS) NO TIMING</p> <p>(SHUN) ONE LEFT – RIGHT / ONE LEFT – RIGHT / ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



UNFIX - First Movement

Fig 5-62



UNFIX - Second Movement

Fig 5-63

UNFIX BAYONETS



UNFIX - Third Movement

Fig 5-64



BAYONETS

Fig 5-65

UNFIX BAYONETS



SHUN - First Movement

Fig 5-66



SHUN – Second Movement

Fig 5-67



SHUN - Final Position

Fig 5-68

UNFIX BAYONETS

PART 1 - CHAPTER 6

SWORD DRILL

CONTENTS

LESSON NO	TITLE	PAGE
1	Introduction to Sword Drill	1-6-2
2	Draw Swords	1-6-8
3	Return Swords	1-6-14
4	Stand At Ease (Sword Drawn)	1-6-19
5	Attention from the Stand At Ease (Sword Drawn)	1-6-23
6	Stand Easy (Sword Drawn)	1-6-26
7	The Stand At Ease from Stand Easy (Sword Drawn)	1-6-30
8	Salute at the Halt (Sword Drawn)	1-6-33
9	Paying Compliments when Marching Past in Quick Time (Sword Drawn)	1-6-39
10	Eyes Front after Compliments in Quick Time (Sword Drawn)	1-6-43
11	Paying Compliments when Marching Past in Slow Time (Sword Drawn)	1-6-47
12	Eyes Front after Compliments in Slow Time (Sword Drawn)	1-6-53
Annex A	Parts of the Sword and Sword Belts	

PART 1 - CHAPTER 6

LESSON 1

INTRODUCTION TO SWORD DRILL

GENERAL

1. The sword is a traditional badge of rank and honour and also indicates a holder of Her Majesty's commission or warrant. Swords are to be worn on the occasions described in AP 1358 Dress Regulations. Colour Warrant Officers are not to carry a Pace Stick when wearing a Sword.

CARE AND HANDLING

2. **Handling.** White gloves are always to be worn when handling swords or ceremonial belts. The purpose of this is to prevent the deterioration of the giltwork which is caused by natural oils from the hands.

3. **Preservation.** After use in wet weather all parts are to be wiped dry with a chamois leather at the earliest opportunity before storing away, especially the steel blade. When not in use, the blade should in any case be lightly covered in grease to prevent corrosion.

4. **Cleaning.** No form of abrasive is permitted when cleaning swords. The gilt parts should be gently washed in mild soapy water and then lightly but thoroughly dried with a soft cloth. Leather parts may be enhanced with liquid boot polish. Under no circumstances are gilt parts to be cleaned with any metal or other polish.

5. **Training Use.** Whenever possible, dummy drill swords should be used in preference to ceremonial swords, for all practices and rehearsals.

INSTRUCTION

6. Officers are to be instructed in the names of the parts of the sword and sword belt before they begin sword drill exercises (see Annex A).

7. Exercises are to be practised first by numbers. When proficiency has been obtained, movements are to be carried out judging the time, observing pauses between each movement. Sword movements should always be made gracefully and with dignity rather than with the snap and staccato of other drill.

METHODS OF WEARING THE SWORD

8. **The Normal Fitting.** The usual method of wearing the sword is known as the Normal Fitting ie not slung on the belt hook. The scabbard containing the sword is clipped to 2 slings which in turn hang from a plain canvas belt worn under the uniform jacket so that the slings appear from under the skirt of the jacket (see Fig 6-1). This is the usual manner for RAF officers to wear the sword eg as reviewing and inspecting officers, those in staff

attendance, at a Service wedding when uniform is the stated order of dress, spectators at a ceremony and at any other occasion not referred to in para 9 below.

9. **The Hooked-Up Fitting.** A parade commander, an officer on a parade and any officer commanding personnel on parade are to wear the sword hooked-up on the sword belt ie slung on the belt hook (see Fig 6-2). Officers required to carry ceremonial paraphernalia eg Sword of State, Wand of Office, Colour or Standard, medal cushion and other such items, are also to wear the sword hooked-up on the sword belt, as are officers appointed as Pallbearers at a funeral. In such cases Air Officers do not wear their ceremonial sash, as the ceremonial sword belt replaces it.

10. **Greatcoats.** When the greatcoat is worn with the sword in the normal position, the sword-hilt protrudes through to the front of the coat with the left coat-tail folded back and pinned from inside (see Fig 6-4). If the greatcoat is worn when the sword is in the hooked-up position the sword should be removed from the scabbard before donning the coat. Once the coat is on, the mouth of the scabbard receives the sword from the outside, through the vent in the left side of the greatcoat. Care must be taken to ensure that the scabbard is hanging correctly with the rings to the rear and the hilt to the front, before inserting the sword.

HOOKING-UP THE SWORD AND CEREMONIAL SWORD BELT

11. The sword and belt are fitted as follows:

- a. The scabbard containing the sword is fastened to the 2 slings; the shorter (front) sling to the upper ring on the scabbard and the longer (rear) sling to the lower ring (correctly called the middle ring).
- b. The scabbard is then raised, hilt to the front, scabbard rings to the rear, the upper ring is passed over and onto the hook on the sword belt. The sword belt is worn outside the jacket in place of the canvas belt. The sword belt is slotted into the 2 plain brass hooks sewn into the waist of the jacket; this helps to support the weight of the slung sword.
- c. The shorter front sling is to be looped forward between the body and the scabbard.

BASIC DRILL - NORMAL FITTING

12. **Position of Attention.** The usual position of Attention is to be adopted. The sword, in its scabbard, is to be held perpendicularly at the left side, with the hilt to the front and the shoe of the scabbard resting on the ground just in front of the heel of the foot. The left arm is to be as straight as possible without being strained, elbow close to the side, allowing the hand to steady the sword at the most convenient position. This will vary according to the officer's build; personnel of short stature will find it convenient to hold the sword at the handle or even at the top of the scabbard. The taller person will rest the hand on top of the pommel, back of the hand to the left, curling the fingers lightly under the top of the hilt, thumb on top of the hilt and pointing forward (see Fig 6-1).

13. **Standing at Ease.** The left foot is to be moved 12 in (30 cm) to the left, the scabbard being carried off with the left foot and rested again, as before, beside the foot. At the same time the hilt is carried forward to the full extent of the left arm (see Fig 6-3).

14. **Marching.** The sword is to be canted upwards and to the rear by the left hand without stooping or disturbing the posture of the body. The scabbard is held naturally at the point of balance, at an angle of 45 degrees, with the arm fully extended and kept close to the side. The rings of the scabbard are to be downward; the hilt is to rest against the underside of the forearm just above the wrist (see Fig 6-5).

15. **Halting.** On halting, the sword is to be gently lowered to the ground to resume the position of Attention.

BASIC DRILL - HOOKED-UP FITTING

16. **Position of Attention (Sword Sheathed).** The usual position of Attention is to be adopted (see Fig 6-2). The sword in its scabbard, slung on the belt hook, hangs with the hilt to the front and scabbard rings to the rear. The scabbard is to be held in a perpendicular position between the thumb and forefinger of the left hand with the back of the hand outwards. The fingers are to be together and extended and inclined forward and downward, with the thumb to the inside in line with the seam of the trousers.

17. **Standing At Ease (Sword Sheathed).** When standing At Ease, bend the left knee and place the foot smartly on the ground 12 in (30 cm) to the left of the right foot. The arms remain as for the position of Attention.

18. **Marching.** When marching with the sword hooked-up, the scabbard is to be steadied vertically with the left hand held as for the position of Attention. When the sword is sheathed the right arm is to swing in the usual fashion, except when turning or marching in Slow Time.

Note: When entering a confined space, it is advisable to carry the sword before the person, thus avoiding any liability to tangle!

GUARDS OF HONOUR AT WEDDINGS

19. On this occasion the sword is to be worn in the hooked-up position. The guard is to be formed up in 2 ranks either side of the doorway, with swords sheathed. When the car arrives the order: **“DRAW SWORDS”** is to be given. As the bride approaches, the order: **“ARCH SWORDS”** is to be given. Swords are to be raised in one smooth movement, the arm is to be straight, the tips of the swords just crossing at an angle of approximately 45 degrees. The wrist of the arm is to turn to the left allowing the hilt of the sword to face the right. At the conclusion of the service, the same procedure is to be carried out when the bride and groom appear at the doorway. Once the bride and groom are clear of the guard of honour, the order: **“CARRY SWORDS”** is to be given, followed by the order: **“RETURN SWORDS”**. Swords are then to be placed in safe custody.

DRAWING AND RETURNING SWORDS ON PARADE

20. On the command: **“FALL-IN THE OFFICERS”** officers are to come to Attention, salute, draw their swords, then march on, to fall-in at their parade positions.

21. On the command: **“FALL-OUT THE OFFICERS”** officers Left Turn, march in Quick Time and halt in a semi-circle facing the parade commander, at a distance of 5 paces, in order of seniority from the right. The officer on the right is to take one pace forward and then all salute together, return swords to their scabbards, turn right and form up in line to the rear of the parade commander. The parade commander then sheaths his sword before calling for the parade warrant officer.

SWORD DRILL FOR FUNERALS

22. Sword drill for funerals is contained in Part 1 Chapter 8.

SALUTING WITH SWORDS

23. When the sword is sheathed officers are to salute with the hand.

24. When the sword is unsheathed officers are to acknowledge salutes by coming to the Carry or when formally fallen-in on parade, by the full sword salute. They are to salute superiors with the sword. When approaching to address a superior, an officer is to halt four paces from the senior officer before saluting.

25. When a colour or standard is on parade officers who pass behind the colour or standard are to pay compliments. It would not be usual to pass directly in front, as the colour/standard bearer is 3 paces in front of the front rank. Prior to passing the colour or standard each officer is to bring the sword to the Recover as the left heel strikes the ground, at the same time turning the head and eyes. Once past the colour or standard party each officer is to Carry Swords as the left heel strikes the ground, at the same time the head and eyes are turned to the front.

METHODS OF WEARING THE SWORD



**Normal Fitting
(At Attention)**

Fig 6-1



Showing Position Of Slings



**Hooked-up Fitting
(At Attention)**

Fig 6-2



**Normal Fitting
(At Ease)**

Note that the sword hilt is carried forward to the full extent of the left arm.

Fig 6-3



**Normal Fitting
(Great Coat)**

Fig 6-4



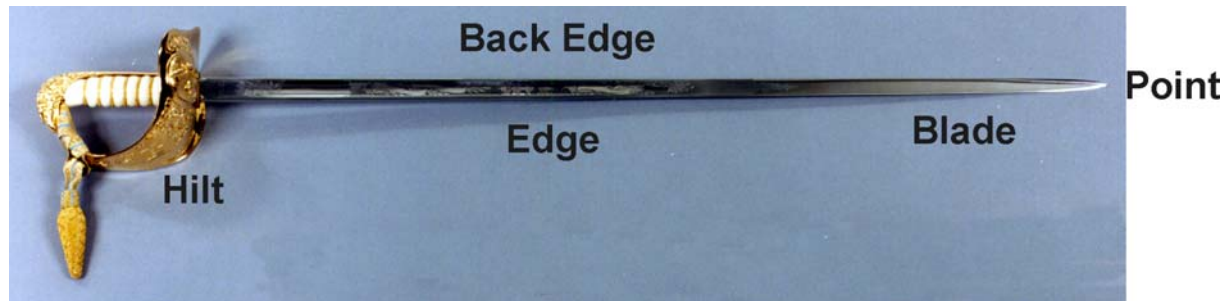
**Normal Fitting
(Marching)**

Fig 6-5

METHODS OF WEARING THE SWORD

PARTS OF THE SWORD

**Fig 6-21
Sword**



**Fig 6-22
Scabbard
Air Officer**



**Fig 6-23
Scabbard
Below Air Officer**



Note: Air Officer's scabbard has embellished mounts and chape.

PARTS OF THE SWORD

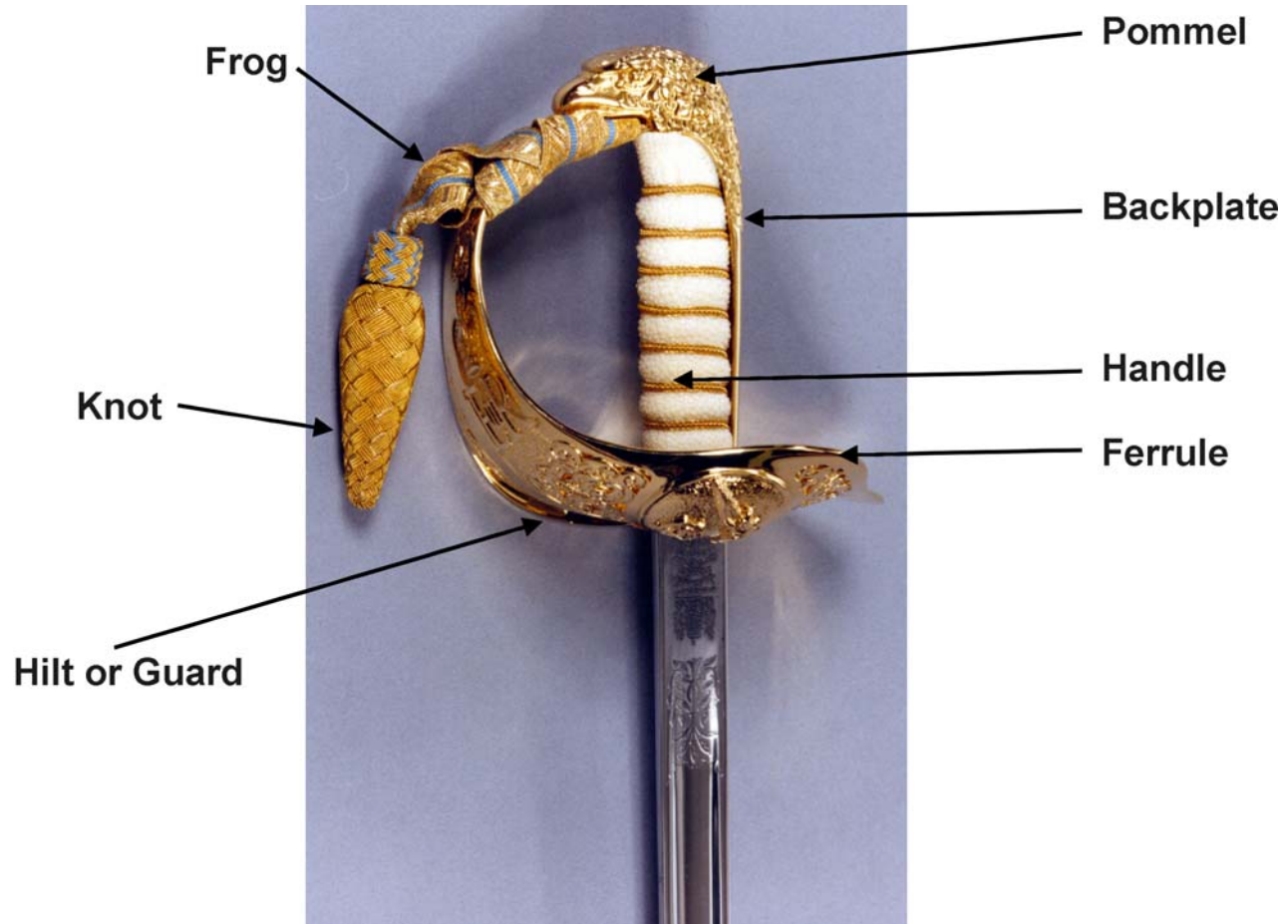
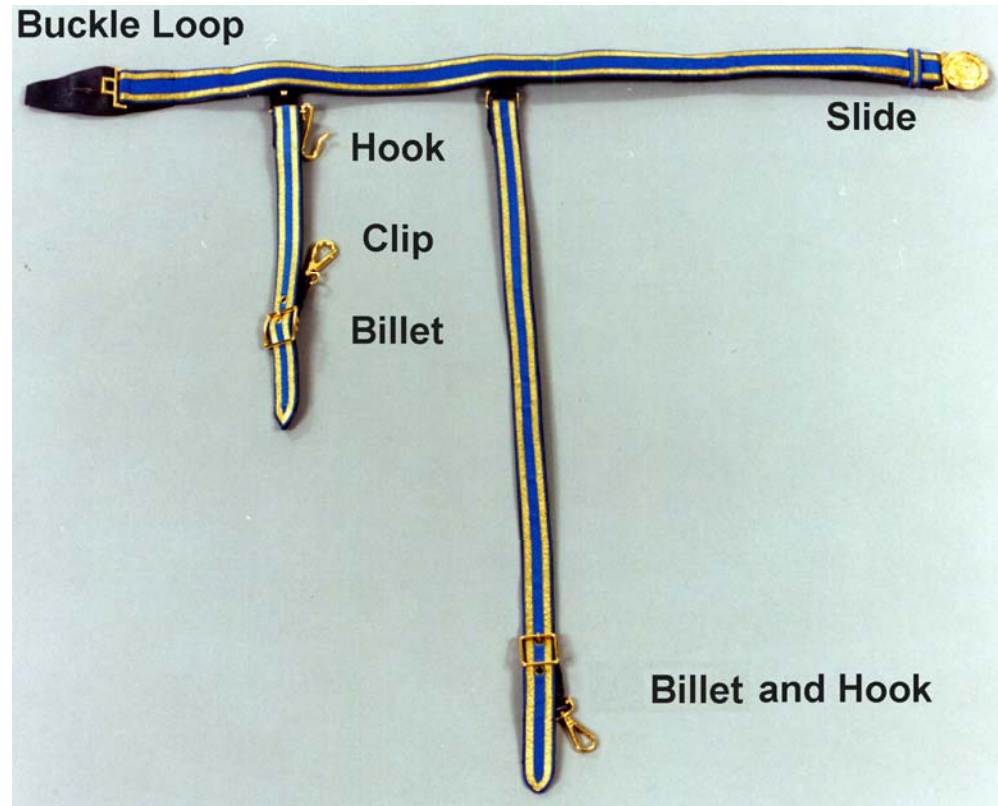


Fig 6-24

Details of the Hilt

PARTS OF THE SWORD BELT



Ceremonial Sword Belt - Below Air Officer

Fig 6-25

PARTS OF THE SWORD BELT



**Note: Air Officer Billets are embellished
Canvas Under-Belt - with Air Officer Slings**

Fig 6-26

LESSON 2 - DRAW SWORDS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach how to Draw Swords.
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent. If indoors, ensure sufficient height clearance is available for the sword when it is brought to the recover.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Should include care, handling and method of wearing.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is the Draw Swords. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of officers to draw swords in a smart, uniform manner.

B. THE DRAW SWORDS - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME DRAW SWORDS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) DRAW SWORDS - ONE (Fig 6-6).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR DRAW SWORDS ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand is carried smartly across the body to seize and grasp the handle of the sword. 2. The left hand is moved up at the same time, to take control of the scabbard at its mouth. 3. On execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The back of the left hand is to the left and the thumb against the hip. 2. The thumb of the right hand is pointing down with the back of the hand to the rear. 3. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **DRAW SWORDS - TWO - THE RECOVER (Fig 6-7).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is drawn smoothly upwards from the scabbard to a count equal to five paces in Quick Time. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The blade is lifted to the vertical and turned to the left with the tip uppermost. 2. The hilt is in front of the face level with the mouth. 3. The fingers of the right hand are curled around the handle in a full grip with the thumb pointing upwards and the back of the hand to the front. 4. The forearm and elbow are close to the chest. 5. The left hand is forced smartly down to resume the position of Attention. 6. The body is square to the front. 7. This position is known as the Recover.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **DRAW SWORDS - THREE - THE CARRY (Figs 6-8 & 6-9).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After a pause equal to two paces in Quick Time the sword is brought smartly down in front of the right shoulder. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right forearm is horizontal and the elbow close to the body. 2. The fingers are curled around the handle and extended to touch the hilt. 3. The hilt rests on the forefinger and thumb. 4. The blade is vertical, the edge to the front. 5. The body is erect and square to the front. 6. This position is known as the Carry.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME DRAW SWORDS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform squad in formation and confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME DRAW-SWORDS.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 6-6



**Second Movement
(The Recover)**

Fig 6-7



Front View

Fig 6-8



**Third Movement
(The Carry)**

Side View

Fig 6-9

DRAW SWORDS

LESSON 3 - RETURN SWORDS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach how to Return Swords.
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Draw Swords.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is the Return Swords. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of officers to return swords in a smart, uniform manner.

B. THE RETURN SWORDS - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RETURN SWORDS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) RETURN SWORDS - ONE (Fig 6-10).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>RETURN SWORDS ONE.</p>	<p>1. The sword is forced across the body to place the hilt in the hollow of the left shoulder. At the same time the mouth of the scabbard is gripped with the left hand and the mouth of the scabbard forced forward.</p> <p>2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out ONE.</p>	<p>1. The back of the left hand is facing to the left with the thumb against the thigh.</p> <p>2. The blade of the sword is perpendicular, edge to the left.</p> <p>3. The body is square to the front.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **RETURN SWORDS - TWO (Fig 6-11).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is raised with the point swung downwards and to the rear. At the same time the head and eyes are lowered to watch the scabbard whilst the sword is lowered smoothly and slowly into the scabbard to a count equal to five paces in Quick Time. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The edge of the sword is facing to the front, the point swung downwards and to the rear. 2. Once the blade has been swung down, it is important to keep it vertical to enable the sword to be returned to the scabbard with ease. 3. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **RETURN SWORDS - THREE (Fig 6-12).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After a pause equal to two paces in Quick Time, both hands are brought simultaneously to the sides and the position of Attention is resumed. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The arms are forced down the side of the body. 2. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movements:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RETURN SWORDS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform squad in formation and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME RETURN SWORDS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 6-10



Second Movement

Fig 6-11



Third Movement

Fig 6-12

RETURN SWORDS

LESSON 4 - STAND AT EASE (SWORD DRAWN)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach how to Stand At Ease (Sword Drawn).
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Carry Swords.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is the Stand At Ease position (Sword Drawn). The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of officers to stand At Ease (Sword Drawn) in a smart, uniform manner.

B. STAND AT EASE - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENT.

1) STAND AT EASE - ONE (Fig 6-13).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STAND AT EASE ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left leg is to move through the bent knee position and the left foot then placed on the ground 12 in (30 cm) to the left of the right foot. 2. The grip of the last three fingers of the right hand is released to allow the sword to be laid backwards onto the right shoulder. This position is called the Slope. 3. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The feet are flat and firm on the ground with both knees braced. 2. The left arm remains as in the position of Attention. 3. The sword is laid midway between the neck and the point of the right shoulder. 4. The last three fingers of the right hand are extended on the right side of the handle. 5. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform squad in Formation and confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Left View



Right View

Fig 6-13 - STAND AT EASE (SWORD DRAWN)

LESSON 5 - ATTENTION FROM THE STAND AT EASE (SWORD DRAWN)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the position of Attention from the Stand At Ease.
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Stand At Ease (Sword Drawn).
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is the position of Attention from the Stand At Ease. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of officers to adopt the position of Attention in a smart, uniform manner.

B. THE ATTENTION - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	1. There is one part to this movement.
FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.		

C. MOVEMENT.

1) ATTENTION FROM THE STAND AT EASE (SWORD DRAWN) – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR SHUN ONE.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The blade is swung forward to the perpendicular position (the Carry). 2. At the same time the left leg passes through the bent knee position and the left foot is brought into position beside the right. 3. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The heels of the feet are in line, with the feet turned outwards at an angle of 45 degrees. 2. Forearm horizontal/elbow close to body. 3. Fingers curled and extended. 4. Hilt resting on forefinger and thumb. 5. Blade vertical and edge to front. 6. The body is square to the front.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform squad in Formation and confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 6 - STAND EASY (SWORD DRAWN)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Stand Easy from the Stand At Ease (Sword Drawn).
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	The position of Attention from the Stand At Ease (Sword Drawn).
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is the Stand Easy position (Sword Drawn). The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of officers to adopt the Stand Easy position in a smart, uniform manner.

B. STAND EASY - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration :</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND EASY.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENT.

1) STAND EASY (SWORD DRAWN) - ONE (Fig 6-14).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STAND EASY.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is swung forward and to the left, and lowered to a count equal to 5 paces in Quick Time. 2. The point is placed centrally on the ground between the feet, in line with the toe caps. 3. After a pause equal to 2 paces in Quick Time the left hand is placed on top of the right hand. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The feet are flat and firm on the ground with both knees braced. 2. The hilt of the sword is to the right. 3. Both hands are cupped on top of the pommel - left hand on top of the right hand. 4. The body is relaxed and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND EASY.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform squad in Formation and confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND EASY.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Front View

Fig 6-14 - STAND EASY (SWORD DRAWN)

LESSON 7 - THE STAND AT EASE FROM STAND EASY (SWORD DRAWN)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Stand At Ease from Stand Easy (Sword Drawn).
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Stand Easy (Sword Drawn).
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Sword Drill is the Stand At Ease from the Stand Easy (Sword Drawn). The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of officers to adopt the Stand At Ease position in a smart, uniform manner.

B. STAND AT EASE FROM THE STAND EASY - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration :</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENT.

1) STAND AT EASE FROM THE STAND EASY (SWORD DRAWN) - ONE (Figs 6-13 & 6-14).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STAND AT EASE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand is forced from its position to the side of the body. 2. At the same time the sword is raised to a count equal to 5 paces in Quick Time and is laid backwards onto the right shoulder. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand is to be placed alongside the left leg as for the position of Attention. 2. The back of the sword is to be laid midway between the neck and point of the right shoulder. 3. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform squad in Formation and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 4000 FIVE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>

LESSON 8 - SALUTE AT THE HALT (SWORD DRAWN)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach how to salute at the Halt (Sword Drawn).
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	The Stand At Ease from the Stand Easy (Sword Drawn).
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is the Salute at the Halt. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual or body of officers to Salute at the Halt in a smart, uniform manner.

B. SALUTE AT THE HALT - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SALUTE AT THE HALT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT / ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ ONE LEFT - RIGHT / ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are four parts to this movement. 2. Saluting with armed personnel. On the command PRESENT ARMS officers are to bring the sword to the Recover on the first movement of the rifle and are to lower the sword to the Salute on the third movement of the rifle.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION, THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SALUTE AT THE HALT - ONE (Fig 6-15).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SALUTE ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is brought to the Recover. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand remains in its position. 2. Blade lifted to the vertical, turned to the left with the tip uppermost. 3. Hilt in front of face level with mouth. 4. Fingers of right hand curled around the handle in full grip with thumb pointing upwards and back of hand to the front. 5. The forearm and elbow close to chest. 6. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SALUTE AT THE HALT - TWO (Fig 6-16).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is lowered smoothly to the front, directly in line with the right shoulder. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The fingers of the right hand grip the handle, the thumb flat on the side. 2. The elbow is close to the body. 3. The hilt resting behind the right thigh. The sword edge is to the left, the point approximately 12in (30cm) from the ground. 4. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **SALUTE AT THE HALT - THREE (Fig 6-15).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is brought to the Recover. 2. On execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand remains in its position. 2. Blade lifted to the vertical, turned to the left with the tip uppermost. 3. Hilt in front of face level with mouth. 4. Fingers of right hand curled around the handle in full grip with thumb pointing upwards and back of hand to the front. 5. The forearm and elbow close to chest. 6. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) **SALUTE AT THE HALT - FOUR (Fig 6-8).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is returned to the Carry. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Forearm horizontal/elbow close to body. 2. Fingers curled and extended. 3. Hilt resting on forefinger and thumb. 4. Blade vertical and edge to front. 5. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SALUTING AT THE HALT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When the sword is sheathed, officers are to salute with the hand. 2. When the sword is unsheathed, officers acknowledge salutes by coming to the Carry or when fallen-in on parade, by the full sword Salute. 3. They are to salute superiors with the sword. When approaching to address a superior, the officer is to halt 4 paces from the senior officer before saluting.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform squad in Formation and confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SALUTING AT THE HALT SALUTE.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



**First and Third Movement
(The Recover)
Fig 6-15**



**Second Movement
(The Salute)
Fig 6-16**

SALUTE AT THE HALT (SWORD DRAWN)

LESSON 9 – PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST IN QUICK TIME (SWORD DRAWN)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach how to Pay Compliments when Marching Past in Quick Time (Sword Drawn).
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Salute at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Sword Drill is Paying Compliments when Marching Past in Quick Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an officer whilst commanding personnel to pay compliments when Marching Past in a smart, uniform manner.

B. PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES LEFT/RIGHT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK RECOVER CHECK SALUTE TWO THREE FOUR FIVE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION, THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST (SWORD DRAWN) – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<p>1. The command is given on the left foot, when the left heel next strikes the ground, the sword is brought to the Recover. At the same time, the head and eyes are to turn smartly in the appropriate direction.</p> <p>2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. The left hand remains in its position.</p> <p>2. Blade lifted to the vertical, turned to the left with the tip uppermost.</p> <p>3. Hilt in front of face level with mouth.</p> <p>4. Fingers of right hand curled around the handle in full grip with thumb pointing upwards and back of hand to the front.</p> <p>5. The forearm and elbow close to chest.</p> <p>6. The body is square to the front.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST (SWORD DRAWN) – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A further check pace is taken with the right foot. When the left foot next strikes the ground the sword is to be lowered to the Salute. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The fingers of the right hand grip the handle, the thumb flat on the side. 2. The elbow is close to the body. 3. The hilt resting behind the right thigh. 4. The sword edge is to the left, the point approximately 12 in (30 cm) from the ground. 5. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK RECOVER CHECK SALUTE TWO THREE FOUR FIVE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The salute is held until all personnel under command have passed the saluting base.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform squad in Formation and confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: CHECK RECOVER CHECK SALUTE TWO THREE FOUR FIVE.	

LESSON 10 - EYES FRONT AFTER COMPLIMENTS IN QUICK TIME (SWORD DRAWN)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Eyes Front after Paying Compliments when Marching Past in Quick Time (Sword Drawn).
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Saluting when Marching Past.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is the Eyes Front after Paying Compliments when Marching Past. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual officer whilst commanding a squad to Carry Swords after paying compliments when Marching Past.

B. THE EYES FRONT AFTER PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK RECOVER CHECK CARRY.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) THE EYES FRONT AFTER PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<p>1. The command is given on the left foot. A further check pace is taken with the right foot.</p> <p>2. When the left heel next strikes the ground the sword is brought to the Recover. At the same time the head and eyes are turned to the front.</p> <p>3. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. The left hand remains in its position.</p> <p>2. Blade lifted to the vertical, turned to the left with the tip uppermost.</p> <p>3. Hilt in front of face level with mouth.</p> <p>4. Fingers of right hand curled around the handle in full grip with thumb pointing upwards and back of hand to the front.</p> <p>5. The forearm and elbow close to chest.</p> <p>6. The body is square to the front.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **THE EYES FRONT AFTER PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A further check pace is taken with the right foot. 2. When the left heel next strikes the ground the sword is to be returned to the Carry. 3. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Forearm horizontal/elbow close to body. 2. Fingers curled and extended. 3. Hilt resting on forefinger and thumb. 4. Blade vertical and edge to front. 5. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK RECOVER CHECK CARRY.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform squad in Formation and confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: CHECK RECOVER CHECK CARRY.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 11 – PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME (SWORD DRAWN)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Paying Compliments when Marching Past in Slow Time (Sword Drawn).
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Eyes Front when Marching Past in Quick Time (Sword Drawn).
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Sword Drill is Paying Compliments when Marching Past in Slow Time (Sword Drawn). The reason this movement is taught is to enable an officer whilst commanding personnel to pay compliments when Marching Past in Slow Time.

B. PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME (SWORD DRAWN) - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: OUT OVER ACROSS DOWN.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are four parts to this movement. 2. The first two parts of this movement, are referred to as the Flourish.
FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME (SWORD DRAWN) - ONE (Fig 6-17).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE OUT.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The command is given as the right foot strikes the ground; when the left foot next strikes the ground, the right arm is forced out at shoulder height. At the same time, the head and eyes are turned to the right/left. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE OUT. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is square off to the right, the blade vertical, edge to the right. 2. The pommel of the sword is in line with the top of the shoulder. 3. The body is square to the front.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

2) **PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME (SWORD DRAWN) - TWO (Fig 6-18).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE ACROSS.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the right foot next strikes the ground, the sword is swept in a circular motion across the body to the point of the left shoulder. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: <p style="text-align: center;">ONE ACROSS.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The blade remains vertical, hand and elbow at the same height. 2. The sword sweeps at arm's length in front of the body. 3. The pommel of the hilt stops at the point of the left shoulder. 4. The elbow is level with the shoulder. 5. The thumb remains around the handle. 6. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME (SWORD DRAWN) - THREE (Fig 6-19).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE OVER.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the left foot strikes the ground the sword continues the sweep passing through the Recover position. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: <p style="text-align: center;">ONE OVER.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pommel is in front of the point of the right shoulder. 2. The right elbow is at shoulder height, with upper arm horizontal and in line with the mouth. 3. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) **PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME (SWORD DRAWN) - FOUR (Fig 6-20).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE DOWN.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the right foot next strikes the ground the elbow and sword are lowered to the side to the position of the Salute. 2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE DOWN. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The fingers of the right hand grip the handle, the thumb flat on the side. 2. The elbow is close to the body. 3. The hilt resting behind the right thigh. 4. The sword edge is to the left, the point approximately 12 in (30 cm) from the ground. 5. The body is square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>OUT ACROSS OVER DOWN.</p>	<p>After the sword is forced out with the pommel in line with the top of the right shoulder, the sword should move smoothly during the subsequent three marching paces, not stopping at either shoulder on the way to the position of salute.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform squad in Formation and confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: OUT ACROSS OVER DOWN.	1. Make any corrections where necessary



First Movement
Fig 6-17



Second Movement
Fig 6-18



Third Movement
Fig 6-19



Fourth Movement
Fig 6-20

SLOW MARCH SALUTE

LESSON 12 – EYES FRONT AFTER COMPLIMENTS IN SLOW TIME (SWORD DRAWN)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Eyes Front after Paying Compliments when Marching Past in Slow Time (Sword Drawn).
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE.
Dress and Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Eyes Right/Left in Slow Time (Sword Drawn).
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Sword Drill is the Eyes Front after Paying Compliments when Marching Past in Slow Time (Sword Drawn). The reason this movement is taught is to enable an officer whilst commanding personnel to Carry Swords when Marching Past in Slow Time.

B. EYES FRONT AFTER PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME - COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>RECOVER CHECK CARRY.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) EYES FRONT AFTER PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE RECOVER.</p>	<p>1. The word of command is given when the right foot strikes the ground, when the left foot next strikes the ground, the sword is brought to the Recover. At the same time, the head and eyes are to be turned to the front.</p> <p>2. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out:</p> <p>ONE RECOVER.</p>	<p>1. The left hand remains in its position.</p> <p>2. Blade lifted to the vertical, turned to the left with the tip uppermost.</p> <p>3. Hilt in front of face level with mouth.</p> <p>4. Fingers of right hand curled around the handle in full grip with thumb pointing upwards and back of hand to the front.</p> <p>5. The forearm and elbow close to chest.</p> <p>6. The body is square to the front.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **EYES FRONT AFTER PAYING COMPLIMENTS WHEN MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE CHECK CARRY.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A check pace is taken with the right foot. 2. When the left foot next strikes the ground the sword is to be returned to the Carry. 3. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE CHECK CARRY. 	<p>Forearm horizontal/elbow close to body. Fingers curled and extended. Hilt resting on forefinger and thumb. Blade vertical and edge to front. The body is square to the front.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>RECOVER CHECK CARRY.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform squad in Formation and confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: RECOVER CHECK CARRY.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.

PART 1 – CHAPTER 7

STICK DRILL – BASIC

CONTENTS

LESSON No	TITLE	PAGE No
1	Attention in the Carry	1-7-2
2	Stand at Ease in the Carry	1-7-7
3	Salute at the Halt in the Carry	1-7-12
4	Quick March from the Carry	1-7-18
5	The Halt	1-7-25
6	Turning on the March	1-7-32
7	Ordering Compliments on the March	1-7-37
8	Attention in the Shoulder	1-7-42
9	Stand at Ease in the Shoulder	1-7-47
10	Quick March from the Shoulder	1-7-52

1. Warrant Officer’s cane. Drill for the Warrant Officer’s cane is to be carried out as specified in lessons 1-7.

LESSON 1 – ATTENTION IN THE CARRY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Attention in the Carry.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in the Carry in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	To introduce you to Pace Stick drill, this lesson will teach you the position of Attention with the stick in the Carry. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to adopt the position of Attention when on parade with the Pace stick, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) ATTENTION – ONE (Fig 7-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body and placed flat on the ground in the position of Attention. 2. The stick remains under the left armpit and is held by the left hand. 3. The right arm is in the position of Attention. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is under the left armpit and is parallel to the ground. 2. The fingers of the left hand are extended with the index finger in line with the end of the stick. 3. The right arm is in the position of Attention. 4. The heels are together and angled at 45 degrees. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 7-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Final Position

Fig 7-1

ATTENTION IN THE CARRY

LESSON 2 - STAND AT EASE IN THE CARRY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Stand At Ease in the Carry
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in the Carry in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace Stick drill is the Stand At Ease position with the stick in the Carry. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to adopt a relaxed position when on parade with the Pace Stick, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS

1) STAND AT EASE – ONE (Fig 7-2).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body and placed flat on the ground in the position of Stand At Ease. 2. The pace stick remains under the left armpit and is held by the left hand. 3. The right arm remains at the side of the body. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is under the left armpit and is parallel to the ground. 2. The index finger of the left hand is in line with the end of the stick. 3. The right arm is in the position of Attention. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 7-2).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Open Order and confirm by collective practise: STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Final Position

Fig 7-2

STAND AT EASE IN THE CARRY

LESSON 3 – SALUTE AT THE HALT IN THE CARRY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Salute at the Halt in the Carry
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. This movement may be taught for saluting to the left and to the right.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in the Carry in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace Stick drill is saluting at the Halt. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to pay compliments to a commissioned officer or an uncased colour or standard with the Pace stick, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: UP TWO THREE DOWN.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS

1) SALUTE – ONE. (Fig 7-3).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Immediately on receipt of the command the right hand adopts the Salute in the normal manner. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand is in the correct position of the Salute. 2. The Pace Stick is gripped between the upper arm and the rib cage. 3. The left hand continues to hold the Pace Stick in the normal way. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) SALUTE – TWO. (Fig 7-3).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Salute is held for the regulation timings. 2. The Pace Stick does not move throughout the drill movement 3. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick remains parallel to the ground. 2. The left hand continues to hold the Pace Stick in the normal way. 3. The right arm is in the Salute. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) SALUTE – THREE. (Fig 7-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand returns to the position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out : ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The index finger of the left hand is in line with the end of the stick. 2. The stick is parallel to the ground. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 7-3).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME TO THE FRONT SALUTE.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: UP TWO THREE DOWN.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Open Order and confirm by collective practise: STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SALUTING TO THE FRONT SALUTE.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: UP TWO THREE DOWN.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. The instructor is to teach Saluting to the left/right in the same manner.



FRONT

Fig 7-3

SALUTING AT THE HALT

1-7-17

LESSON 4 – QUICK MARCH FROM THE CARRY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Quick March from the Carry.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in the Carry in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace Stick drill is the Quick March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to step off in Quick Time, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS

1) QUICK MARCH – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On receipt of the command and as the left heel strikes the ground, the right hand is brought across the body to grasp the stick at the point of balance. 2. At the same time the left hand quits its grip and is returned to the side of the body. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand grips the stick at the point of balance. 2. The Pace Stick is parallel to the ground. 3. The left arm is at the side of the body. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) QUICK MARCH – TWO.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the Right heel strikes the ground the stick is to be brought across to the right side of the body in the trail position. 2. The left arm remains still at the side of left side of the body. 3. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick remains parallel to the ground at the right side of the body. This is known as the Trail position. 2. The left arm remains at the left side of the body. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) QUICK MARCH – THREE.(Fig 7-4).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the left heel strikes the ground the arms are swung as normal. 2. The stick is swung and must remain parallel to the ground. 3. The stick is held between the thumb and fingertips of the right hand. 4. The left arm is swung as normal. 5. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick remains parallel to the ground. 2. The arms are swung as normal. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 7-4).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



Final position

Fig 7-4

THE QUICK MARCH – TRAIL

LESSON 5 – THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Halt.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in the Carry in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace Stick drill is the Halt from Quick March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to Halt, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH HALT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE ONE TWO/LEFT RIGHT/ONE LEFT RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS

1) **HALT – ONE**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On receipt of the command as the left heel strikes the ground the Halt is executed as normal. 2. The stick is brought to the right side of the body and is held parallel to the ground. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand grips the stick at the point of balance. 2. The Pace stick is parallel to the ground at the right side of the body. 3. The body is erect and square to the front
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **HALT – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After a pause the stick under the control of the right hand is brought across the body and placed under the left armpit. 2. The right hand grips the stick. 3. The left arm remains at the side of the body and grips the stick between the upper arm and the rib cage. 4. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick remains parallel under the left armpit. 2. The left arm is in the position of Attention. 3. The right arm has a full grip on the stick. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **HALT – THREE.(Fig 7-5).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After a pause the right hand quits its grip and is cut away to the right side of the body. 2. At the same time the left hand is brought up to hold the stick in the position of the Carry. 3. The stick remains parallel to the ground. 4. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick remains parallel to the ground under the left armpit. 2. The right arm is returned to the position of Attention. 3. The left hand holds the stick with fingers extended. 4. The tip of the index finger is at the end of the stick. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 7-5).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH HALT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE ONE TWO/LEFT RIGHT/ONE LEFT RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH SQUAD HALT.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE ONE TWO/LEFT RIGHT/ONE LEFT RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



Final position

Fig 7-5

THE HALT

LESSON 6 – TURNING ON THE MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Turning on the March.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. This movement may be taught for turning to the left and to the right.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in the Carry in a straight line.
Revision	Nil
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace stick drill is Turning on the March. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to turn to a given direction on the march, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE RIGHT RIGHT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK TURN FORWARD.</p>	<p>1. There are three part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **RIGHT TURN – ONE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the command as the left heel strikes the ground the stick is brought up into the vertical position. 2. The stick is held vertical in the right shoulder with the elbow bent slightly. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is vertical in the right shoulder. 2. The stick is slightly raised and the elbow pulled well in. 3. The body is erect and square to the right.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **RIGHT TURN – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Right Turn is executed as normal and the stick remains in the vertical position. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is vertical in the right shoulder. 2. The stick is slightly raised and the elbow pulled well in. 3. The turn is executed as normal. 4. The body is erect and square to the right.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **RIGHT TURN – THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On completion of the turn the stick returns to the Trail. 2. The arms are swung with the stick in the Trail and continue to swing in the normal manner. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is returned to the Trail and the arms swung as normal. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE RIGHT RIGHT TURN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: CHECK TURN FORWARD.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Open Order and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME MOVE TO THE RIGHT RIGHT TURN.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>CHECK TURN FORWARD.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. The instructor is to teach the Left Turn on the March in the same manner.

LESSON 7 - ORDERING COMPLIMENTS ON THE MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Ordering Compliments on the March.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. This movement may be taught for Eyes Left and Eyes Right.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in the Carry in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace Stick drill is ordering compliments on the march. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to pay compliments on the march, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is not required to call out timings.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) EYES RIGHT/LEFT – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the cautionary word of command “EYES” the stick is placed under the left arm. 2. At the same time, the Pace Stick is gripped by the left hand. 3. The right hand is to quit its grip of the stick as the executive word “LEFT/RIGHT” is given. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is parallel to the ground under the left armpit. 2. The right hand returns to the position of Attention. 3. The left hand grips the Pace Stick in the normal manner. 4. The body is erect and square to the right.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **EYES RIGHT/LEFT – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the next left heel strikes the ground the salute is executed and held for the appropriate timing. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is parallel to the ground, under the left armpit. 2. The left hand grips the Pace Stick in the normal manner. 3. The Salute is executed to the direction given in the normal manner. 4. The body is erect and square to the right.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is not required to call out timings.</p>	<p>1. The instructor is to demonstrate the Eyes Left in the same manner.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Open Order and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement without calling out the timings.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>

LESSON 8 – ATTENTION IN THE SHOULDER

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Attention in the Shoulder.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. This lesson also covers marching at the Shoulder.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in the Carry in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace stick drill is Attention in the Shoulder. The reason this movement is taught is to enable a drill instructor to hold the stick in the Shoulder, in a smart, uniform manner. The stick is only to be held in the Shoulder when instructing drill, it is not to be used on parade. Note that when addressing a commissioned officer the stick is to be held at the Carry.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is one part to this movement. 2. Prior to this movement the instructor adopts the position of Stand At Ease with the stick in the Shoulder.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) ATTENTION – ONE. (Fig 7-6).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body and placed flat on the ground in the normal position of the Attention. 2. The stick is held vertically in the right shoulder with the brass ferrules uppermost. 3. The stick is placed on the second joint of the forefinger with the remaining fingers gripping the side of the stick. 4. The thumb is placed along the front of the stick so the appearance is the same as the left hand in the Attention position. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is vertical in the right shoulder. 2. The stick is held on the second joint of the forefinger. 3. The thumb of the right hand is in front of the stick. 4. The heels are together and angled at 45 degrees. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 7-6 & Fig 7-7).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	1. It is permissible to march in Quick Time with the stick in the Shoulder. (Fig 7-9).
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise: STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Final Position

Fig 7-6



Quick March

Fig 7-7

ATTENTION IN THE SHOULDER

LESSON 9 - STAND AT EASE IN THE SHOULDER

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Stand At Ease in the Shoulder.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in the Carry in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace stick drill is the Stand At Ease position with the stick in the Shoulder. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to adopt a relaxed position with the Pace stick in the Shoulder, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **STAND AT EASE – ONE. (Fig 7-8).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the command, the left leg is raised so that the thigh is parallel to the ground and the foot is hanging naturally below the knee. The foot is placed flat on the ground in the position of Stand At Ease. 2. At the same time the stick remains in the right shoulder and is passed along the forearm and under the armpit. 3. Both hands are cupped in the normal manner. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is under the right armpit and is vertical. 2. The stick protrudes out by the right shoulder. 3. Both hands are cupped. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 7-8 and Fig 7-9).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Open Order and confirm by collective practise: STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Front

Fig 7-8



Rear

Fig 7-9

STAND AT EASE IN THE SHOULDER

LESSON 10 – QUICK MARCH FROM THE SHOULDER

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Quick March from the Shoulder.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. These movements may be reversed in order to adopt the Shoulder from the Trail whilst on the march.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in the Carry in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in pace stick drill is the Quick March from the Shoulder. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to bring the stick from the Shoulder to the Trail position when stepping off in Quick Time, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) THE TRAIL – ONE (Fig 7-10).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the first pace move both hands and grip the centre of the stick. 2. The left hand above the right with the stick perpendicular to the body and in the right side of the body. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is in the right side of the body. 2. The left hand has a full grip above the right hand. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **THE TRAIL – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the next left heel strikes the ground the stick is forced down to the fullest extent of the right arm, with the stick parallel to the ground. 2. At the same time the left arm is cut away to the left side of the body. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is parallel to the ground. 2. The left arm is in the position of Attention. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **THE TRAIL – THREE (Fig 7-11).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the next left heel continue to swing both arms. 2. The stick is held at the centre of balance with foot ferrules forward. 3. Continue to march as previously taught for the Trail. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is parallel to the ground. 2. The arms continue to swing. 3. The stick is held at the centre of balance. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 7-10 and 7-11).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. It is permissible to march with the stick in the Shoulder (Fig 7-12). 2. It is possible to reverse the movement to adopt the Shoulder from the Trail whilst on the march.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Open Order and confirm by collective practise: STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 7-10



Final Position

Fig 7-11

TRAIL FROM SHOULDER

PART 1 - CHAPTER 8

FUNERAL DRILL

CONTENTS

LESSON No	TITLE	PAGE No
1	The Reverse Arms from the Slope	1-8-2
2	The Slope Arms from the Reverse	1-8-10
3	The Change Arms at the Reverse	1-8-17
4	Lower on your Arms Reversed from the Present	1-8-24
5	The Present Arms from the Lower on your Arms Reversed	1-8-32
6	Volleys with Blank Cartridges	1-8-39
7	The Reverse Swords from the Carry	1-8-57
8	The Carry Swords from the Reverse	1-8-63
9	The Change Swords at the Reverse	1-8-68
10	The Lower on your Swords Reversed from the Present	1-8-74
11	The Present from the Lower on your Swords Reversed	1-8-81

LESSON 1 - THE REVERSE ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Reverse Arms from the Slope.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. The Reverse Arms position can be used when marching in Quick and Slow Time. This is to be practised at the end of the lesson.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in rifle drill is to teach you the Reverse Arms from the Slope Arms position. The reason this movement is taught is so that you, as an individual, or body of personnel can pay the correct compliment to the deceased during a military funeral, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME REVERSE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are four parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) REVERSE ARMS – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right arm is forced across the body the hand striking, seizing and grasping the small of the butt. 2. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle, left hand, wrist and forearm do not move throughout the execution of the movement. 2. The right hand has a full grip on the area of the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **REVERSE ARMS – TWO (Fig 8-1).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced into the vertical position on the right side of the body, changing the grip of the right hand from a full grip to a ‘Y’-like grip. 2. At the same time the left hand releases its grip on the butt plate and is forced across the body to grasp the stock in a full inverted grip. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front, on the right side of the body. 2. The right hand has a ‘Y’-like grip on the small of the butt, with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 3. The left hand has a full grip of the stock just above the trigger guard with the back of the hand facing the chest and the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **REVERSE ARMS – THREE (Fig 8-2).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is rotated through 180 degrees in front of the right shoulder, changing the grip of the right hand to a full grip. 2. At the same time the grip of the left hand is changed as the rifle rotates, to a full grip on the top of the stock so that the back of the hand is facing forwards. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical on the right side of the body, the barrel pointing downwards with the magazine to the rear and the butt plate in line with the right shoulder. 2. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 3. The left hand has a full grip on the stock with the back of the hand facing forwards and the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) **REVERSE ARMS – FOUR (Fig 8-3).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced under the armpit under control of the right hand. 2. At the same time the left hand releases its grip and is forced behind the body to grasp the barrel of the rifle in a full grip. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is under the armpit and canted at an angle of 45 degrees to the ground, with the magazine in front of the shoulder and the toe of the butt in line with the right shoulder. 2. The right hand retains its full grip on the small of the butt and the right wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in. 3. The left hand has a full grip on the barrel. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME REVERSE ARMS.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Open Order and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME REVERSE ARMS.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. When marching in Slow Time the final position is maintained. 3. When marching in Quick Time the left hand quits its grip on the barrel of the rifle, and is to continue to swing in Quick Time.



Second Movement

Fig 8-1



Third Movement

Fig 8-2



Final Position

Fig 8-3

REVERSE ARMS FROM THE SLOPE

LESSON 2 - THE SLOPE ARMS FROM THE REVERSE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Slope Arms from the Reverse.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention.
Revision	Reverse Arms from the Slope.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in rifle drill is to teach you the Slope Arms from the Reverse position. The reason this movement is taught is so that you, as an individual, or body of personnel can return the rifle to the Slope on completion of a compliment, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are four parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR PARTS.</p>		

C MOVEMENTS.

1) SLOPE ARMS – ONE (Fig 8-4).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced into the vertical position in the right side of the body under control of the right hand. 2. At the same time the grip of the left hand is released and it is forced around the front of the body to strike, seize and grasp the stock in a full inverted grip. 3. On completion of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical with the butt plate in line with the shoulder, the right hand retains the grip on the rifle with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 2. The left hand has a full grip on the stock with the back of the hand towards the body and the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SLOPE ARMS – TWO (Fig 8-5).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is rotated through 180 degrees so that the butt passes close to the body under control of the left hand. 2. At the same time the grip of the right hand is changed to a ‘Y’-like grip in the area of the small of the butt. 3. On execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical with the magazine square to the front. 2. The right hand has a ‘Y’-like grip with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 3. The left hand has a full grip on the stock just above the trigger guard with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) SLOPE ARMS – THREE (Fig 8-6).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced across the body on to the left shoulder under control of the right hand, changing the grip to a full grip. 2. At the same time the left hand releases its grip on the stock and is forced across the body to strike, seize and grasp the butt plate. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is on the left shoulder at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the magazine square to the left. 2. The right hand has a full grip on the butt with the right wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground. 3. The left hand has a ‘cup’- like grip on the butt plate with the left elbow forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

4) SLOPE ARMS – FOUR.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right arm is forced across the body by the shortest route. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle, left hand, wrist and forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement. 2. The right arm is in the position of Attention. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Open Order and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT -RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 8-4



Second Movement

Fig 8-5



Third Movement

Fig 8-6

SLOPE ARMS FROM THE REVERSE

LESSON 3 – THE CHANGE ARMS AT THE REVERSE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Change Arms at the Reverse.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. This movement when done on the march can be done in either Slow or Quick Time.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention with their rifles in a half circle.
Revision	Slope Arms from the Reverse.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in rifle drill is to teach you the Change Arms in the Reverse position. The reason this movement is taught is to enable you, as an individual, or as part of a squad, to rest a limb in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CHANGE ARMS – ONE (Fig 8-7).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced into the vertical position in front of the right shoulder under control of the right hand. 2. At the same time, the grip of the left hand is released and the arm is forced by the shortest route to the position of Attention at the left side. 3. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical with the butt in line with the right shoulder. 2. The right hand has a full grip in the area of the small of the butt, the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CHANGE ARMS – TWO (Fig 8-8).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced across the body under control of the right hand. 2. At the same time the left hand is forced up to strike, seize and grasp the small of the butt immediately below the right hand. 3. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical with the butt plate in line with the left shoulder. 2. The left hand has a full grip in the area of the small of the butt and the elbow is forced well in. 3. The right hand has a full grip of the small of the butt just above the left hand with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **CHANGE ARMS – THREE (Fig 8-9).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced under the left armpit under control of the left hand. 2. At the same time the right hand releases its grip and is forced behind the body to grasp the barrel of the rifle in a full grip. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is under the armpit and canted at an angle of 45 degrees to the ground with the magazine in front of the shoulder and the toe of the butt in line with the left shoulder. 2. The left hand has a full grip on the small of the butt and the wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in. 3. The right hand has a full grip on the barrel with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 4. The body remains erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. This movement when done on the march can be done in either Slow or Quick Time.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 8-7



Second Movement

Fig 8-8



Final Position

Fig 8-9

CHANGE ARMS AT THE REVERSE

LESSON 4 - LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED FROM THE PRESENT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Lower on your Arms Reversed from the Present.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention with their rifles, in a half circle.
Revision	Change Arms at the Reverse.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in rifle drill is to teach you the Lower on your Arms Reversed. The reason this movement is taught is to enable you, as an individual, or squad, to pay respects to the deceased in a smart, uniform manner, at a military funeral.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 SIX LEFT-RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 FOUR.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED – ONE (Fig 8-10).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced upwards in front of the body under control of the left hand. 2. At the same time, the right hand releases its grip and is forced up to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip. 3. At the same time the right knee is bent to the front of the body until the thigh is parallel to the ground and the foot is hanging naturally below the knee. 4. The foot is then forced down next to the left foot in the Attention position 5. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is in the centre of the body with the magazine square to the front and the foresight in line with the eyes. 2. The right hand has a full grip on the pistol grip, the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 3. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 45 degrees. 4. Both knees are braced and the body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED – TWO (Fig 8-11 & Fig 8-12).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the Second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Force the rifle in front of the body until it is level and in line with the right shoulder, under the control of the right hand, extending the right arm to the fullest extent. 2. At the same time, the left hand releases the grip on the handguard and the fingers are extended. 3. After a pause, the rifle is lowered down to the right side of the body at the same time moving the left hand down the left side of the rifle to assume a cup-like grip on the butt plate. 4. On execution of the movement, the squad is to call out the timing: ONE 1000 / 2000 / 3000 / 4000 / 5000 / SIX. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. At the end of the movement, the rifle is parallel to the ground, in the right side of the body, with the barrel pointing directly to the front. 2. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip, with the right arm at its fullest extent, the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 3. The left hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED – THREE (Fig 8-13).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After a pause of LEFT-RIGHT the head is lowered until the chin is resting on the chest. 2. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out the timing: 1000/2000/3000/FOUR. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle, both hands, wrists, forearms and elbows do not move throughout the movement. 2. The body is erect and square to the front, and the head is lowered.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 SIX LEFT-RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 FOUR.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in Open Order and confirm by collective practise: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 SIX LEFT-RIGHT/1000 2000 3000 FOUR.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Side View



Front View

First Movement

**Fig 8-10
LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED**



Second Movement (first stage)

Fig 8-11



Second Movement (second stage)

Fig 8-12



Final Position

Fig 8-13

LESSON 5 - THE PRESENT ARMS FROM THE LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Present Arms from the Lower on your Arms Reversed.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention.
Revision	Lower on your Arms Reversed movement.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in rifle drill is to teach you the Present Arms position from the position of Lower on your Arms Reversed. The reason this movement is taught is to enable you, as an individual, or as part of a squad, to pay the full compliment at a military funeral.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PARTY</p> <p>PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **PRESENT ARMS – ONE (Fig 8-14).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Raise the head to the position of Attention. 2. On execution of the movement the squad is to call out: <p style="text-align: center;">ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle, right and left arm do not move throughout the movement. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **PRESENT ARMS – TWO (Fig 8-15).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Rotate the rifle to the front centre of the body under the control of the right hand. 2. At the same time, release the grip with the left hand and force it back across the body to strike, seize and grasp the stock. 3. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is in the centre of the body with the magazine square to the front. The right hand retains its full grip of the pistol grip with the right wrist, forearm and elbow well in. 2. The left hand has a full grip on the stock, with the exception of the thumb, just above the trigger guard, with the left wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **PRESENT ARMS – THREE (Fig 8-16).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Force the rifle down the front centre of the body under the control of the left hand. At the same time changing the grip of the right hand to a ‘Y’-like grip in the area of the small of the butt. 2. At the same time bend the right knee through the bent knee position and place the right foot down so the instep is behind the left foot. 3. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is in the centre of the body with the magazine square to the front. 2. The right hand has a ‘Y’-like grip in the area of the small of the butt. 3. The left hand has a full grip with the exception of the thumb. 4. The right instep is behind the left foot. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PARTY</p> <p>PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Open Order and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PARTY</p> <p>PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



First Movement

Fig 8-14



Second Movement

Fig 8-15



Final Position

Fig 8-16

PRESENT FROM LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSED

LESSON 6 - VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach how to fire a volley of blank cartridges from the position of the Slope and to return to the Slope.
Timings	One 40 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress with rifle (bayonet and scabbard not required).
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent. Ear defence will be required by the instructor and squad if blank ammunition is to be used.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention.
Revision	Present Arms from the Lower on your Arms Reversed.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in rifle drill is to teach you volleys with blank cartridges and the return to the Slope Arms. The reason this movement is taught is to enable a Firing Party at a military funeral to pay compliments to the deceased.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration: ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: LOAD PRESENT VOLLEYS FIRE VOLLEYS FIRE VOLLEYS FIRE UNLOAD.</p>	<p>1. There are four stages to this movement each stage being executed on a separate word of command.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO FOUR STAGES EACH INTRODUCED BY A SEPARATE WORD OF COMMAND.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) STAGE ONE – LOAD - ONE

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right arm is forced across the body by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the area of the small of the butt. 2. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are six parts to this stage. 2. The left hand and the rifle do not move throughout the movement. 3. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt with the wrist, forearm and elbow straight and parallel to the ground. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **STAGE ONE – LOAD - TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced across the body to the right shoulder under control of the right hand. 2. At the same time, the left hand releases its grip on the butt plate to strike, seize and grasp the stock in a full grip, whilst the right hand changes to a ‘Y’-like grip. 3. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical in the right shoulder with the magazine square to the front. 2. The right hand has a ‘Y’-like grip on the small of the butt. 3. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **STAGE ONE – LOAD - THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced in front of the right shoulder under control of the left hand. 2. At the same time, the right hand releases its grip to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip. 3. At the same time the left leg is bent to take a 30 inch pace to the front. 4. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground with both knees braced and the body weight forward over the left leg. 2. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip. 3. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger, which is placed on the trigger guard. 4. The left hand retains its full grip on the stock with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) **STAGE ONE – LOAD - FOUR.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand is forced by the shortest route to strike the area of the cocking handle with the palm of the hand. 2. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle, left hand, wrist and forearm do not move throughout the movement. 2. The fingers of the right hand are extended along the rifle with the thumb curled around the cocking lever. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

5) **STAGE ONE – LOAD - FIVE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fifth part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand cocks the rifle, ensuring that the working parts are forced fully to the rear, and allowed to come forward. Once the cocking handle has been released, the hand with fingers still extended is to forward assist. It then resumes its position over the cocking handle. 2. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle, left hand, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the movement. 2. The fingers of the right hand are extended along the rifle. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

6) **STAGE ONE – LOAD - SIX (Fig 8-17).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the sixth part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand is forced by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the pistol grip in a full grip. 2. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle, left hand, wrist and elbow do not move throughout the movement. 2. The right hand has a full grip on the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger, which is placed on the trigger guard. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

7) **STAGE TWO – PRESENT - ONE (Fig 8-18).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate this stage giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced up until the butt plate is on the right shoulder. 2. At the same time the right index finger moves the safety catch into the 'Fire' position and is then placed into the trigger guard ready to squeeze the trigger. 3. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is one part to this stage. 2. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees, with the butt plate resting on top of the right shoulder. 3. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger, which is curled around the trigger. The wrist, forearm and elbow are forced well in. 4. The left hand, where physically possible, maintains a full grip of the stock. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

8) **STAGE THREE – VOLLEYS FIRE - ONE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate this stage giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The trigger is squeezed. The index finger is then placed along the trigger guard. 2. On the execution of the movement, the squad will call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is one part to this stage. 2. The rifle, right hand, left hand, wrist forearm and elbow maintain their position throughout the movement. 3. The trigger should be snatched. 4. This same action will be carried out until a total of THREE volleys are fired. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

9) STAGE FOUR – UNLOAD - ONE (Fig 8-17).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced down to the right hip. 2. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are six parts to this stage. 2. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt placed on the right hip. 3. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard. 4. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

10) STAGE FOUR – UNLOAD - TWO.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The head and eyes are lowered sufficiently to look at the rifle. 2. At the same time, with the right hand, rotate the rifle sufficiently so that the safety catch is visible. 3. The left hand is forced by the shortest route to the safety catch and with the thumb and the safety catch is forced to the 'Safe' position. 4. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt in the right hip. 2. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard. 3. The left hand is in the area of the safety catch with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 4. With the exception of the head and eyes, the body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

11) STAGE FOUR – UNLOAD - THREE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand is forced by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the stock in a full grip. 2. At the same time, the head and eyes are raised. 3. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is at an angle of approximately 45 degrees with the butt in the right hip. 2. The right hand has a full grip of the pistol grip with the exception of the index finger which is placed on the trigger guard. 3. The left hand has a full grip of the stock with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

12) STAGE FOUR – UNLOAD - FOUR.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fourth part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Under control of the left hand, the rifle is forced to a vertical position on the right side of the body. 2. At the same time, the right hand releases its grip of the pistol grip and is forced by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the small of the butt in a ‘Y’-like grip. 3. At the same time the left knee is bent sufficiently to allow the left foot to resume the position of Attention. 4. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is vertical in front of the right shoulder with the magazine square to the front. 2. The right hand has a ‘Y’-like grip on the small of the butt with the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 3. The left hand has a full grip on the stock just above the trigger guard, the wrist, forearm and elbow forced well in. 4. Both feet are flat and firm on the ground at an angle of 45 degrees from the front centre of the body. Both knees are braced. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

13) STAGE FOUR – UNLOAD - FIVE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the fifth part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle is forced up and across the body by the shortest route and placed on the left shoulder under control of the right hand. 2. At the same time, the grip of the right hand is changed to a full grip, whilst the left hand releases its grip and is forced down on the rifle by the shortest route to strike, seize and grasp the butt plate with a cup-like grip. 3. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stock of the rifle is in the left shoulder with the magazine to the left. The left hand has a cup-like grip on the butt plate with the wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground, the elbow forced well into the body. 2. The right hand has a full grip on the small of the butt, with the wrist, forearm and elbow parallel to the ground. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

14) STAGE FOUR – UNLOAD - SIX.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the sixth part giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right arm is forced down, by the shortest route, to resume the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of the movement, the squad is to call out: <p>ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The rifle, left wrist, forearm and elbow do not move during the movement. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movements:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGE LOAD</p> <p>PRESENT</p> <p>VOLLEYS FIRE (x3)</p> <p>UNLOAD.</p>	<p>In the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE</p> <p>ONE</p> <p>ONE</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Close Formation of Threes and confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>ARMS DRILL JUDGING THE TIME VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES LOAD</p> <p>PRESENT</p> <p>VOLLEYS FIRE (x3)</p> <p>UNLOAD.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE</p> <p>ONE</p> <p>ONE</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>



Load / Unload

Fig 8-17



Front View

Present



Side View

Fig 8-18

VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES

LESSON 7 - THE REVERSE SWORDS FROM THE CARRY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Reverse Swords from the Carry.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. The Reverse Arms position can be used when marching in Quick and Slow Time. This is to be practised at the end of the lesson.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress, swords and sword belts.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent. If indoor there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention with swords in their scabbards.
Revision	Revise saluting at the Halt then return swords to their scabbards.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is to teach you the Reverse Swords from the Carry. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to Reverse Swords when in attendance at a military funeral, when paying respects to the deceased in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME REVERSE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are two parts to this movement. 2. Sword drill is executed on the third and fourth movements of the rifle drill.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) REVERSE ARMS – ONE (Fig 8-19).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right wrist is twisted, dropping the point of the sword to the left front until the sword is hanging vertically with the point downwards. 2. On the execution of the movement, the squad will call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pommel of the sword is uppermost, the hilt to the front and in front of the right shoulder. 2. The fingers of the right hand are curled around the handle, thumb to the right. 3. The back of the hand is to the left and the right elbow against the side, with the arm at an angle of 45 degrees. 4. The body is held erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **REVERSE ARMS – TWO (Fig 8-20).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The blade of the sword is forced under the right armpit. To do this the sword is rotated to the left so that the hilt faces uppermost. The right elbow is forced to the side and the right hand relaxes its grip on the handle. At the same time the blade is seized from behind the body with the left hand. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand comes from behind the back, in line with the waist belt, the back of the hand underneath the blade. 2. The hilt faces upwards. 3. The blade is at an angle of 45 degrees to the horizontal. 4. The body is held erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME REVERSE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remind the squad that the sword exercise must be accurate and graceful and is carried out on the third and fourth movements of the Reverse Arms with the rifle.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME REVERSE ARMS.	Students to execute the movement without calling out the timing: ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. When marching in Slow Time the final position is maintained. 3. When marching in Quick Time the left hand quits its grip on the sword and returns to its position on the scabbard.



First Movement

Fig 8-19



Final Position

Fig 8-20

REVERSE SWORDS FROM THE CARRY

LESSON 8 - THE CARRY SWORDS FROM THE REVERSE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Carry Swords from the Reverse.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress, swords and sword belts.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent. If indoor there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line or half circle, swords in their scabbards.
Revision	Reverse Swords then return swords to their scabbards.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is to teach you the Carry Swords from the Reverse. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to return to the Carry having paid respects to the deceased at a military funeral in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration :</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CARRY SWORDS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CARRY SWORDS – ONE (Fig 8-21).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<p>1. The left hand releases its grip and returns to the side of the body. At the same time the sword is allowed to come forward and hang vertically. The right arm is extended with the back of the hand to the left.</p> <p>2. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out:</p> <p>ONE.</p>	<p>1. The left hand returns to the left side and resumes the correct position of Attention.</p> <p>2. The body is held erect and square to the front.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CARRY SWORDS – TWO (Fig 8-22).**

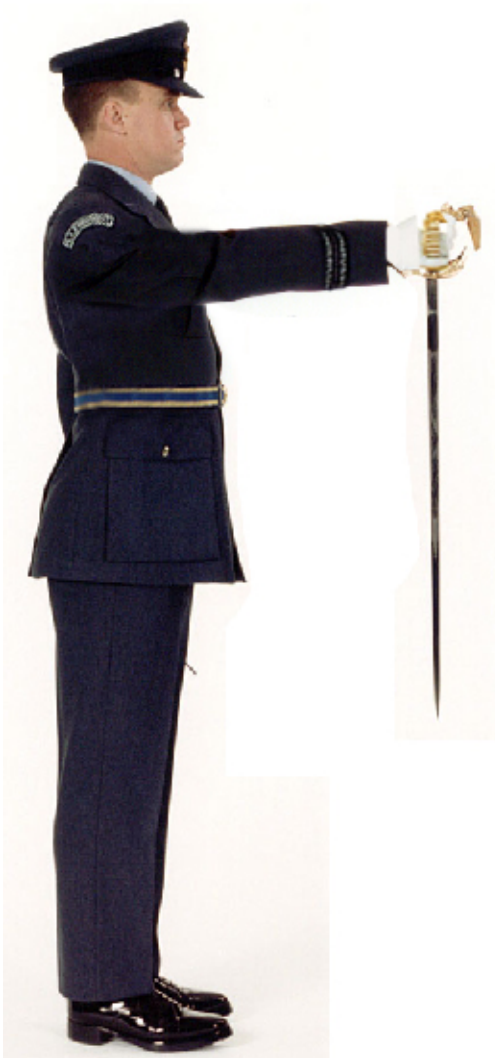
INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is swung up and to the left to resume the position of the Carry. 2. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is swung up with a circular motion as the right arm is pulled back to the position of the Carry. 2. The body is held erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration: INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CARRY SWORDS.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CARRY SWORDS.	Students to execute the movement without calling out the timing: ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 8-21



Final Position

Fig 8-22

CARRY SWORDS FROM THE REVERSE

LESSON 9 - THE CHANGE SWORDS AT THE REVERSE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Change Swords at the Reverse.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. This movement when done on the march can be done in either Slow or Quick Time.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress, swords and sword belts.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent. If indoor there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line or half circle, swords in their scabbards.
Revision	Reverse and Carry Swords, then return swords to their scabbards.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is to learn the Change Swords at the Reverse. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to change swords in order to rest a limb, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CHANGE ARMS – ONE (Fig 8-23).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the cautionary command CHANGE, the grip of the right hand is changed to an underhand grip. 2. Then on the executive command ARMS, the sword is allowed to come forward and is rotated outwards so the hilt faces the front. 3. At the same time the left hand is forced to the left side of the body. 4. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand is now in the correct position of Attention on the left side of the body. 2. The thumb of the right hand is to the left and the basket of the sword is to the front. 3. The pommel of the handle is in line with the shoulder. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) CHANGE ARMS – TWO (Fig 8-24).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is passed across the body with the hilt at shoulder height into the grip of the left hand. 2. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand relaxes its position on the handle of the sword. 2. The back of the left hand is to the left, the fingers are curled around the handle, and the basket of the sword is facing the front. 3. The sword hangs vertically from the left hand. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) CHANGE ARMS – THREE (Fig 8-25).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is rotated inwards and forced under the left armpit. 2. The right hand is forced to the rear to grasp the blade and after a pause, the position of the left hand is changed by placing it underneath the sword handle. 3. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The back of the right hand is underneath the blade and the sword is at an angle of 45 degrees. 2. The sword handle rests in the crook of the thumb and the back of the left hand is facing to the left. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The movement should be carried out during the same movement with the rifle. 2. This movement when done on the march can be done in either Slow or Quick Time.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement without calling out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 8-23



Second Movement

Fig 8-24



Final Position

Fig 8-25

CHANGE SWORDS AT THE REVERSE

LESSON 10 - THE LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED FROM THE PRESENT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Lower On Your Swords Reversed from the Present
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress, swords and sword belts.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent. If indoor there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line or half circle, swords in their scabbards.
Revision	Reverse and Change Swords then return swords to their scabbards.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is to teach you the Lower on Your Swords Reversed from the Present. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to pay a compliment to the deceased, at a military funeral, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED.</p>	<p>On the execution of this movement, the instructor is to call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 SIX LEFT – RIGHT 1000 2000 3000 FOUR.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are three parts to this movement. 2. Explain that the movement is carried out from the Present in time with the rifle movement.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED – ONE (Fig 8-26).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is brought to the position of the Recover. 2. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The tip of the sword is uppermost, edge to the left, the hilt in line with the mouth, fingers around the handle. 2. The thumb is pointing upwards and the back of the hand is to the front. 3. The body is held erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED – TWO (Fig 8-27).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. To the timing:1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 SIX. The point of the sword is allowed to fall forward, to be placed between the feet, in line with the tip of the toes. 2. The grip of the right hand is changed so that it rests on the pommel. 3. The left hand is placed on top of the right. 4. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 SIX. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the point of the sword is falling forward, the hilt is rotated to the right so that the edge of the sword is to the right. 2. The right arm remains straight as the sword falls. 3. When the sword is resting on the ground the arms are pulled in to the body. 4. The body is held erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED – THREE (Fig 8-28).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<p>1. The chin is lowered on to the chest.</p> <p>2. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out the timing: 1000 2000 3000 FOUR.</p>	<p>1. The sword and elbows do not move.</p> <p>2. The chin is lowered on the count of FOUR.</p> <p>3. The body is erect and square to the front.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 SIX LEFT – RIGHT 1000 2000 3000 FOUR.</p>	<p>1. Emphasise that all the movements are to be carried out with dignity, and the second and third movements must not be hurried.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Confirm by collective practise: SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED.	Students to execute the movement calling out the timing: ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 SIX LEFT – RIGHT 1000 2000 3000 FOUR.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



First Movement

Fig 8-26



Second Movement

Fig 8-27



Final Position

Fig 8-28

LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED

LESSON 11 - THE PRESENT FROM THE LOWER ON YOUR SWORDS REVERSED

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Present from the Lower On Your Swords Reversed.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress, swords and sword belts.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent. If indoor there must be sufficient ceiling height and space for the squad to handle their swords safely.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line or half circle, swords in their scabbards.
Revision	Lower on our swords Reversed from the Present.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in sword drill is to teach you the Present from the Lower on Your Swords Reversed. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to return to the Present having paid a compliment to the deceased at a military funeral, in a smart, uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PARTY PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are three parts to this movement. 2. Explain that the movement is coordinated with the rifle movements for the Present Arms.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) PRESENT ARMS – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The head is raised from the chest. 2. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword, right and left arms do not move throughout the movement. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) PRESENT ARMS – TWO.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After a pause the sword is raised to the position of the Recover. 2. At the same time, the left arm resumes its correct position of Attention at the left side of the body. 3. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The tip of the sword is uppermost, the edge to the left and the hilt in line with the mouth. 2. The fingers are curled around the handle, the thumb pointing upwards. 3. The body is held erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **PRESENT ARMS – THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is brought from the position of the Recover to the correct position of the Salute. 2. On the execution of this movement, the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The sword is now in the correct position of the Salute. 2. The edge of the sword is to the left, the point 12 in from the ground and in front of the right shoulder. 3. The thumb is flat on the side of the handle. The hilt is behind and touching the right thigh. 4. The body is held erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PARTY</p> <p>PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the Instructor is to call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in Open Order and Confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>SWORD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PARTY</p> <p>PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement calling out the timing:</p> <p>ONE</p> <p>ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>

PART ONE-CHAPTER 9
COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL
CONTENTS

LESSON No	TITLE	PAGE No
1	Uncasing the Colour/Standard	1-9-2
2	Casing the Colour/Standard	1-9-7
3	Colour/Standard Dressed at the Order - Positions of At Ease and Attention	1-9-12
4	Carry Colour/Standard from the Order	1-9-19
5	Order Colour/Standard from the Carry	1-9-26
6	Slope Colour/Standard from the Carry	1-9-33
7	Change Arms at the Slope (Right to Left shoulder)	1-9-40
8	Change Arms at the Slope (Left to Right shoulder)	1-9-47
9	Carry Colour/Standard from the Slope	1-9-54
10	Port Colour /Standard from the Carry	1-9-61
11	Salute at the Halt with the Colour/Standard	1-9-68
12	Carry Colour/Standard from Salute at the Halt	1-9-76
13	Salute with the Colour/Standard when Marching Past	1-9-83
14	Carry Colour/Standard from the Salute when Marching Past in Slow Time	1-9-89

Colour / Standard Drill Lessons

1. All lesson plans apply equally to Colours and Standards.
2. The movements in these drills are to be performed in the same cadence as rifle exercises. When there are only 2 movements with the colour and 3 movements with the rifle, the colour is to be moved on the first and third movements of the rifle. When there are 4 movements for the rifle the colour it is to be moved on the first, second and fourth movements of the rifle.
3. The right hand only is to be used in these drills except when changing arms or as stated in the drill.
4. For drill, demonstration and parade rehearsal purposes, only practice colours/standards are to be used.

LESSON 1 - UNCASING THE COLOUR/STANDARD

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Uncasing the Colour or Standard.
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The first stage of colour/standard drill is Uncasing the Colour or Standard. The reason this movement is taught is enable the colour/standard to be used on parade.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION (ONLY IF DEMONSTRATORS ARE AVAILABLE).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The demonstration team is to give a complete demonstration of the movement.</p>	<p>1. Explain your use of demonstrators. If no demonstrators are available the instructor is to conduct the lesson without ceremony and take the part of the Colour/Standard Bearer himself.</p>	<p>1. The Colour/Standard Party is to be formed up with the two SNCO escorts one and a half paces either side of the Colour/Standard and the WO two paces centrally to the rear, with the orderly to his left covering off the left-hand escort.</p> <p>2. The instructor is to give the words of command and is to emphasise that this is done by the Colour/Standard Bearer in the actual situation.</p>

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) UNCASING THE COLOUR/STANDARD – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The Colour/Standard party is to execute the movement. The Bearer is to give the words of command:</p> <p>ESCORTS SHUN.</p> <p>INWARDS TURN</p> <p>UNCASE THE QUEENS COLOUR / STANDARD</p> <p>PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On receipt of the word of command both escorts, the WO and the Orderly adopt the position of Attention. 2. The escorts Slope Arms and carry out an incline inwards towards the Colour/Standard. 3. The escorts Present Arms after which the WO and orderly execute a right turn, and left wheel marching a total of ten paces (8,1-2) and halt two paces short of and facing the Bearer and left escort respectively. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Bearer is to be at the position of Attention with the Colour/Standard at the Order. 2. As the WO and the orderly step off they are to start the count with the first left foot to strike the ground as 'one'. 3. The WO and orderly take a total of ten paces (8, 1-2).
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively</p>	

2) **UNCASING THE COLOUR/STANDARD – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When the WO and orderly have halted the Bearer is to lower the Colour/Standard to a horizontal position with the pike firmly gripped under the right armpit and the top of the Colour/Standard case supported in the WO's right hand. 2. The Bearer is to untie the tapes of the Colour/Standard case with the left hand. 3. The WO and orderly now turn inwards to face each other on either side of the Colour/Standard. The WO removes the case with the Bearer supporting the silk and tassels. The case is then handed to the orderly who places it over the left forearm. The WO then removes the chamois cover from the Crown/Eagle and hands it to the orderly who holds it in the right hand. 4. The WO is to free the tassels so that they hang from the head of the pike. The WO and orderly now turn outwards to face the Bearer and escort. 5. The Bearer and WO release the silk allowing it to hang straight down the pike. The Bearer is to then return the Colour/Standard to the Order. 6. The Bearer is to hold the Colour/Standard at the position of Attention with the right hand. The left forearm is to be across the sword belt with fingers extended and covering the Colour. 7. The WO is to take two paces forward and dress the Colour/Standard by evenly distributing the folds on either side of the pike in order to cover it completely. The Royal Cipher is to be readily seen. 8. The Bearer is then to resume the position of Attention. The WO is to take two paces to the rear. Both the WO and the orderly salute together, execute a Right Turn and step off together. The WO wheels around to his left a total of ten paces (8,1-2) to resume his original position, two paces to the rear of the Bearer. The orderly is to march off parade to the rear of the Colour/Standard Party. The orderly is responsible for the safe custody of the case until the Colour/Standard is cased. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is no timing to be observed.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

3) **UNCASING THE COLOUR/STANDARD – THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The Colour/Standard Bearer is to give the word of command:</p> <p>ESCORTS SLOPE ARMS ESCORTS OUTWARDS TURN ESCORTS SHOULDER ARMS COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY STAND AT EASE.</p>	<p>1. The escorts are to turn outwards so that they once again are facing to the front.</p>	<p>1. Colour/Standard Parties are not to Stand Easy.</p> <p>2. Troops are not to Stand Easy with Colours or Standards on parade.</p>
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL CONFIRMATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to exercise the Colour/Standard Party in the drills that have been taught.</p>		
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. **END OF LESSON DRILLS.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Confirm by questions and practise.</p>		<p>1. Make any corrections where necessary.</p>

LESSON 2 - CASING THE COLOUR/STANDARD

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Casing the Colour or Standard.
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard drill is Casing the Colour or Standard. The reason this movement is taught is to enable the Colour/Standard to be stored correctly after a parade.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION (ONLY IF DEMONSTRATORS ARE AVAILABLE).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The demonstration team is to give a complete demonstration of the movement.</p>	<p>1. Explain your use of demonstrators. If no demonstrators are available the instructor is to conduct the lesson without ceremony and take the part of the Colour/Standard Bearer himself.</p>	<p>1. The Colour/Standard Party is to be formed up with the two SNCO escorts one and a half paces either side of the Colour/Standard and the WO two paces centrally to the rear with the orderly to his left covering off the right hand escort.</p> <p>2. The instructor is to give the words of command and is to emphasise that this is done by the Colour/Standard Bearer in the actual situation.</p>

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CASING THE COLOUR/STANDARD – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The Colour/Standard party are to execute the movement. The Bearer is to give the words of command:</p> <p>ESCORTS SHUN INWARDS TURN CASE THE QUEENS COLOUR (STANDARD) PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the word of command both escorts, the WO and the Orderly adopt the position of Attention. 2. The escorts Slope Arms and carry out an incline inwards towards the Colour/Standard and Present Arms. 3. On completion of the Present Arms the WO and orderly execute a Right Turn, and left wheel marching a total of ten paces (8,1-2) and halt two paces short of and facing the Bearer and left escort respectively. Both the WO and the orderly are to salute. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Bearer is to be at the position of Attention with the Colour/Standard at the Order. 2. As the WO and the orderly step off they are to start the count with the first left foot to strike the ground as 'one'. 3. The WO and orderly take a total of ten paces (8,1-2).
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CASING THE COLOUR/STANDARD – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When the WO and orderly have completed the salute Bearer is to lower the Colour/Standard to a horizontal position the pike firmly gripped under the right arm pit the crown/eagle supported in the WO's right hand. 2. The Bearer and the WO then fold the Colour/Standard as follows, the Colour is to be grasped at the corners of the fly, the edge of the fly is to be placed just over the pike, this is to be repeated twice more so that the Colour is finally folded in eight folds and is resting on top of the pike. 3. The WO and the orderly turn inwards to face each other either side of the pike, the WO is to spiral the tassels around the Colour/Standard three times, taking great care to ensure that the silk is not creased in any way. 4. The WO takes the chamois from the orderly, place it over the crown/eagle and tie the tassels in a single bow. 5. The WO takes the case from the orderly and slide it over the Colour/Standard with the seam of the cover facing downward towards the ground. Care must be taken to ensure that the silk is not ruffled in any way. 6. The Bearer then brings the cased Colour/Standard to the Order at the position of Attention with the right hand, the left hand is brought across the body covering the sword belt with the fingers extended to steady the Colour/Standard. 7. The WO is then to step forward one pace and tie the tapes at the base of the cover in a single bow, he then steps back one pace to resume his position. 8. The Bearer is then to cut the left arm away to resume the position of Attention, the WO and orderly are then to execute a Right Turn and wheel around to the left marching ten paces to halt with the WO behind the Bearer and the orderly behind the right escort, (both at a distance of two paces). 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is no timing to be observed
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

3) **CASING THE COLOUR/STANDARD – THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The Colour/Standard Bearer is to give the word of command:</p> <p>ESCORTS SLOPE ARMS ESCORTS OUTWARDS TURN.</p> <p>The Colour/Standard Bearer is to give the word of command:</p> <p>COLOUR PARTY DISMISS.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The escorts are to turn outwards so that they once again are facing to the front. 2. The Bearer is then to take two paces forward and about turn to face the Colour/Standard Party. 3. The WO, escorts and orderly execute a Right Incline, salute and dismiss. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Colour/Standard parties are not to Stand Easy. 2. Troops are not to Stand Easy with Colours or Standards on parade.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

D. **FINAL CONFIRMATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to exercise the Colour/Standard Party in the drills that have been taught.		
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. **END OF LESSON DRILLS.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Confirm by questions and practise		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary.

LESSON 3 - COLOUR/STANDARD DRESSED AT THE ORDER-POSITIONS OF AT EASE AND ATTENTION

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the position of the Order and Dressing the Colour/Standard, and the positions of At Ease and Attention.
Timings	One 40 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard drill is to teach the position of the Colour/Standard at the Order, the correct procedure for dressing the Colour/Standard, and the positions of At Ease and Attention.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION (Fig 9-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the position.</p>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is only one movement to the position of the Colour/Standard at the Order. 2. There are three movements to dressing the Colour/Standard. 3. The positions of At Ease and Attention are the same as in foot drill with the exception of the right hand supporting the Colour/Standard.

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) THE COLOUR/STANDARD AT THE POSITION OF THE ORDER – ONE (Fig 9-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the position of the Order and explain:</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike and the silk are to be held with the right hand on the pike at the lowest corner of the silk. 2. The pike is to be perpendicular with the base resting on the ground in line with and against the right toe. 3. The elbow is to be close to the body. 4. The silk is not to be stretched taut but is to be allowed to hang naturally down the pike. 	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **DRESSING THE COLOUR/STANDARD AT THE ORDER – ONE/TWO/THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate and explain:</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Firstly the Colour/Standard is to be dressed at the Order the Bearer is to bring the left hand smartly across the front of the body. 2. Secondly the Bearer is to distribute the folds of the silk evenly on either side of the pike so that the pike is covered and the Royal Cipher/Sqn Badge is clearly displayed. In the case of a Standard, the eagle is to face forwards. 3. Thirdly the Bearer is then to bring the left arm smartly back across the front of the body to resume the correct position of Attention. 	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **THE POSITIONS OF AT EASE – ONE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the word of command.</p> <p>COLOUR BEARER/STANDARD BEARER STAND AT EASE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left knee is bent so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee, the left leg is then forced down to the ground 12 in (300 mm) from the right foot. 2. The right hand continues to hold the silk against the pike to where the lowest corner of the silk reaches, with the right arm pulled into the side of the body. 3. The left arm remains braced at the left hand side of the body with the fingers curled to make a fist and the thumb in line with the seam of the trousers, not moving throughout the execution of the movement. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body is now in the correct position of the At Ease with the Colour/Standard. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

4) THE POSITION OF ATTENTION – ONE (Fig 9-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the word of command.</p> <p>COLOUR BEARER/STANDARD BEARER SHUN.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left knee is bent so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the left foot hanging naturally below the knee, the left foot is then forced down beside the right to resume the correct position of Attention. 2. The right hand continues to hold the silk against the pike to where the lowest corner of the silk reaches, with the right arm pulled in to the right hand side of the body. 3. The left arm remains braced at the left hand side of the body with the fingers curled to make a fist and the thumb in line with the seam of the trousers, not moving throughout the execution of the movement. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The body is now in the correct position of Attention with the Colour/Standard. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

D. FINAL CONFIRMATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to exercise the Colour/Standard Party in the drills that have been taught.		
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Confirm by practise.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Final Position

Fig 9-1

COLOUR/ STANDARD DRESSED AT THE ORDER.

LESSON 4 - CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD FROM THE ORDER

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Carry from the Order.
Timings	One 40 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Colour/Standard dressed at the Order.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard drill is the position of the Carry from the Order. The reason this movement is taught is to enable the Colour/Standard Bearer to move from the position of the Order to the Carry.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling out the time as the movement is executed.</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – ONE (Fig 9-2).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is to be raised to a perpendicular position in front of the body, and guided with the left hand close to and slightly above the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 2. At the same time the right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered to the side of the pike to give support. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are against the pike. 2. The left hand has a cup-like grip around the socket of the Colour/Standard belt, touching the base of the pike. 3. The remainder of the body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is to be inserted into the socket under the control of the right hand and guided into position by the left hand. 2. The right wrist, forearm and elbow remain against the pike throughout the execution of the movement. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is fully inserted into the socket. 2. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are against the pike. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – THREE.(Fig 9-3).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the word of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand is cut away from the socket to resume the position of Attention at the left hand side of the body. 2. At the same time the right forearm is raised to a horizontal position to the right hand side with the right thumb in front of the mouth and the back of the hand facing to the front. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right forearm is horizontal and parallel to the ground. 2. The right thumb is in front of and in line with the mouth. 3. The back of the hand is facing towards the front. 4. The left arm is at the correct position of Attention. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement, giving the word of command:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>		

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Form the squad in a half circle or the individual to your front and confirm by practise:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement calling out the time:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are pulled close into the pike on the first and second positions.</p>



First Movement

Fig 9-2



Final Position

Fig 9-3

CARRY COLOUR/ STANDARD

LESSON 5 - ORDER COLOUR/STANDARD FROM THE CARRY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Order Colour/Standard from the Carry position.
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Carry from the Order.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard Drill is the Order from the Carry. The reason this movement is taught is to enable the Bearer to move from the Carry to the Order.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling out the time as the movement is executed:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ORDER COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are three parts to this movement. 2. There are four movements to the rifle exercise Shoulder Arms from the Slope Arms position. When working with the rifle the Colour/Standard is to be held on the third movement of the exercise. The Colour/Standard is only to move on the first, second and fourth movement of the rifle exercise.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) ORDER COLOUR/STANDARD – ONE (Fig 9-4).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is to be raised just clear of the socket of the Colour/Standard belt under the control of the right hand. 2. At the same time the right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the pike for control and the left hand is brought across the body by the shortest possible route to grasp the socket in a full grip. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The base of the pike is raised just clear of the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 2. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the pike. 3. The left hand has a full grip on the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **ORDER COLOUR/STANDARD – TWO (Fig 9-5).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to execute the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is lowered to the position of the Order under the control of the right hand. 2. At the same time the left hand is brought across the front of the body by the shortest possible route to steady the Colour/Standard with the hand open and fingers together. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is perpendicular with the base on the ground in line with and against the right toe. 2. The pike and the silk are held with the right hand at the lowest point of the silk. 3. The left wrist, forearm and elbow are parallel to the ground with the hand open and fingers together. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **ORDER COLOUR/STANDARD – THREE (Fig 9-6).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the following words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left arm is cut away sharply to the left-hand side of the body to resume the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is in the correct position of the Order. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ORDER COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in a half circle or the individual in front of you and confirm by practise:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ORDER COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ ONE.</p>	<p>1. Ensure that the pike is at the correct position of the Order on the completion of the movement.</p>



First Movement

Fig 9-4



Second Movement

Fig 9-5



Final Position

Fig 9-6

ORDER COLOUR/ STANDARD

LESSON 6 - SLOPE COLOUR/STANDARD FROM THE CARRY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Slope from the Carry.
Timings	One 25 minute period
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Order from the Carry.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard Drill is the position of the Slope from the Carry. The reason this movement is taught is to enable the Bearer to rest from the Carry position on parade when the ceremonial situation allows.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling out the time as the movement is executed.</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are three parts to this movement. 2. At the Halt, the Colour/Standard is never Sloped; it is held at the Carry or Order depending on whether the troops are at the Slope or the Shoulder but during an inspection, when the parade are at the Shoulder, Colours will be at the Carry. 3. On the march Colours will always be carried at the Slope, except on the following occasions when they will be at the Carry: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Marching onto and off the parade ground. b. On the Saluting base. c. Marching past. d. Advancing in Review Order. e. Marching in Slow Time down the ranks while trooping the Colour. f. When compliments are being paid to the uncased Colour by a body of personnel. g. Marching through cities/towns which have conferred their freedom on the RAF station.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SLOPE COLOUR/STANDARD – ONE (Fig 9-7).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the pike, at the same time the left arm is brought across the body by the shortest possible route to grasp the top of the socket in a cup-like grip. 2. The pike is then raised just clear of the socket. 3. On the execution of the command the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the pike. 2. The left hand has a cup-like grip around the top of the socket of the colour/standard belt. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SLOPE COLOUR/STANDARD – TWO (Fig 9-8).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is brought sharply across to the right hand side of the body and lowered onto the right shoulder. 2. At the same time the left hand is brought from the socket of the Colour/Standard belt to grasp the pike just above the right hand. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The angle of the pike in relation to the ground is approximately 45 degrees. 2. The right elbow is pulled in close to the right hand side of the body with the right forearm parallel to the ground. The fingers are to be fully flexed and closed together over the silk. 3. The silk is to hang over and cover the right shoulder and arm. 4. The pike is not to show between the hand and the shoulder, but is to be covered by the silk. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **SLOPE COLOUR/STANDARD – THREE (Fig 9-9).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left arm is cut away sharply from the pike to resume the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard and the right wrist, forearm and elbow do not move throughout the execution of the movement. 2. The Colour/Standard is approximately 45 degrees in relation to the ground. 3. The Colour/Standard is the correct position of the Slope on the right shoulder. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in a half circle, or the Bearer in front of you, and confirm by practise:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement calling out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is at an angle of 45 degrees in relation to the ground. 2. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are parallel to the ground. 3. When executing this movement in Quick Time each movement is carried out on consecutive left feet.



First Movement

Fig 9-7



Second Movement

Fig 9-8



Final Position

Fig 9-9

SLOPE COLOUR/STANDARD

LESSON 7 - CHANGE ARMS AT THE SLOPE (RIGHT TO LEFT SHOULDER)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Change Arms at the Slope with the Colour/Standard from the right to the left shoulder.
Timings	One 40 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Slope from the Carry.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard Drill is the Change Arms with the Colour/Standard from the right to the left shoulder. The reason this movement is taught is to enable the Bearer to rest the arm.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling the time as the movement is executed:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CHANGE ARMS – ONE (Fig 9-10).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand is brought across the front of the body by the shortest possible route to grasp the silk and pike with the left hand just above the right hand. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand has a full grip on the silk/pike just above but not touching the right hand. 2. The right hand, wrist, forearm and elbow, and the Colour/Standard do not move throughout the execution of this movement. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CHANGE ARMS – TWO.(Fig 9-11).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is to carry smartly across the front of the body and placed on the left shoulder. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is now positioned on the left shoulder with the pike approximately 45 degrees to the ground. 2. The right hand is positioned just above the left in a full grip. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **CHANGE ARMS – THREE (Fig 9-12).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right arm is cut away sharply to the right hand side of the body to resume the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is now in the correct position of the Slope on the left shoulder. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in a half circle, or the individual in front of you, and confirm by practise:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Ensure that the Colour/ Standard is positioned at an angle of 45 degrees in relation to the ground.</p>



First Movement

Fig 9-10



Second Movement

Fig 9-11

CHANGE ARMS



Final Position

Fig 9-12

LESSON 8 - CHANGE ARMS AT THE SLOPE (LEFT TO RIGHT SHOULDER)

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach Change Arms at the Slope with the Colour/Standard from the left to the right shoulder.
Timings	One 40 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Change Arms at the Slope left to right.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard Drill is the Change Arms with the Colour/Standard from the left to the right shoulder. The reason this movement is taught is to enable the Bearer to rest the arm.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling the time as the movement is executed:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CHANGE ARMS – ONE (Fig 9-13).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand is brought across the front of the body by the shortest possible route to grasp the silk and pike with the right hand just above the left hand. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand has a full grip on the silk/pike just above but not touching the left hand. 2. The left hand, wrist, forearm and elbow, and the Colour/Standard do not move throughout the execution of this movement. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CHANGE ARMS – TWO.(Fig 9-14).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is to carry smartly across the front of the body and is placed on the right shoulder. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is now positioned on the right shoulder with the pike approximately 45 degrees to the ground. 2. The left hand is positioned just above the right in a full grip. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **CHANGE ARMS – THREE (Fig 9-15).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left arm is cut away sharply to the left hand side of the body to resume the correct position of Attention. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is now in the correct position of the Slope on the right shoulder. 2. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in a half circle, or the individual in front of you, and confirm by practise:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGE ARMS.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Ensure that the Colour/Standard is positioned at an angle of 45 degrees to the ground on the right shoulder.</p>



First Movement

Fig 9-13



Second Movement

Fig 9-14



Final Position

Fig 9-15

CHANGE ARMS

LESSON 9 - CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD FROM THE SLOPE

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach The Carry from the Slope position.
Timings	One 25 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Change arms at the Slope left to the right shoulder.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard drill is the position of the Carry from the Slope. The reason this movement is taught is to enable the Bearer to move the Colour/Standard from the Slope to the Carry.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling out the time as the movement is executed:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – ONE (Fig 9-16).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is to be raised sharply off of the right shoulder and positioned with the base just above the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 2. At the same time the right wrist, forearm elbow are lowered against the pike to give support. 3. At the same time the left hand is brought sharply to the front of the body to encompass the socket and the base of the pike in a full grip. 4. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is in the centre of the body. 2. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the side of the pike. 3. The left hand has a full grip around the socket of the Colour/Standard belt and the base of the pike. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The base of the pike is to be inserted in to the socket of the Colour belt with a sharp movement of the right hand, whilst being guided by the left hand. 2. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The base of the pike is fully inserted into the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 2. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the pike. 3. The left hand has a cup-like grip around the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 4. The body is erect and square to the front. 5. Any loose material should be gathered by the right hand at this point.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – THREE (Fig 9-17).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right forearm is to be raised sharply to the horizontal position. 2. At the same time the left arm is cut away sharply to resume the correct position of Attention. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are parallel to the ground. 2. The right thumb is in front of and in line with the mouth. 3. The back of the hand is facing to the front. 4. The Colour/Standard is in a perpendicular position to the front of the body. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement.</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in a half circle, or the individual in front of you, and confirm by practise:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the pike on the first and second movement.</p>



First Movement

Fig 9-16



Final Position

Fig 9-17

CARRY COLOUR

LESSON 10 - PORT COLOUR/STANDARD FROM THE CARRY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Port from the Carry.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. Note that this movement may be carried out with the bearers in the kneeling position
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease, in a half circle.
Revision	Carry from the Slope.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard drill is the Port position from the Carry. The reason this movement is taught is to enable the Bearer to hand the Colour/Standard over, for dedication or similar ceremonial.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling out the time as the movement is executed:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PORT COLOUR/STANDARD</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT-RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) PORT COLOUR/STANDARD – ONE (Fig 9-18).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the pike. 2. At the same time the left hand is brought sharply across the front of the body by the shortest possible route to grasp the socket of the Colour/Standard belt in a full grip. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the pike to give support. 2. The left hand has a full grip around the socket of the Colour/Standard belt encompassing the pike. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **PORT COLOUR/STANDARD – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The base of the pike is raised just clear of the socket of the Colour/Standard belt under the control of the right hand. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are held against the pike. 2. The left hand has a full grip around the base of the pike and the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 3. The pike is perpendicular to the centre of the body. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **PORT COLOUR/STANDARD – THREE (Fig 9-19).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is to be moved to a position across the front of the body, to an angle of 45 degrees under the control of the right hand. 2. At the same time the left hand quits the grip from the socket of the Colour/Standard belt to grasp the silk and the pike in line with the left shoulder. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The silk and pike are at an angle of 45 degrees across the front of the body with the head of the pike to the left. 2. The right hand is in line with the sword belt; the left hand is in line with the left shoulder. 3. The base of the pike is to be one foot (300 mm) above the ground. 4. Both elbows are to be pulled in and close to the body. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PORT COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in a half circle, or the Bearer in front of you, and confirm by practise:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PORT COLOUR/STANDARD.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement calling out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This movement is often used in church when handing Colours or Standards to the Clergy and is carried out with the Bearer kneeling on the right knee. 2. The student should practise this variation of the movement. 3. The Colour/Standard is usually inserted into the socket of the Colour/Standard belt by the Clergy, on completion of the service. 4. In this instance the Bearer is to gather the silk with the right hand and close the right forearm, wrist and elbow to the pike. 5. At the same time the left hand is brought across the body by the shortest possible route to grasp the socket of the Colour/Standard belt and the pike in a full grip. 6. Once the Bearer has full control of the Colour/Standard he is to adopt the Carry position and continue with the ceremonial.



First Movement

Fig 9-18



Final Position

Fig 9-19

PORT COLOUR/STANDARD

LESSON 11 - SALUTE AT THE HALT WITH THE COLOUR/STANDARD

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Salute from the Carry, (Lowering the Colour/Standard) at the Halt.
Timings	One 45 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. Note that this movement may be varied to account for wet weather or inclement conditions.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standards. Practise Colour/Standard Belts.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	The Port from the Carry.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard Drill is the position of the Salute from the Carry. The reason this movement is taught is to allow the correct compliment to be paid when a Royal Salute is ordered.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling out the time as the movement is executed:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ROYAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SALUTE FROM THE CARRY – ONE (Fig 9-20).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the command ‘Royal Salute’, the silk is to be released by means of the right hand moving a short distance down and then back up the pike to its original position thus releasing the grip on the silk. 2. Immediately after the third movement of the Present Arms with the rifle the pike is raised just clear of the Colour/Standard belt under the control of the right hand. 3. At the same time the right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered to the side of the pike to give support. 4. At the same time the left hand is brought smartly across the front of the body to grasp the socket of the Colour/Standard belt in a full grip and guide the base of the pike. 5. On the first part of this movement no timing is to be called. On the second part of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On receipt of the word of command Royal Salute the silk is to be ‘Let Fly’ (this preliminary movement is not illustrated with a figure). 2. After the third movement of the Present Arms, the pike is held just clear of the socket of the Colour/Standard belt and guided with the left hand. 3. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered to the side of the pike. 4. The pike is held perpendicular in front of the body. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **SALUTE FROM THE CARRY – TWO (Fig 9-21).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is to be moved sharply across to the right hand side of the body so that the base is positioned in the hollow of the right shoulder under the control of the right hand. 2. At the same time the left hand quits its grip on the socket of the Colour/Standard belt and moves sharply across the front of the body to steady the base of the pike. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is held perpendicular in front of the right shoulder with the base of the pike in the hollow of the shoulder. 2. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the side of the pike to give support. 3. The left arm is bent at an angle of 90 degrees with the left wrist and forearm across the front of the body and parallel to the ground. 4. The left hand is extended across the pike with the fingers fully extended to steady the base. 5. The body is erect and square to front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) SALUTE FROM THE CARRY – THREE (Figs 9-22 and 9-23 and 9-24).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left arm is to be cut away to resume the correct position of Attention at the left hand side of the body. 2. At the same time the pike is to be forced out well to the right and lowered in a sweeping motion to a position in front of and in line with the right toe, with the head of the pike held just above the ground and the silk spread on the ground to the right of the pike. 3. If a strong wind is blowing from the right the Colour/Standard is to be carried well to the left and then brought to the central position in front of the body with the silk spread to the left of the pike. 4. The pike is then to be pulled sharply rearwards and held under the right armpit with the back of the hand facing towards the ground and the right elbow pulled in to the right side of the body. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The head of the pike is just clear of the ground in front of and in line with the right toe, with the silk spread to the right, (or left depending on the wind direction and strength). 2. The Colour/Standard Bearer is to look to the front throughout the execution of this movement; the eyes are not to follow the Colour. 3. If the Colour/Standard is lowered in wet or inclement conditions the pike is held horizontally with the silk hanging vertically whilst moving in the sweeping motion thus it remains clear of the ground to prevent it from becoming soiled. 4. The Lowering of the Colour/Standard is to last the duration of the particular National Anthem being played, being pulled sharply to the rear and locked in position on the last note of the music. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ROYAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The instructor is to tap on the ground three times with the pace stick to simulate the movements of the rifle exercise Present Arms. 2. The length of time for the band to play the National Anthem for a Royal Salute is 30 seconds.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The Squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in a half circle, or the individual in front of you, and confirm by practise:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME ROYAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Practise the Squad for both dry and inclement weather drills. 2. When executing dry weather drills ensure that the pike is held just off of the ground on completion of the third movement.



First Movement

Fig 9-20



Second Movement

Fig 9-21



Third Movement(Forced out)

Fig 9-22

SALUTE AT THE HALT



Final Position

Fig 9-23



Strong Wind

Fig 9-24

SALUTE AT THE HALT

LESSON 12 - CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD FROM THE SALUTE AT THE HALT

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Carry from the Salute at the Halt.
Timings	One 20 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	The Salute from the Carry at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard drill is the Carry from the Salute position. The reason this movement is taught is to enable the Bearer to adopt the Carry from the Salute.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling out the time as the movement is executed:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – ONE (Fig 9-25).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is raised to a perpendicular position in front of the body under the control of the right hand so that the base of the pike is just above the socket of the Colour/Standard belt, the pressure of the pike being borne under the right armpit. 2. At the same time the left hand is brought across the front of the body by the shortest possible route to grasp the socket of the Colour/Standard belt and steady the base of the pike in a full grip. 3. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the pike. 2. The left hand has a full grip around the base of the socket of the Colour/Standard belt and the base of the pike. 3. The pike is perpendicular in front of the body. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command: INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is forced fully home into the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The base of the pike is fully inserted into the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 2. The pike is perpendicular to the centre of the body. 3. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are held against the pike. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – THREE (Fig 9-26).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the third movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right forearm and elbow are forced out to the right hand side of the body. 2. At the same time the left hand is cut away sharply to the left hand side of the body to resume the correct position of Attention. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is now in the position of the Carry with the body erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. **FINAL DEMONSTRATION.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remember to catch the silk on completion of the drill.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Reform the squad in a half circle, or the bearer in front of you, and confirm by practise: COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOPE ARMS.	Students are to execute the movement calling out the timing: ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE.	1. Impress upon the student(s) to catch the silk on completion of the movement but not to panic if it cannot be achieved.



First Movement

Fig 9-25



Final Position

Fig 9-26

CARRY FROM THE SALUTE

LESSON 13 - SALUTE WITH THE COLOUR/STANDARD WHEN MARCHING PAST

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Salute with the Colour/Standard when marching past.
Timings	One 45 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Carry from the Salute at the Halt.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard Drill is the position of the Salute from the Carry when marching past. The reason this movement is taught is to enable the Colour/Standard Bearer to pay the correct compliment when a Royal Salute is ordered.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION (QUICK AND SLOW TIME).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling out the time as the movement is executed:</p> <p>In Quick Time: COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In Quick Time: On receipt of the command: EYES the silk is released by moving the right hand sharply down the pike and returning it to the original position (termed 'Let Fly'). 2. On the command: RIGHT/LEFT the Colour/Standard Bearer takes no further action. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The head remains to the front and does not turn to the direction ordered.
<p>ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise at this stage.</p>	
<p>In Slow Time: COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to callout: ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are three parts to this movement.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) THE SALUTE WHEN MARCHING PAST (IN SLOW TIME) – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the command: EYES the silk is ‘Let Fly’ by moving the right hand sharply down the pike and returning it to the original position. 2. On the command: RIGHT/LEFT, which is received as the right foot strikes the ground a full marching pace of 30 in is taken with the left foot. 3. As the left foot strikes the ground the base of the pike is raised just clear of the socket of the Colour/Standard belt under the control of the right hand. 4. At the same time the right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered to the side of the pike to give support. 5. At the same time the left hand is brought across the front of the body by the shortest possible route to grasp the socket of the Colour/Standard belt in a full grip and guide the base of the pike. 6. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered to the pike. 2. The left hand has a full grip on the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 3. The base of the pike is just clear of the socket of the Colour/Standard belt and positioned such so as to guide the pike.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) THE SALUTE WHEN MARCHING PAST (IN SLOW TIME) – TWO.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When the right foot next strikes the ground the pike moves across to the right hand side of the body under the control of the right hand and is positioned so that the pike is in the hollow of the right shoulder. 2. At the same time the left arm is brought across the front of the body by the shortest possible route to steady the base of the pike. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is vertical in front of the right shoulder with the base in the hollow of the right shoulder. 2. The left elbow is bent to an angle of 90 degrees with the left wrist and forearm parallel to the ground. The fingers of the left hand are fully extended across the base of the pike. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) SALUTE WHEN MARCHING PAST (IN SLOW TIME) – THREE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When the left foot next strikes the ground the Colour/Standard is lowered to the front. 2. The pike is locked under the armpit allowing the silk to hang straight down from the pike. 3. At the same time the left arm is cut away sharply to the left-hand side of the body. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The pike is locked under the right armpit and is held so that it is horizontal to the ground. 2. The silk is hanging straight down from the pike. 3. The back of the right hand is facing towards the ground. 4. The left arm is pulled well into the side of the body with the thumb in line with the seam of the trousers. 5. Whilst marching in slow time the body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in a straight line and confirm by practise:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES RIGHT/LEFT.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Ensure the silk hangs straight down from the pike and that the pike is horizontal to the ground.</p>

LESSON 14 – CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD FROM THE SALUTE WHEN MARCHING PAST IN SLOW TIME

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Carry from the Salute when marching past.
Timings	One 45 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Practise Colour/Standard. Practise Colour/Standard Belt.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent with sufficient height clearance.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly At Ease in a half circle.
Revision	Salute with Colour or Standard when marching past.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Colour/Standard drill is the Recover of the Colour/Standard to the position of the Carry from the Salute when marching past.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling the time as the movement is executed:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT - RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. There are three parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO THREE PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a full demonstration calling out the time as the movement is executed:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The command is given as the right foot strikes the ground. A further full marching pace of 30 inches is taken with the left foot. 2. At the same time raising the Colour/Standard directly in front of the centre of the body and positioning the base of the pike just above the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 3. At the same time the right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the side of the pike. 4. At the same time the left hand is brought sharply from the left-hand side of the body to grasp the socket of the Colour/Standard belt in a full grip. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is held perpendicular to the centre of the body. 2. The left hand has a full grip around the socket of the Colour/Standard belt with the left wrist elbow and arm close to the body. 3. The right wrist, forearm and elbow are lowered against the side of the pike. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) **CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – TWO.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A further full marching pace of 30 in is taken with the right foot and at the same time the base of the pike is forced into the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 2. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The base of the Colour/Standard is inserted into the socket of the Colour/Standard belt. 2. The position of the Colour/Standard does not move throughout the execution of this movement. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) **CARRY COLOUR/STANDARD – THREE.**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A further full marching pace of 30 in is taken with the left foot at the same time the right wrist, forearm and elbow, are forced out to the right to the normal position of the Carry. 2. At the same time the grip on the socket of the Colour/Standard belt is released by the left hand and it is forced across to the left hand side of the body as for the position of Attention. 3. Continue marching in Slow Time with the Colour/Standard in the position of the Carry. 4. One quick attempt is to be made to regain the silk by closing the right wrist, forearm and elbow against the pike and reaching to secure it with the left hand. 5. When completed the normal position of the Carry is to be adopted. 6. On the execution of the movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Colour/Standard is in the position of the Carry. 2. Whilst marching in Slow Time the body remains erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete and final demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>ONE LEFT- RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Reform the squad in a half circle, or the student in front of you, and confirm by practise:</p> <p>COLOUR/STANDARD DRILL JUDGING THE TIME EYES FRONT.</p>	<p>Students are to execute the movements and call out the timing:</p> <p>ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE LEFT – RIGHT/ONE.</p>	<p>1. Make one quick attempt to regain the silk.</p>

PART 2 - CHAPTER 1

PAYING COMPLIMENTS

REASON FOR SALUTING

1. Saluting is a recognition of the Sovereign's Commission, being indirectly a salute to the Crown through the individual holding the Queen's authority. The Sovereign is paid the highest compliment, the Royal Salute. Because of their link with the Sovereign, the following are also paid some form of compliment:

- a. Members of the Royal Family.
- b. Governors and Ministers to whom the Sovereign delegates authority.
- c. Formed bodies of troops on the Sovereign's business.
- d. All Colours and Standards of the Royal Air Force and their equivalent in the Royal Navy, Royal Marines and Army.
- e. All Officers, as holders of the Sovereign's commission.

2. In origin, the salute with the hand, the Present Arms, and the salute with the sword were methods by which the person paying the compliment could show the person to whom that compliment was paid that no offence was meant. They are all gestures symbolic of loyalty and trust. Saluting represents the fundamental values of the Royal Air Force and it is the responsibility of all personnel to ensure that it is carried out correctly.

3. Personnel are to salute with the right hand unless physically unable to do so, in which case they are to salute with the left hand.

OCCASIONS FOR SALUTING

SALUTING BY NON-COMMISSIONED PERSONNEL

4. Personnel are to salute commissioned officers of the Royal Air Force, the Royal Navy, the Royal Marines, the Army, Commonwealth and Foreign Services at all times, and at any time when they recognise officers who are dressed in plain clothes. A list of comparative ranks of the 3 services is contained in Annex A.

5. An individual is to salute 3 paces before passing an officer, at the same time turning the head smartly in the direction of the officer. The salute is to be finished on the third pace after passing the officer, by smartly lowering the hand to the side and turning the head to the front.

6. When the individual is not wearing head-dress or is carrying anything other than a weapon, which prevents saluting, the head is to be turned smartly towards the officer being passed. When stationary the individual is to stand to attention as the officer passes.

7. A non-commissioned person when approaching to address an officer is to halt 2 paces from the officer, salute and then address the officer. Personnel take their leave by saluting again before turning to withdraw. No backward step is taken before saluting.

8. On entering a room personnel are to salute entitled officers as usual; they are also to salute before leaving the room. Personnel are to remain standing until given permission to sit by the senior person present. Head-dress is not to be removed until permission is given. However, if the senior person has already uncovered it is appropriate for male personnel to remove their head-dress when permitted to sit. If the senior person remains covered, then all present are to follow suit. Head-dress is to be replaced on rising to leave.

9. An individual carrying a weapon and approaching to address an officer is to halt 2 paces from the officer before saluting with the weapon in accordance with the procedures detailed in Part 1 Chp 5 Lesson 19. Before turning to withdraw the individual is to take leave by saluting for a second time. No backward step is taken before saluting.

10. A stationary individual, on seeing an officer approaching is to stand at Attention, face the officer and salute when the officer is 3 paces away. The salute is to finish and the hand returned to the side after a pause equal to 5 paces. When personnel are sitting or standing together, the senior person present is to stand facing the officer and call the whole party to Attention before saluting.

11. An individual standing with a weapon is to turn towards an officer and salute as detailed in para 9. The actions to be taken when an individual carrying a weapon is passing an officer are detailed in Part 1 Chp 5 Lesson 21.

12. Personnel in a group already being addressed by an officer or NCO are not to take individual action to salute another officer; the responsibility lies with the senior person present who will give orders as appropriate.

13. When a number of personnel are walking together as individuals, they are all to salute when passing an officer; however, when they are being marched in a party it is the responsibility of the senior person to give orders as appropriate.

SENTRIES

14. Instructions on saluting by sentries are given in Part 3.

CADETS

15. Cadets are subject to the same regulations for saluting as airmen.

SALUTING BY OFFICERS

16. Officers using the salute to pay compliments are to salute in the same way as airmen. Officers are to return all salutes made to them.

17. Officers below the rank of squadron leader are to salute officers of and above that rank. Officers of the rank squadron leader and above are to salute their superiors in rank. Officers of all ranks are to salute their superiors before addressing them formally whilst on duty (eg on a parade). There is no regulation or custom which calls upon an officer to salute an officer of junior rank, such as when entering or leaving an office; however, it is common courtesy for an officer to salute when entering or leaving the office of another officer of equal rank.

18. Officers are to salute those officers of the Royal Navy, the Royal Marines, the Army, Commonwealth and Foreign Services who would be saluted by officers of corresponding rank in those Services.

19. When a number of officers are together it is the responsibility of the senior officer present to return a salute. If the senior officer fails to see the salute it is the duty of the next senior officer in the party to acknowledge it.

20. Officers who are on parade with armed men are to salute with the hand, or with swords if already drawn. In either case officers are to time their movements to start and finish with the respective movements of the armed personnel.

OFFICERS IN ATTENDANCE

21. Officers in staff attendance are not to salute when a national anthem, royal or general salute is played for the VIP or other officer upon whom they are in attendance.

WEARING PLAIN CLOTHES

22. When wearing plain-clothes personnel are to pay and return compliments by raising the hat. If not wearing head-dress personnel should pay compliments as laid down in para 6.

ROYAL AIR FORCE ENSIGN

23. On occasions when the Royal Air Force Ensign is being hoisted or lowered at a Royal Air Force establishment all ranks within view of the ensign or within hearing of the Alert call (whistle) are to face the flagstaff and stand to attention, officers only are to salute. These general rules are to be applied by the Air Training Corps in relation to their Corps' ensign.

COLOURS AND STANDARDS

24. The colours and standards of all Services are entitled to the highest compliments. Full details of compliments to be paid in respect of colours and standards are given in Part 2 Chp 12. The basic rules to follow are:

- a. Formed bodies will Present Arms, or if on the march and passing stationary colours or standards will give: **“EYES RIGHT/LEFT”**.
- b. Individuals and groups of personnel who are not formed up for parade, will halt, face passing colours or standards and salute, or if passing will salute to the right/left.
- c. A cased colour or standard is not saluted; however, the bearer is to be accorded compliments as appropriate.

BANNERS

25. These general rules are to be applied by the Air Training Corps in relation to their Corps' banner.

GUARD SALUTES

26. Personnel are to stand to Attention when a guard salute is being played.

NATIONAL ANTHEMS

27. When the National Anthem or a foreign national anthem is played formally, compliments are paid as follows:

- a. **When on Parade in an Organised Party.** If on the move, parties should be halted. All ranks will be at Attention, but only officers and warrant officers salute. NCOs will only salute if they are in charge of an organised party.
- b. **When not on Parade but in Uniform.** All ranks will stand to Attention facing the required direction and, if wearing uniform head-dress, salute.
- c. **When not on Parade and in Plain-Clothes.** All ranks will stand to Attention. Men wearing head-dress are to remove it; women do not.
- d. **Officers with Drawn Swords.** They will stand at the Carry.
- e. **Sentries.** They will Slope Arms.
- f. **When in a Building.** Individuals are to stand to Attention and do not salute unless otherwise ordered.

SALUTING BY OFFICERS IN COMMAND

28. An officer commanding an armed party is to return the salute of an NCO IC of an unarmed party, but is not to call his armed party to Attention.
29. When in command of either an armed or unarmed party officers are to salute superiors under the usual rules.

UNARMED PARTY

30. Unarmed parties passing each other are to be called to Attention and the officer or NCO IC then orders the Eyes Left/Right if appropriate.

PARTIES ON THE MARCH

31. The commander in charge of a party on the march is to pay compliments by giving the command: **“EYES RIGHT/LEFT”** and is to salute at the same time. These compliments are also to be paid when the party passes an armed sentry. If the sentry is unarmed, no compliments are to be paid.

COMPLIMENTS BY UNITS

32. A unit is to be ordered to Attention by its commander when passing or being passed by:
- a. Members of the Royal Family.
 - b. Armed parties on the march and commanded by an officer.
 - c. Guards, escorts etc.
 - d. Officers of air rank and those of equivalent rank in the other 2 Services (see Annex A).

33. When persons who are entitled to a salute approach from the rear, unit compliments are not to be given, but officers are to salute. This procedure does not apply to members of the Royal Family for whom units are to be ordered to stand at Attention and pay the usual compliments.

COMPLIMENTS TO MEMBERS OF THE ROYAL FAMILY

34. A unit on the march, meeting a Sovereign when accompanied by an escort on an official or state occasion, is to be halted and turned towards them and when under arms is to be ordered to present arms.
35. A unit on the march is not to halt and present arms to a Sovereign when the personage is travelling in a motor car, unless previous warning has been given of the approach. Instead, the compliments are to be given, with arms carried at the slope, by the Eyes Left/Right. Compliments to other entitled persons are to be given in a similar manner.

VEHICLES

36. The rider of a cycle or driver of a vehicle is not to salute when the vehicle is in motion. When stationary, the driver is to salute by turning the head smartly towards the officer passing. The hands are always to remain in the steering position.
37. Personnel, when seated in a vehicle, are to sit to Attention; they are to look straight to their front.
38. Officers, when seated in a vehicle are, if possible, to pay compliments with the hand otherwise, if driving, they are to follow the procedure in para 38.
39. Personnel are to salute the entitled occupant of a vehicle flying a distinguishing flag, showing starplates or in any case when they recognise the occupant as being entitled to a salute.

SHIPS

40. Royal Air Force personnel are to conform to Royal Navy customs on saluting in ships.
41. **Boarding or leaving Ship.** When boarding or leaving any of HM ships or a foreign warship, it is naval custom for all personnel to salute individually as they board or leave. In this case it is also custom for personnel to salute the ship with the hand, in the usual fashion, when bareheaded or in plain clothes.
42. **Quarterdeck.** When stepping onto or off the quarterdeck it is naval custom to salute each time.

FUNERALS

43. Personnel are to salute the coffin when passing a funeral cortege.

WAR MEMORIALS

44. It has always been customary for Service personnel to salute as they passed the Cenotaph in Whitehall. This tradition is embodied in orders to this effect, issued by the General Officer Commanding London District. Royal Air Force personnel are to conform to this custom.
45. Personnel are to conform to local custom with regards to courtesy salutes at ceremonies at other memorials. The general rule is that uniformed officers and warrant officers are to salute when the Last Post is played, but not during the Reveille. Other ranks are to stand to Attention throughout.

SERVICE OFFICERS' RANKS

(Reference QRJ126)

NATO CODE	RN	MILITARY including RM and QARANC	ROYAL AIR FORCE including PMRAFNS
OF-10	Admiral of the Fleet	Field Marshal	Marshal of the Royal Air Force
OF-9	Admiral	General	Air Chief Marshal
OF-8	Vice-Admiral	Lieutenant-General	Air Marshal
OF-7	Rear Admiral (2)	Major-General (3)	Air Vice-Marshal
OF-6	Commodore	Brigadier	Air Commodore (4)
OF-5	Captain	Colonel	Group Captain
OF-4	Commander	Lieutenant-Colonel	Wing Commander
OF-3	Lieutenant-Commander	Major(5)	Squadron Leader
OF-2	Lieutenant	Captain	Flight Lieutenant
OF-1	Sub-Lieutenant(6)	Lieutenant	Flying Officer
	Midshipman (6)	Second Lieutenant	Pilot Officer

Notes:

- (1) The first five senior ranks in all these Services are given NATO star ratings (from 5 to 1 in descending order) to assist in identifying rank status.
- (2) This naval rank and those above are known as flag ranks.
- (3) This military rank and those above are known as general ranks.
- (4) This air force rank and those above are known as air ranks.
- (5) This military rank is known as the field rank.
- (6) This rank is junior to its military and air force equivalents.

PART 2 - CHAPTER 2

CHEERING

1. On occasions, it is appropriate for three cheers to be given during a parade or assembly for a member of the Royal Family. This may be in the course of the presentation of a Queen's Colour or in the course of a visit to a unit.
2. The parade commander (or if not a parade, the senior officer present of the unit) is to ensure that personnel are standing to Attention (when armed, with arms at the Shoulder). The parade commander gives the command:

“(UNIT) WILL REMOVE HEAD-DRESS – REMOVE”

whereupon all male personnel are, with the left hand, to grasp the top of the head-dress above the badge. Female personnel do not remove head-dress and are therefore to remain still during the removal and replacement of head-dress.

3. The commander is to follow with the command:

“HEAD-DRESS”

whereupon the hat is to be removed and brought down to a position in front of the left breast pocket.

4. The parade commander then orders:

“THREE CHEERS FOR .. (PERSONAGE)”

and then leads the cheers in the usual fashion. With each cheer, all personnel are to raise the head-dress to the full extent of the left arm and lower again. Female personnel are similarly to raise the left arm for each cheer.

5. The parade commander then orders:

“UNIT WILL REPLACE HEAD-DRESS – REPLACE”

whereupon personnel are to replace and adjust the hat quickly with the left hand, coming to rest with the hand still, above the badge (as for para 2).

6. The parade commander, when satisfied that personnel are ready, gives the order:

“HEAD-DRESS”

whereupon all personnel resume the position of Attention.

PART 2 - CHAPTER 3

SQUAD DRILL

DIRECTING FLANK

1. When a squad moves off, the Directing Flank is to be indicated in the command eg:

“BY THE LEFT/RIGHT, QUICK MARCH”.

2. When a squad is moving diagonally, the Directing Flank is to be that towards which the squad is inclined.
3. When a squad is marching in line by a flank and it is intended to change the direction to the opposite flank, the new flank of direction is to be indicated (before the actual command to change direction) by the command:

“BY THE RIGHT”.

The Directing Flank is to be that on which the change of direction is to be made; the forward movement on the completion of the change is to be directed by that flank unless otherwise ordered.

4. When a squad or unit is marching on a road the flank directed is usually that of the offside, according to the local rule of the road.
5. When a squad is required to wheel, the pivot flank is to be the Directing Flank during the wheeling movement. On completion of the wheel, the squad is to revert, without further orders, to marching by the original flank.

MOVING WITH ARMS

6. When carrying rifles a squad is to be brought to the Slope Arms position before marching more than five paces in either Quick or Slow Time.
7. The rifle is to be carried at the Shoulder when carrying out moves to Open or Close Order, moving sideways, forwards or backwards for given numbers of paces or for forming two or three ranks. Dressing is usually to be carried out from the Shoulder Arms position; in exceptional circumstances it may be carried out with the rifle in the Slope Arms position.

SIZING A SQUAD

8. When sizing a squad, the tallest person of the squad is to be placed as a marker in front of the right-hand person.
9. On the command:

**“TALLEST ON THE RIGHT, SHORTEST ON THE LEFT, IN SINGLE RANK –
SIZE”**

personnel, with the exception of the marker, are to right incline, break ranks and fall in on the left of the marker in a single rank, according to size, and dress off shoulder to shoulder. Individuals can most easily access their correct position by comparing their shoulder height with the person next to them. The NCO IC can make further minor adjustments before the next order is given.

10. Then, on the command:

“SQUAD FROM THE RIGHT NUMBER”

all personnel, except the right marker, are to turn their head and eyes smartly to the right. At the same time the right marker is to start the numbering by calling out:

“ONE”.

This is to be followed immediately by the next person on the marker’s left turning the head to the front and at the same time calling out:

“TWO”

and so on, until all personnel are numbered. Numbering is sometimes necessary while personnel are in three ranks. In this case the procedure is the same, the personnel in each rank taking on the number of the person calling out in the front rank for the file as a whole. Only personnel in the front rank are to turn their heads and call out the numbers; the rest pay attention to hear their numbers called.

11. This is followed by the command:

“ODD NUMBERS, TWO PACES FORWARD, MARCH”

whereupon the odd numbered personnel take the paces forward, while even numbers stand fast. On the command:

“NUMBER 1 STAND FAST, RANKS RIGHT AND LEFT TURN”

personnel of the front rank (odd numbers), except No 1, are to turn to the right and those of the rear rank (even numbers) are to turn to the left.

12. On the command:

“FORM SQUAD, QUICK MARCH”

personnel, except No 1, who stands fast, are to step off in the direction they are facing. The rear rank is to wheel to the right and follow the last person of the front rank. Personnel are to halt as follows:

- a. No 3 is to halt one pace to the rear of No 1.
- b. No 5 is to halt one pace to the rear of No 3 (to form the first file of threes).
- c. No 7 halts to the left of No 1.
- d. Those following continue to form files of three until all are assembled.

On coming to a halt at their positions, each individual is to pause and then turn to face the front, taking up the dressing by the right and adopting the position of Attention.

FORMING TWO RANKS FROM THREE

13. Before forming two ranks from three ranks remember to number off the centre rank.
On the command:

“SQUAD, FORM TWO RANKS”

- a. Odd numbers of the centre rank are to take a pace to the left with the left foot, a pace forward with the right foot, bend the left knee and bring the left foot to the right to assume the position of Attention, standing in the front rank.
- b. At the same time the even numbers of the centre rank are to take a pace to the left with the left foot, a pace to the rear with the right foot, bend the left knee and bring the left foot to the right to assume the position of Attention, standing in the rear rank.

On completion of the movement, the squad is to be dressed (usually) without intervals.

RETURNING TO THREE RANKS FROM TWO

14. On the command:

“SQUAD, FORM THREE RANKS”

- a. The odd numbers of the original centre rank are to take a pace to the rear with the left foot, a pace to the right with the right foot, bend the left knee and bring the left foot to the right to resume the position of Attention in the centre rank.
- b. At the same time, the even numbers of the original centre rank are to take a pace forward with the left foot, a pace to the right with the right foot, bend the left knee and bring the left foot to the right to resume the position of Attention in the centre rank.

On completion of the movement the squad is to be dressed.

MOVEMENT OF A SQUAD IN LINE

15. On the command:

“BY THE LEFT/RIGHT, QUICK/SLOW MARCH”

the squad is to step off. The front person of the file on the directing flank ordered, is to select a point ahead so that by marching towards the point, direction is maintained.

16. The personnel of each rank, with the exception of the directing file, are (without turning the head) to glance occasionally to the directing flank in order to maintain their dressing. Personnel of the centre and rear ranks are to maintain their correct covering and distance from the rank in front.

17. A blank file consisting of one person is at all times to be with the leading rank. Thus, when a squad is turned about on the march, the single person of the blank file on hearing the cautionary command: **“ABOUT”** is to mark time for two paces, thus gaining the new correct position before the turn is completed.

18. Similarly, when the squad is turned about at the Halt the single person is without further orders to take two paces forward after turning about.

19. When a squad is required to move to the rear for a short distance before resuming the original direction, the following commands are to be given:

“SQUAD WILL RETIRE, ABOUT TURN”

and after completion:

“SQUAD WILL ADVANCE, ABOUT TURN”.

The ranks in these instances are not changed and consequently the blank file is not adjusted.

MOVEMENT OF A SQUAD IN COLUMN OF THREES

20. When a squad is required to move from one point of assembly to another, they are to march in column of threes. When there is a blank file consisting of one person this person is to be on the directing flank.

INCLINED TURNS

21. On the command:

“SQUAD LEFT/RIGHT INCLINE”

the squad turns in the direction ordered. While marching, formation and direction are maintained as described in para 16. When the squad is required to face/move in the original direction, a similar order is given.

TURNING TO A FLANK FROM LINE (WHEN HALTED)

22. To turn a squad to a flank, the order is to be given:

“MOVE TO THE LEFT/RIGHT, LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.

FORMING LINE FROM THREES FACING A FLANK (WHEN HALTED)

23. To form Line from threes, the order is to be given:

“INTO LINE, LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.

TURNING TO A FLANK FROM LINE (WHEN MARCHING)

24. To turn to a flank when marching, the order is to be given:

“MOVE TO THE LEFT/RIGHT, LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.

FORMING LINE FROM THREES (WHEN MARCHING)

25. To Form Line when marching, the order is to be given:

“INTO LINE, LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.

CHANGING DIRECTION (THE WHEEL)

26. If a change of direction is required the following command is given:

“LEFT/RIGHT WHEEL”

(in this case only, the executive word: **“WHEEL”** is to be drawn out in length). The Left/Right hand person of the leading line of threes, on the inside of the turn is to move round on the arc of a circle radius 4 ft (120 cms) and step short 1 ft (30 cms) for 6 paces to enable the other 2 persons of the line to wheel in unison.

27. When a squad is ordered to halt or mark time and only part of it has completed a wheel, the command is to be given:

“REAR FILES COVER”

whereupon those lines of threes that have not yet wheeled are to cover those that have, by moving by the shortest route.

28. If a squad is required to wheel at an angle less than a complete right or left wheel, the command given when the leading line of threes is facing in the required direction is:

“FOR – WARD”.

FORMING TWO FILES FROM THREE (IN COLUMN)

29. On the command:

“FORM TWO FILES”

- a. The odd numbered personnel of the centre rank are to disengage to the left rear and take up their positions behind their respective front rank numbers.
- b. At the same time the even numbered personnel of the centre rank are to disengage themselves to the right rear and take up their positions behind their respective rear rank numbers. Personnel are then to adjust their distances in succession from front to rear without further orders.

FORMING SINGLE FILE FROM TWO (IN COLUMN)

30. On the command:

“FORM SINGLE FILE”

personnel of the right file are to take up positions behind the personnel immediately on their left. Personnel are then to adjust their distances in succession from front to rear without further orders.

RETURNING TO TWO FILES FROM SINGLE

31. On the command:

“FORM TWO FILES”

the personnel of the original right hand file are to return to their positions on the right of the number immediately in front of them. During this movement the leading person (of the left file) is to step short. The remainder are then to correct their distance and dressing and are then to step short. When the squad is reformed, the order is to be given:

“QUICK MARCH”.

RETURNING TO THREE FILES FROM TWO

32. On the command:

“FORM THREE FILES”

- a. The odd numbered personnel of the original centre file are to disengage to their right front.
- b. The even numbered personnel of the original centre file are to disengage to their left front and return to their positions abreast of their respective left and right numbers.
- c. During this movement, the leading persons of the left and right files are to step short. The remainder are to correct their distance and dressing and are then to step short. When the squad is reformed, the order is to be given:

“QUICK MARCH”.

Notes Forming Files:

1. References above to the left, centre and right files refer to the original front, centre and rear ranks of the squad whilst in line.
2. The movements detailed above are, for simplicity, given assuming the squad is moving in column of threes to the right. It follows, therefore, that if the squad is moving to the left, the moves by personnel changing file are to be different.

FALLING OUT

33. On the command:

“SQUAD FALL OUT”

personnel are to proceed as described in Part 1 Chp 2.

DISMISSING (WITHOUT ARMS)

34. On the command:

“SQUAD DISMISS”

personnel are to proceed as described in Part 1 Chp 2.

35. With an officer present:

- a. If an officer gives the order to Dismiss, all personnel, after having inclined to the right, are to pause, then salute, pause again on completion of the salute, then leave the parade ground. The officer is to return the salute.
- b. If the senior rank taking the parade obtains permission for dismissal, the command given is:

“OFFICER ON PARADE, DISMISS”.

DISMISSING (WITH ARMS)

36. Armed personnel are first to be brought to the Slope position before being ordered to dismiss when an officer is on parade.

PART 2 - CHAPTER 4

FLIGHT DRILL

FORMATIONS

1. A flight may be formed up as follows:
 - a. In Line (see Annex A).
 - b. In Column of Route (see Annex B).
 - c. In Column of Threes.

APPOINTMENTS

2. The positions of officers and NCOs appointed to executive parade appointments and of officers and NCOs appointed to supernumerary positions are shown at the Appendices to Annexes A and B. Except where specially detailed, officers in front and supernumeraries in the rear move together with the front and rear ranks respectively. Corporals not required as markers or guides are to be in the ranks. Similarly, on formal parades it may be necessary for SNCOs to be in the ranks. In these circumstance NCOs are to carry the same arms as other personnel.

PARADE AND INSPECTION

3. On assembling a flight for parade the NCO IC of the flight is to give the command:

“RIGHT MARKER”

whereupon the detailed right marker is to come to Attention, Slope Arms and march out in Quick Time, halt facing the NCO IC at a distance of three paces, Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease. The NCO IC is then to give the order:

“ON PARADE”

whereupon the marker and personnel waiting at the side of the parade ground, all come to Attention, Slope Arms, and move out individually in Quick Time and form up on the left of the marker in three ranks. After halting they are to pause, Shoulder Arms, take up their dressing from the right and Stand At Ease to await further orders.

4. The NCO IC is then to call the roll. In response, personnel are to come momentarily to Attention and answer only by calling out the NCO's rank in acknowledgement. Similarly, if a nominal roll is called by an officer or warrant officer, or if either are present, individuals are to answer: “Sir/Ma'am”.

5. The NCO IC is then to prepare the flight for inspection by giving the commands:

**“FLIGHT SHUN
OPEN ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
FLIGHT WILL FIX BAYONETS
FIX BAYONETS
SHUN”**

6. On completion of this preparation the NCO IC awaits the arrival of the flight commander. The flight commander is to approach from the front of the flight and halt three paces in front of the NCO IC. When the flight commander has halted, the NCO IC is to salute and make this report:

**“FLIGHT PRESENT (OR OTHERWISE) AND READY FOR INSPECTION
SIR/MA’AM”.**

7. **Supernumerary Officers.** While the flight is being prepared for inspection, the supernumerary officers are to march up and down in pairs on the right flank of the parade area. When the NCO IC calls the flight to Attention prior to handing over to the flight commander, the supernumerary officers are to prepare to fall in; they are to form up in line, facing the flight at about 20 paces from it, and Stand At Ease.

8. **NCO IC Flight.** When the NCO IC has handed over the flight, and having been ordered to fall in, the NCO is to salute, turn left and march to parade position at the rear of the flight.

9. **Officers Fall In.** The flight commander then gives the order:

“FALL IN THE OFFICERS”

whereupon the officers are to fall in (see Part 1 Chp 6 Lesson 1) to the positions shown at Annex A.

INSPECTION

10. The flight commander is then to inspect the airmen. For the inspection, the NCO IC is to fall out from position and accompany the flight commander. During the inspection the flight commander may instruct the NCO IC to stand the other two ranks At Ease. In this case, the NCO IC is to call to Attention each next rank for inspection as the flight commander is finishing the inspection of the previous rank. The NCO IC is then to Stand At Ease the rank that has just been inspected. As the flight commander finishes inspecting the rear rank, the NCO IC brings the whole flight to Attention before saluting and returning to parade position at the rear of the flight.

DRESSING

11. If it is necessary for the flight commander to correct dressing, it is to be carried out with arms at the Shoulder.

12. **NCO IC Flight.** When the order for the Left/Right Dress is given the NCO IC flight, alone, is to fall out from position and supervise the prompt adjustment of flight dressing from the directed flank. When satisfied the report given is:

“FLIGHT STEADY”

whereupon the flight commander gives the order for the Eyes Front and the NCO IC returns to parade position at the rear of the flight.

13. **Dressing on the March.** When the flight is marching, the marker or guide on the directing flank is responsible for maintaining direction.

CHANGING RANKS

14. When ranks are changed, the command is given:

“FLIGHT, ABOUT TURN”.

All appointments are to turn with the flight and then after a pause:

- a. The flight commander is to turn to the right.
- b. The supernumeraries are to turn to their left.

All then march round the flight and gain their new positions where they are to halt individually, pause and turn to face the front. The about-turn and stepping off are carried out in unison; the halt and turning to face the front are carried out individually. Attempts to coordinate the latter movements lead to artificial posturing and signals which are unnecessary and are not to be encouraged.

15. When a flight is required only to retire to the rear for a short distance before resuming the original direction, appointments turn about with the ranks, but retain their positions.

COMPLIMENTS

16. **Stationary.** A flight required to pay compliments is to be given the orders:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT, SLOPE ARMS
GENERAL SALUTE, PRESENT ARMS
SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The flight commander is to salute, with the hand or sword as appropriate, so that the final movements in each case coincide with the final movement of the rifles.

17. **On the March.** Similarly a flight required to pay compliments on the march is to be given orders:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT, EYES LEFT/RIGHT
EYES FRONT”.**

The flight commander is to salute, with the hand or sword as appropriate, so that the final movements coincide with the movement of the heads of the flight as a whole.

DISMISSING

18. **Officers Fall Out.** When a flight is to be dismissed, the flight commander is to give the orders:

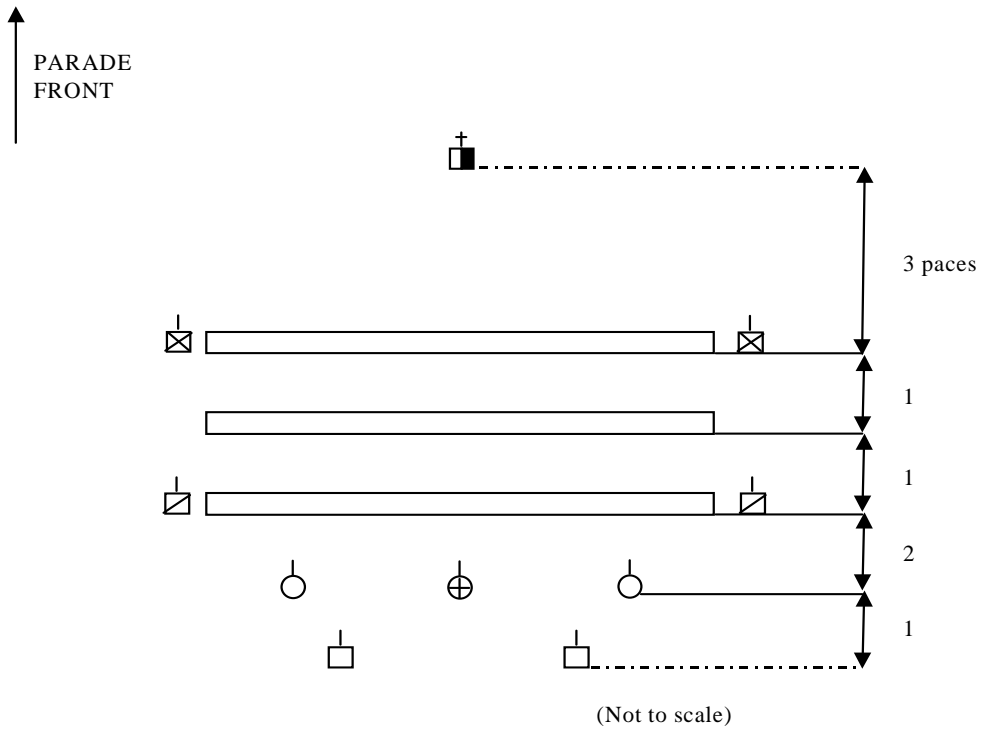
**“FLIGHT SHUN
FALL OUT THE OFFICERS”.**

The supernumerary officers are to fall out (see Part 1 Chp 6 Lesson 1). The flight commander then Returns Swords and calls for, and hands over to, the NCO IC before leaving the parade area accompanied by the other officers. The NCO IC orders the flight to unfix bayonets before marching off to the place of dismissal.

Annexes:

- A. Flight in Line.
- B. Flight in Column of Route.

FLIGHT IN LINE



LEGEND	
■†	Flight Commander
□	Supernumerary Officer
⊕	NCO IC Flight
○	Supernumerary NCO
⊗	Marker
□/	Guide

Appendix 1. Flight In Line - Positions of Executives and Supernumeraries.

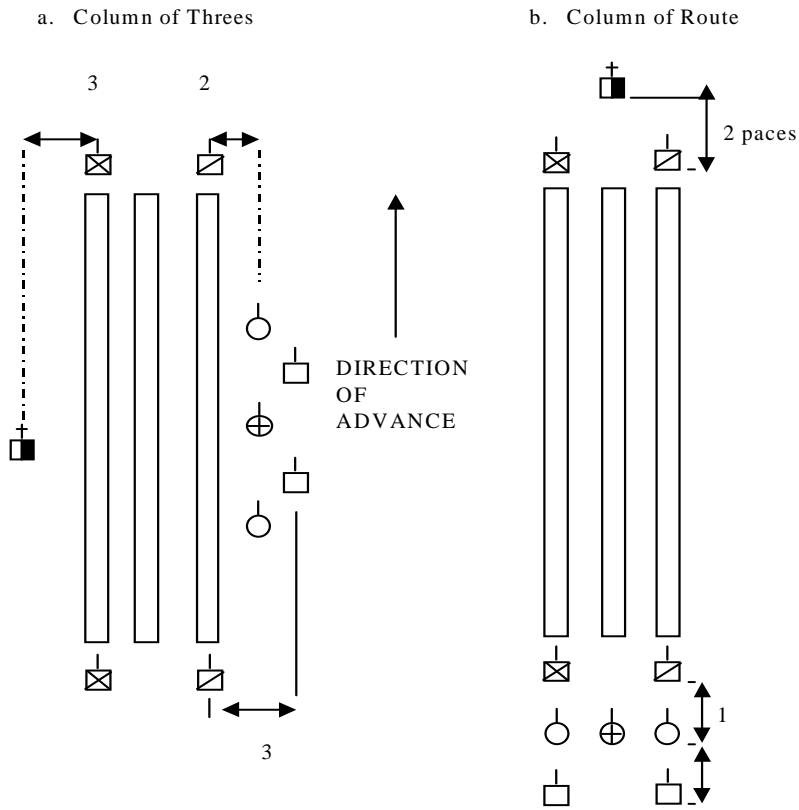
FLIGHT IN LINE - POSITION OF EXECUTIVES AND SUPERNUMERARIES

Appointment (a)	Position (b)
1. Flight Commander	3 paces in front of the centre of the flight.
2. Supernumerary Officers	Equally spaced, 3 paces to the rear of the rear rank.
3. NCO IC of the Flight	2 paces to the rear of the centre of the rear rank.
4. Supernumerary NCOs	Equally spaced, 2 paces to the rear of the rear rank (starting from the right).
5. Markers	One on each flank of the front rank.
6. Guides	One on each flank of the rear rank.

Notes:

1. While it is not normal to have supernumerary warrant officers on parade, such warrant officers are to be in the supernumerary NCOs rank.
2. These positions are also held when the flight has turned to form Column of Threes.

FLIGHT IN COLUMN



(Not to scale)

LEGEND	
	Flight Commander
	Supernumerary Officer
	NCO IC Flight
	Supernumerary NCO
	Marker
	Guide

Appendix 1. Flight in Column - Positions of Executives and Supernumeraries.

**FLIGHT IN COLUMN OF ROUTE - POSITION OF EXECUTIVES AND
SUPERNUMERARIES**

Appointment (a)	Position (b)
1. Flight Commander	3 paces in front of the centre of the flight.
2. Supernumerary Officers	In lines of threes, one pace in the rear of the supernumerary NCOs.
3. NCO IC of the Flight and Supernumerary NCOs	In lines of threes, one pace in the rear of the flight, each line of three one pace in the rear of the one before.
4. Markers and Guides	In their same relative positions as for Flight in Line.

Note: While it is not normal to have supernumerary warrant officers on parade, such warrant officers are to form lines to the rear of the supernumerary NCOs while in Column of Route.

PART 2 - CHAPTER 5

SQUADRON DRILL

FORMATIONS

1. A squadron may consist of two or more flights. The instructions in this Chapter are for such a squadron, but they also apply to a squadron consisting of any other number of flights.
2. A squadron may be formed up in:
 - a. **Column of Flights.** Flights on parallel and successive lines at a distance from one another equal to their frontage (see Annex A). If flights are at 14 paces distance, the squadron is said to be in Close Column of Flights.
 - b. **Line.** Flights on one alignment at 6 paces interval (see Annex B).
 - c. **Column of Route (or Threes).** Flights in Column of Route (or Threes) at 6 paces distance between flights (see Annex C).
3. Unless otherwise ordered, a squadron is to be formed up in Close Column of Flights and is to dress by the right flank.

APPOINTMENTS

4. When a squadron is formed up, the positions of executives and supernumeraries are to be as shown in the Annexes.
5. The squadron commander is to give the executive commands for movements that are to be carried out simultaneously by flights.

DRESSING

6. If it is necessary for the squadron commander or adjutant to correct dressing, it is normally to be done with arms at the Shoulder.
7. **Executives.** The squadron adjutant and flight commanders are to turn about to face the ranks during the dressing adjustment. When the Eyes Front is given, they are to turn about to the front.
8. **Squadron Warrant Officer.** When the order for the Left/Right Dress is given, only the squadron warrant officer is to fall out from his position and supervise the prompt adjustment of flights' dressing from the directed flank. When satisfied, the squadron warrant officer is to give the report:

“SQUADRON STEADY”

whereupon the squadron commander gives the order for the Eyes Front and the squadron warrant officer returns to his parade position.

9. **In Column of Flights.** Each flight is to dress on the markers and guides on the flank of direction; markers and guides cover off those in front.

10. **In Line.** Each flight is to dress on the marker and guide of the flight furthest on the flank of direction.

11. **Dressing on the March.** When the squadron is marching, the marker and guide on the directing flank are responsible for maintaining direction. The markers and guides in the rear flights are to be responsible for the covering and correct distancing of their flights.

THE PARADE, TELLING OFF AND INSPECTION

12. Prior to parading, the squadron commander will issue any instructions to the adjutant about the parade (sizing, equalizing numbers in flights etc). These requirements will be actioned through the warrant officer at the forming up point.

13. The squadron warrant officer is to call:

“MARKERS”

whereupon the right marker of each flight is to march, at the Slope, onto the squadron parade ground. They are to halt individually, in line, facing the warrant officer at 3 paces distance, Shoulder Arms, and Stand At Ease. The marker of No 1 Flight is to be on the right and the remainder in their correct sequence to the left.

14. The warrant officer is to give the commands:

“MARKERS SHOULDER ARMS SHUN NUMBER”

whereupon the markers (except the right hand one) turn their head and eyes to the right and call out in sequence from the right (see Part 2 Chp 3 para 10), turning head and eyes to the front as they call.

15. The warrant officer then orders: **“SLOPE ARMS”**.

16. The warrant officer then orders either:

a. For Squadron in Column of Flights:

“NUMBER 1 STAND FAST-REMAINDER, ABOUT TURN”.

b. For Squadron in Line:

“NUMBER 1 STAND FAST, REMAINDER, LEFT TURN”.

Then, stating the number of paces distance required between markers, the warrant officer is to give the command:

“TO (NUMBER) PACES INTERVALS, QUICK MARCH”

whereupon the markers are to step off together for the number of paces ordered. They achieve this by each marker commencing the interval count as the marker behind halts. As they reach their positions they are to halt and turn individually to face the parade front. When all markers are in position, facing the front, they are to be covered off by the warrant officer who is then to give the command:

“MARKERS SHOULDER ARMS”.

While the warrant officer is preparing the parade ground the adjutant is to march across the head of the parade ground. When turning about the adjutant is always to turn inwards towards the parade area. When the squadron warrant officer is covering off the markers, the adjutant is to take this as the sign to take over, and is to march onto the parade ground to a position three paces in front of the warrant officer.

17. When the adjutant is in position the warrant officer is to salute and report that the markers have been positioned. The adjutant is to instruct the warrant officer to stand the markers At Ease; whereupon the warrant officer salutes in acknowledgement, turns about, carries out the instruction, turns left and marches to a position approximately 10 paces beyond the first marker (to observe the marching on). The warrant officer, in accordance with custom, remains freelance to supervise the marching on and dressing.

18. The adjutant orders the March On, whereupon the markers come to Attention to await the arrival of their respective flights.

19. Each flight is to be marched on to its marker from the reverse flank by the flight commander. When the flight arrives on its alignment, the flight guide (marching on the directed flank of the flight) is to lead the flight directly on to its squadron marker. At approximately 5 paces from the halt the guide is to move quickly across the path of the following ranks. This is in order to take up parade position ahead of the rear rank and to leave space for the marker in the front rank.

20. The flight commanders halt their flights on their respective markers. Each flight commander then orders the flight to turn to the front, Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease. The markers work with their flights upon the order to Shoulder Arms. The flight commander then turns about and Stands At Ease.

21. When all flights are in position, the adjutant is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON SHUN
OPEN ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS”.**

When the squadron is reported steady by the squadron warrant officer, the adjutant orders:

**“EYES FRONT
SQUADRON WILL FIX BAYONET
FIX BAYONETS
SHUN”.**

When the squadron commander has instructed that an inspection is not to be carried out, the commands to Open Order and Fix Bayonets are to be omitted at this stage.

22. If officers have not marched on with flights, the adjutant then gives the orders:

“FALL IN THE OFFICERS”

whereupon officers are to fall in (see Part 1 Chp 6 Lesson 1). The adjutant is to Draw Swords as the officers are marching on, after having first acknowledged their salutes. If bayonets are not already fixed, officers are not to Draw Swords as they fall in but are to do so if/when Fix Bayonets is subsequently ordered. The officers will Draw Swords on the executive word of command: **“BAYONETS”**. Followed by:

“TELL OFF BY FLIGHTS”

whereupon the flight commanders are to call out the number of their flights in sequence from front to rear (in (Close) Column of Flights) or from right to left (in Line of Flights) as follows:

**“NUMBER 1 FLIGHT
NUMBER 2
NUMBER 3 FLIGHT”.**

Only the first and last (of any number of) flight commanders finish with the word “Flight”. The numbers are parade numbers in succession from No 1. Flights retain these numbers throughout the parade.

23. The adjutant is then to give the commands:

**“NUMBERS 1 AND 3 FLIGHTS STAND AT EASE
NUMBER 2 FLIGHT STAND AT EASE”.**

The adjutant then turns about, and Stands At Ease to await the approach of the squadron commander.

24. When the squadron commander approaches, the adjutant is to come to Attention and give the command:

“SQUADRON SHUN”.

25. The squadron commander is to approach from the front of the squadron and halt 3 paces in front of the adjutant who is to salute and report that the squadron is ready for inspection. The following points are to be noted:

- a. The report is made with arms at the Shoulder.
- b. The report should be concise and not detailed, eg: "Squadron present (or otherwise) and ready for inspection, Sir/Ma'am". The word: "Sir/Ma'am" indicates the end of the report.
- c. If swords are drawn, the squadron commander is to Draw Swords as the adjutant is marching away to parade position after having made the report.

THE INSPECTION

26. When the adjutant has fallen in, the squadron commander may indicate a wish to inspect the squadron by giving the command:

**“NUMBER 1 FLIGHT STAND FAST, REMAINDER STAND AT EASE
STAND EASY”**

whereupon the flight commander of No 1 Flight turns to the right and marches to meet the squadron commander on the right of flight. There, the flight commander faces the squadron commander, salutes, and briefly reports the flight ready for inspection. The squadron adjutant and warrant officer fall out and join the inspection party; they do not salute as they join the inspection party. The NCO IC flight does not accompany the squadron commander's inspection party.

27. The squadron commander proceeds with the inspection accompanied by the flight commander (they walk side by side with the flight commander furthest from the rank being inspected), the squadron adjutant is immediately behind the squadron commander and the squadron warrant officer is behind the flight commander, (see insert diagram at Annex A). The inspection starts from the right of No 1 Flight. When the flight has been inspected the squadron commander will go to No 2 Flight.

28. As the squadron commander is leaving the first flight, No 2 Flight Commander is to give the command:

“NUMBER 2 FLIGHT SHUN”.

The flight commander then turns to meet the squadron commander on the right of the flight.

29. In the meantime the flight commander of the first flight salutes the squadron commander upon departure. The flight commander then returns to parade position, stands the flight At Ease, and Stand Easy (if required), turns to the front and Stands At Ease/Easy. The procedure is carried out by each successive flight until the inspection is over.

30. The squadron commander, adjutant and warrant officer all return to their parade positions (by which time all flights have been stood At Ease/Easy).

ALTERNATIVE PARADE PROCEDURE

31. Because of limitations of parade area, it may sometimes be necessary for the squadron to fall in centrally on parade, rather than march on by flights. In this case the squadron warrant officer places the markers, orders the airmen on parade, checks the parade state, calls the squadron to Attention, reports to the squadron adjutant and hands over. When the squadron warrant officer calls the squadron to Attention prior to handing over to the adjutant, the supernumerary officers are to take this as the sign for their own preparation to fall in; they are to form up in line on the right flank facing their respective flights at about 20 paces from them, and stand At Ease.

32. The adjutant then gives the command:

“SQUADRON STAND AT EASE”.

Parade procedures then continue as detailed from para 21.

GENERAL MOVEMENTS OF SQUADRON DRILL

33. When arms are carried, the squadron is normally to be exercised in squadron drill without fixed bayonets. The squadron commander would therefore first bring the squadron to Attention and then order bayonets to be unfixing. If the squadron commander orders the unfixing of bayonets and officers are still on parade, the officers are to sheath their swords on the executive word of command: **“BAYONETS”**, wait, and then resume the position of Attention with the airmen on the command.

34. In exercising squadron drill, the squadron commander is to be positioned to best advantage to control sub-units.

35. During squadron drill manoeuvres where flights are required to take up new alignments etc, the squadron warrant officer may supervise the movement of markers and guides and hence the dressing of flights being guided by them.

TURNING ABOUT OR RETIRING

36. The entire squadron is to turn about to take up a new direction on the command:

“SQUADRON ABOUT TURN”.

All appointments are to turn with the squadron and then after a pause:

- a. Executives in front of flights are to turn to their right.
- b. Supernumeraries who have been positioned to the rear of flights are to turn to their left.

All then march round the flights and gain their new positions where they are to halt individually, pause and turn to face the front. The turns and stepping off are carried out in

unison; the halt and turning to face front are carried out individually. Attempts to co-ordinate the latter movements lead to artificial posturing and signalling.

MOVEMENT OF A SQUADRON IN COLUMN OF FLIGHTS

37. When a squadron is required to move back a short distance as one entity before resuming the original front, the executives and supernumeraries, after turning about, do not move to gain new positions but remain in their positions relative to each flight. In this case the order given is:

“SQUADRON WILL RETIRE, ABOUT TURN”.

When the squadron is required to resume the original front the order is given:

“SQUADRON WILL ADVANCE, ABOUT TURN”.

38. Other commands and movements for a squadron in Column of Flights are:

a. **Advancing:**

“SQUADRON, BY THE LEFT/RIGHT, QUICK MARCH”.

b. **Moving to a Flank with Flights in Threes.** Executives and supernumeraries keep their relative positions. To move the whole squadron as one entity the following commands are given:

**“SQUADRON MOVE TO THE LEFT/RIGHT, LEFT/RIGHT TURN
BY THE LEFT/RIGHT, QUICK MARCH”.**

The following orders may also be given:

**“FLIGHTS INTO LINE, LEFT/RIGHT TURN
SQUADRON HALT”**

c. **Forming Column of Three (Moving to a Flank):**

**“SQUADRON, MOVE TO THE LEFT/RIGHT IN COLUMN OF THREES,
LEFT/RIGHT TURN”**

whereupon all personnel turn as ordered and then the leading flight commander is to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT, BY THE LEFT/RIGHT, QUICK MARCH”.

The commander of each successive flight is to give the command:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT, LEFT/RIGHT WHEEL
BY THE LEFT/RIGHT, QUICK MARCH”.**

This order has to be given in sufficient time to gain the flight's position in Column of Threes. The flight is to wheel into line with the rear of the preceding flight. A squadron in Column of Flights is normally to move to the right in Column of Threes from the right of the leading flight and is to move to the left from the left of the rear flight. A squadron may however be moved to a flank in Column of Threes in any order of flights specified by the squadron commander.

d. **Forming Column of Route (Moving to a Flank).**

**“SQUADRON
MOVE TO THE LEFT/RIGHT IN COLUMN OF ROUTE
LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.**

After the turn, executives and supernumeraries themselves turn again and take up position as for Column of Route (see Annex C). When these persons are steady in position, the flight commander of the leading flight gives the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT, BY THE LEFT/RIGHT, QUICK MARCH”

followed by each successive flight in turn. When the flight commander leads the flight it is not necessary to order a Wheel.

e. **Forming Line from Column of Flights (Facing the Same Direction).**

To move a squadron from Column of Flights to Line of Flights the following commands are given:

**“SQUADRON, ON THE LEFT, FORM LINE
NUMBER 1 FLIGHT STAND FAST
REMAINDER MOVE TO THE LEFT LEFT TURN”**

whereupon the leading flight is to stand fast and the remaining flights are to turn as ordered:

“BY THE LEFT, QUICK MARCH”.

Each flight is to be led by the left marker and guide by the shortest way to the position where it will be on the same alignment as the stationary flight. When each flight has reached its position in line, the flight commander is to give the command:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT HALT
INTO LINE RIGHT TURN”.**

MOVEMENT OF A SQUADRON IN COLUMN OF ROUTE OR THREES

39. Commands and movements for a squadron in Column of Route or Threes are as follows:

- a. **Halting in Column of Flights.** To halt a squadron marching in Column of Route (or Threes), in Column of Flights, facing a certain direction, the squadron commander gives the order:

**“SQUADRON AT THE HALT
FACING LEFT/RIGHT
FORM (CLOSE) COLUMN OF FLIGHTS”**

whereupon the leading flight commander directs the marker and guide to lead on to the position of halting; at an appropriate moment, the flight commander turns off sharply to the left to take up parade position in front of the direction to be faced, halts, turns to face the flight and as they come up to the position for halting, gives the commands:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT HALT
INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.**

The flight commander then turns about to face the front. Each successive flight commander takes the same action as the flight is guided into position for halting. If the squadron adjutant or warrant officer are marching in the column, they are to continue marching with the movements of the leading flight, halting and turning into line as usual on the flight commander’s words of command, before taking up their parade positions.

- b. **Halting in Line of Flights.** To halt a squadron marching in Column of Route (or Threes), in Line of Flights, facing a certain direction, the squadron commander gives the order:

**“SQUADRON AT THE HALT
FACING LEFT/RIGHT FORM LINE OF FLIGHTS”**

whereupon the flight commanders turn left/right at an appropriate moment to take up their command position in front of the direction to be faced, halt, and turn to face their flights. As their flights successively come up to the position for halting, they give commands as follows:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT HALT
INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.**

If the squadron adjutant or warrant officer are marching in the column, they are to continue marching with the movements of the leading flight, halting and turning into line as usual on the flight commander’s words of command, before taking up their parade positions.

c. **Advancing in Column of Flights.** When a squadron, marching in Column of Threes, is required to Advance in Column of Flights, the squadron commander is to give the command:

“SQUADRON FACING LEFT/RIGHT ADVANCE IN COLUMN”

whereupon the leading flight commander is to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”

(see Part 1 Chp 3 Lessons 3/4). When the turn has been completed the new flank of direction is to be indicated by the flight commander giving the following instruction:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT BY THE LEFT/RIGHT”.

Each of the following flights, on arrival at the alignment on which the leading flight has turned, is to act in the same way.

MOVEMENT OF A SQUADRON IN LINE OF FLIGHTS

40. To move a squadron from Line of Flights to Column of Flights, the following commands are given:

**“SQUADRON ON THE RIGHT FORM (CLOSE) COLUMN OF FLIGHTS
NUMBER 1 FLIGHT STAND FAST
REMAINDER RIGHT TURN”**

whereupon No 1 Flight stands fast while all other flights are to turn as ordered. Executives and supernumeraries retain their relative positions.

“BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

Each of the remaining flights is to be led by its right marker and guide, by the shortest way, to its position in Column of Flights. The flight commanders then give the command:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT HALT
INTO LINE LEFT TURN”.**

DISMISSING A SQUADRON

41. The squadron commander may dismiss the squadron or call for the squadron adjutant and instruct that the adjutant dismiss the squadron.

42. The squadron may be dismissed centrally or by flights.

43. **Officers Fall Out.** When a squadron is to be dismissed centrally, the squadron commander is to give the orders:

**“SQUADRON SHUN
FALL OUT THE OFFICERS”.**

All officers are to fall out (see Part 1 Chp 6 Lesson 1). NCOs IC flights are to turn to their left and march to the positions vacated by their flight commanders. The squadron commander then Returns Swords and calls for, and hands over to, the squadron warrant officer before leaving the parade area accompanied by the officers.

44. **Warrant Officer’s Action.** The warrant officer orders the squadron to unfix bayonets before marching off to the place of dismissal.

45. **Dismissal by Flights.** When flights are required to dismiss independently the squadron commander is to give the command:

**“SQUADRON SHUN
FLIGHTS ARE TO MARCH OFF AND DISMISS”**

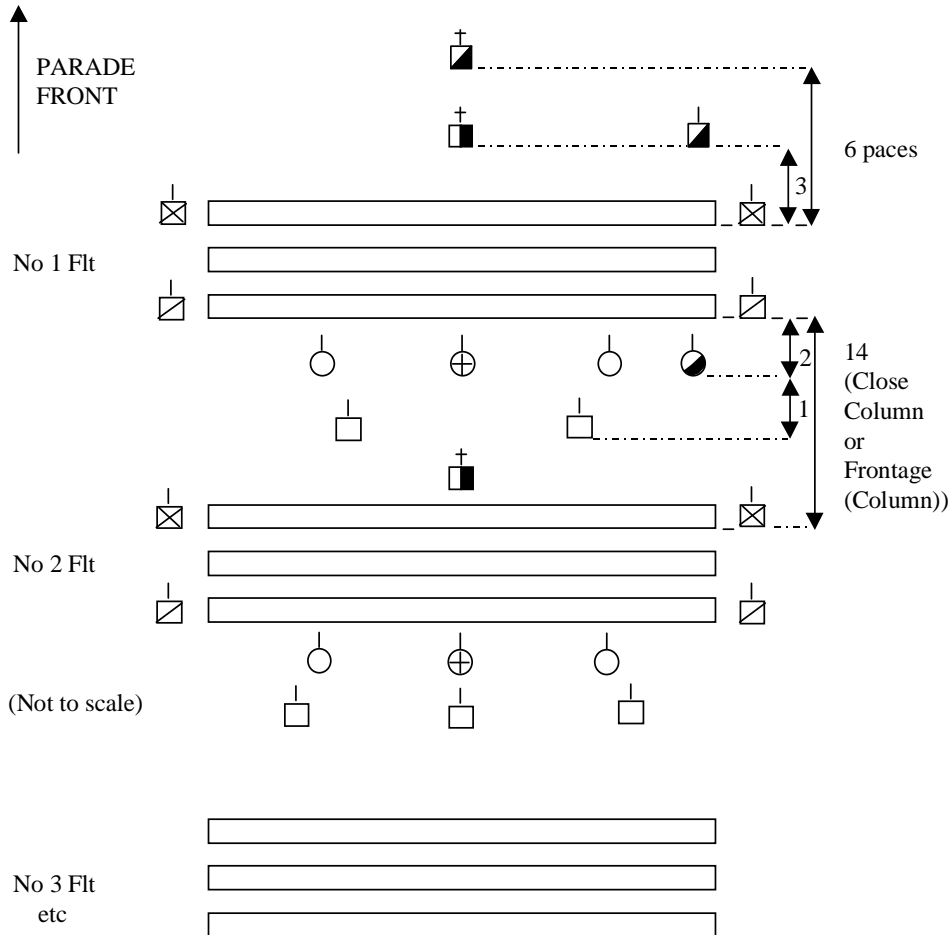
whereupon:

- a. All flight commanders are to salute in acknowledgement and carry on as detailed.
- b. At the same time the squadron adjutant is to turn left and the warrant officer is to incline to the right, both salute then march off the parade ground. The adjutant Returns Swords once off the parade ground.
- c. After acknowledging the salutes the squadron commander Returns Swords and leaves the parade ground.

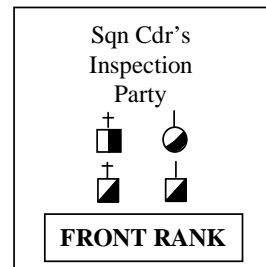
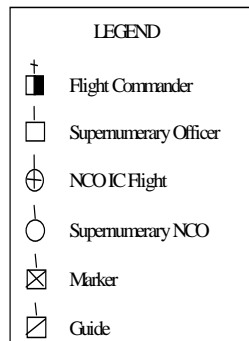
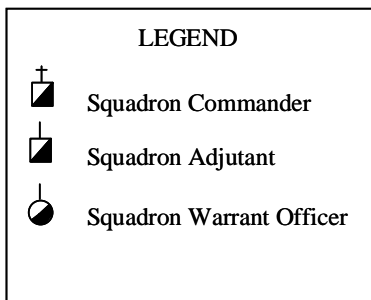
Annexes:

- A. Squadron in Column of Flights.
- B. Squadron in Line.
- C. Squadron in Column of Route (or Threes).

SQUADRON IN COLUMN OF FLIGHTS



Note: It is not normal to have supernumerary warrant officers on a parade; but if this is required such warrant officers are to stand in the supernumerary NCOs' line.

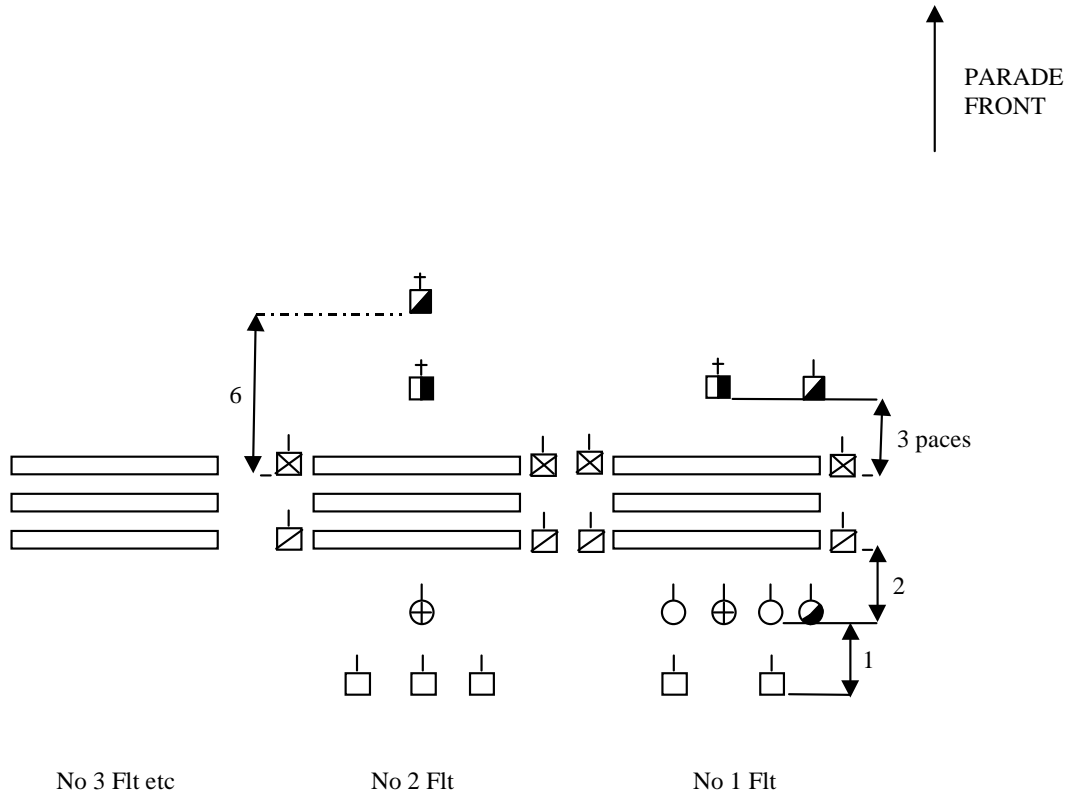


Appendix 1. Squadron in Column of Flights - Positions of Executives and Supernumeraries.

**SQUADRON IN COLUMN OF FLIGHTS - POSITIONS OF
EXECUTIVES AND SUPERNUMERARIES**

	Appointment (a)	Position (b)
1.	Squadron Commander	6 paces in front of the centre of the leading flight.
2.	Squadron Adjutant	3 paces in front of the right file of the leading flight in line with the flight commander.
3.	Squadron Warrant Officer	2 paces to the rear of the right file of the leading flight in line with the supernumerary NCOs.
4.	Flight Commander	3 paces in front of the centre of the flight.
5.	Supernumerary Officers	Equally spaced, 3 paces to the rear of the rear rank.
6.	NCO IC of the Flight	2 paces to the rear of the centre of the rear rank.
7.	Supernumerary NCOs	Equally spaced, 2 paces to the rear of the rear rank (starting from the right).
8.	Markers	One on each flank of the front rank.
9.	Guides	One on each flank of the rear rank.

SQUADRON IN LINE



(Not to scale)

Note: It is not normal to have supernumerary warrant officers on a parade; but if this is required such warrant officers are to stand in the supernumerary NCOs' line.

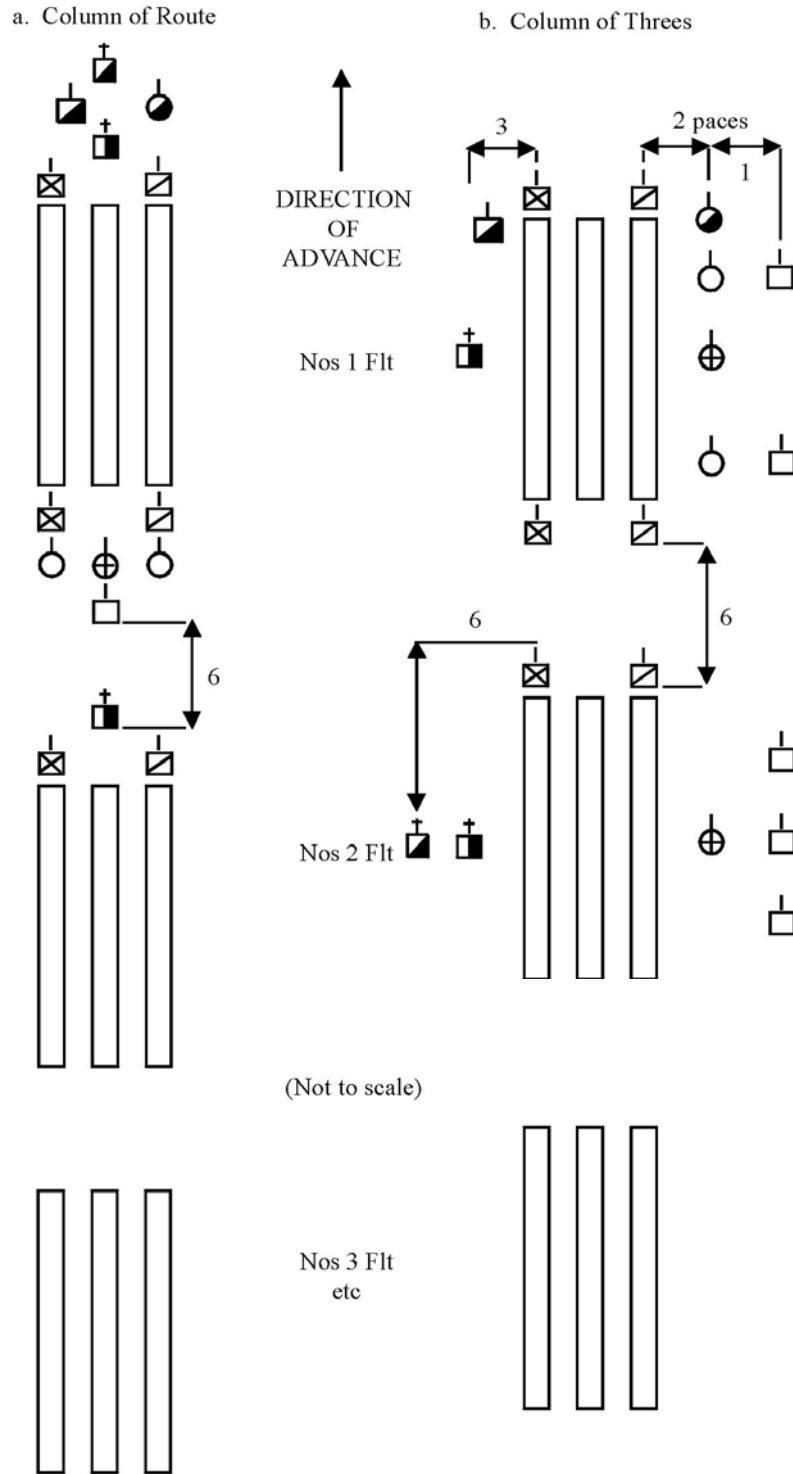
LEGEND	LEGEND
Squadron Commander	Flight Commander
Squadron Adjutant	Supernumerary Officer
Squadron Warrant Officer	NCO IC Flight
	Supernumerary NCO
	Marker
	Guide

Appendix 1. Squadron in Line - Positions of Executives and Supernumeraries.

SQUADRON IN LINE - POSITIONS OF EXECUTIVES AND SUPERNUMERARIES

Appointment (a)	Position (b)
1. Squadron Commander	6 paces in front of the centre of the squadron.
2. Squadron Adjutant	3 paces in front of the right file of the flight on the right of the line, in line with the flight commanders.
3. Squadron Warrant Officer	2 paces to the rear of the right file of the flight on the right of the line, in line with the supernumerary NCOs.
4. Flight Commander	3 paces in front of the centre of the flight.
5. Supernumerary Officers	Equally spaced, 3 paces to the rear of the rear rank.
6. NCO IC of the Flight	2 paces to the rear of the centre of the rear rank.
7. Supernumerary NCOs	Equally spaced, 2 paces to the rear of the rear rank (starting from the right).
8. Markers	One on each flank of the front rank.
9. Guides	One on each flank of the rear rank.

SQUADRON IN COLUMN OF ROUTE (OR THREES)



Appendix1. Squadron in Column of Route (or Threes) - Positions of Executives and Supernumeraries.

SQUADRON IN COLUMN OF ROUTE (OR THREES) - POSITIONS OF EXECUTIVES AND SUPERNUMERARIES

Column of Route

	Appointment (a)	Position (b)
1.	Squadron Commander	6 paces centrally in front of the leading guide and marker.
2.	Squadron Adjutant	2 paces to the rear and one pace to the left of the squadron commander (directly in front of the marker).
3.	Squadron Warrant Officer	2 paces to the rear and one pace to the right of the squadron commander (directly in front of the guide).
4.	Flight Commander	3 paces in front of the centre of the flight.
5.	Supernumerary Officers	In lines of threes, one pace in the rear of the supernumerary NCOs.
6.	NCO IC of the Flight and Supernumerary NCOs	In lines of threes, one pace in the rear of the flight, each line of three one pace in the rear of the one before.
7.	Markers and Guides	In their same relative positions as for Flight in Line.

Note: While it is not normal to have supernumerary warrant officers on a parade, if this is required such warrant officers are to form the rear lines of supernumerary NCOs while in Column of Route.

Column of Threes

Officers and NCOs are to be in the same relative positions as for Squadron in Line of Flights, but facing the required direction.

PART 2 - CHAPTER 6

WING DRILL

FORMATIONS

1. A wing may consist of two or more squadrons. The instructions in this Chapter are for such a wing, but they also apply to a wing consisting of any other number of squadrons.
2. A wing may be formed up in:
 - a. **Close Column of Squadrons (in Line of Flights).** Squadrons in Line or parallel and successive alignment at 18 paces distance (with flights in line). See Annex A.
 - b. **Line of Squadrons (in Close Column of Flights).** Squadrons in Close Column of Flights on the same alignment at 10 paces interval. See Annex B.
 - c. **Column of Route.** Squadrons in Column of Route with 10 paces distance between squadrons. See Annex C.
3. Unless otherwise ordered, a wing is to form in Line of Squadrons (in Close Column of Flights) and is to dress by the right flank. The movement of a wing in column of threes is not readily manageable therefore any move of a unit in column of threes is to be carried out by squadrons.

APPOINTMENTS

4. When a wing is formed up, the positions of executives and supernumeraries are to be as shown in the Annexes.
5. The wing commander is to give the executive commands for movements that are subsequently to be carried out simultaneously by squadrons or flights. When a movement is to be carried out by squadrons in succession, the squadron commanders, unless marching, are to turn about to face their squadrons and give the subordinate executive commands.

DRESSING

6. If it is necessary for the wing commander or adjutant to correct dressing, it is normally to be done with arms at the Shoulder.
7. **Executives.** Wing, squadron and flight commanders and adjutants are to turn about to face the ranks during the dressing adjustment. When the Eyes Front is given, they are to turn about to their front.
8. **Wing Warrant Officer.** When the order for the Left/Right Dress is given the wing warrant officer, alone, is to fall out from his position and supervise the prompt adjustment of squadrons' dressing from the directed flank. When he is satisfied he is to give the report:

“WING STEADY”

whereupon the wing commander gives the order for the Eyes Front and the wing warrant officer returns to his parade position.

9. **In Close Column of Squadrons (in Line of Flights).** Each squadron is to dress on the markers and guides on the flank of direction; markers and guides cover off those in front.

10. **In Line of Squadrons (in Close Column of Flights).** Each flight of each squadron is to dress on the marker and guide furthest on the flank of direction. Successive flights are to cover off the leading flight.

11. **Dressing on the March.** When the wing is marching, the markers and guides are responsible for maintaining direction and distancing as in squadron drill.

THE PARADE, TELLING OFF AND INSPECTION

12. The wing warrant officer will place out markers, and reports to the wing adjutant as in squadron drill (see Part 2 Chp 5).

13. When the adjutant orders the March On, each squadron is to be marched on to its marker from the reverse flank by its squadron commander. As each squadron approaches its alignment, the squadron commander himself is to peel off to the left (leaving the squadron adjutant and warrant officer to continue to lead the squadron on course) and gives this order while on the march:

“NUMBER X SQUADRON AT THE HALT FACING LEFT FORM LINE/CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS”

whereupon flight commanders proceed as detailed in Part 2 Chp 5. The squadron commander halts when in parade position and, after a pause, turns to face the squadron. When the whole squadron is in position and facing front, the squadron commander gives the orders to Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease (and Stand Easy if required). The squadron commander then turns about and Stands At Ease/Easy.

14. When the squadrons are in position, At Ease, the wing adjutant is to give the commands:

**“WING SHUN
OPEN ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
WING WILL FIX BAYONETS
FIX BAYONETS
SHUN”.**

Note: Officers will draw swords on the executive word of command: **“BAYONETS”**.

15. The wing adjutant then orders:

“TELL OFF BY SQUADRONS”

whereupon the squadron commanders are to call out the number of their squadrons from front to rear (in Close Column of Squadrons) or from right to left (in Line of Squadrons). Only the first and last (of any number of) squadron commanders finish with the word “Squadron”. The numbers are parade numbers in succession from “No 1”. Squadrons retain these numbers throughout the parade.

16. The wing adjutant is then to give the commands:

**“NUMBERS 1 AND 3 SQUADRONS STAND AT EASE
NUMBER 2 SQUADRON STAND AT EASE”.**

17. The adjutant then turns about and Stands At Ease to await the approach of the wing commander.

18. When the wing commander approaches, the adjutant is to come to Attention and give the command:

“WING SHUN”.

19. The wing commander is to approach from the front of the wing and halt in front of the adjutant who is to salute and report. See Part 2 Chp 5 para 25.

THE INSPECTION

20. When the adjutant has fallen in, the wing commander may indicate that an inspection is required. This will be done using the command:

**“NUMBER 1 SQUADRON STAND FAST
REMAINDER STAND AT EASE (STAND EASY IF REQUIRED)”**

whereupon the squadron commander of No 1 Squadron and the flight commander of No 1 Flight of that squadron both turn to the right and march to meet the wing commander on the right of that flight. There, they face the wing commander, salute and in turn briefly report their squadron and flight ready for inspection.

21. The wing adjutant and wing warrant officer fall out and join the inspection party, but do not salute as they join the inspection party. Neither the squadron adjutants, squadron warrant officers nor the NCOs IC Flight accompany the wing commander’s inspection party.

22. The wing commander proceeds with the inspection accompanied by the flight commander (who walks side by side with the wing commander and furthest from the rank being inspected. The squadron commander walks immediately behind the wing commander, side by side with the wing adjutant. The wing warrant officer is behind the squadron commander (see insert diagram at Annex A). The inspection starts from the right of No 1 Flight of the squadron. The wing commander instructs the squadron commander to stand the

remaining flights At Ease. When the first flight has been inspected the wing commander will go to No 2 Flight.

23. As the wing commander is leaving the first flight, No 2 Flight commander is to order the flight to Attention, then turn to meet the wing commander on the right of the flight.

24. In the meantime, as the wing commander leaves, the flight commander of the first flight salutes, returns to parade position, stands the flight At Ease (Stand Easy if required), turns to the front and stands At Ease/Easy. Each successive flight commander carries out this procedure until the inspection is over.

25. As the wing commander is leaving the first squadron, No 2 Squadron commander turns about and orders No 2 Squadron to Attention, before turning, with No 1 flight commander, to meet the wing commander on the right of the first Flight.

26. As the wing commander finishes inspecting the rear rank of the last flight in the first squadron, the squadron commander is to order No 1 Squadron to Attention (the last flight remains at Attention) and with the last flight commander is to salute the wing commander upon departure. The squadron and flight commander both return to their parade positions and the squadron commander stands the squadron At Ease (Stand Easy if required), turns about and stands At Ease/Easy. This procedure is carried out by each successive squadron commander until the inspection is over.

27. When the inspection is finished the wing commander, adjutant and warrant officer all return to their parade positions (by which time all squadrons have been stood At Ease and at the Order Arms, if required).

GENERAL MOVEMENTS OF WING DRILL

28. When arms are carried, units are normally to be exercised in wing drill without bayonets fixed. The wing commander would therefore first bring the wing to Attention and then order the bayonets to be unfixing. If the wing commander orders the unfixing of bayonets and officers are still on parade, the officers Return Swords on the executive word of command: **“BAYONETS”** and resume the position of Attention with the other personnel.

29. In exercising wing drill, the wing commander will be positioned to control sub-units to best advantage.

30. During wing drill manoeuvres where units are required to take up new alignments etc, the wing warrant officer, assisted by the squadron warrant officers, as necessary, may supervise the movement and dressing of units.

TURNING ABOUT

31. When the entire wing is turned about, action is to be as detailed for squadron drill (see Part 2 Chp 5 para 36).

MOVEMENTS OF A WING IN CLOSE COLUMN OF SQUADRONS (IN LINE OF FLIGHTS)

32. When the following movements are carried out by a wing in Close Column of Squadrons:

- a. Advancing or retiring (see Part 2 Chp 5 paras 36 and 37).
- b. Moving to a flank with squadrons in Column of Threes (see Part 2 Chp 5 para 39).
- c. Forming Column of Route (see Part Chp 5 para 37d).

The detail is the same as for corresponding movements in squadron drill except for the appropriate substitution of unit and sub-unit designations. Intervals and distances between squadrons and flights are to be maintained.

MOVEMENTS OF A WING IN LINE OF SQUADRONS (IN CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS)

33. **Advancing or Retiring.** Detail is the same as for corresponding squadron drill movements except for the substitution of appropriate unit designations (see para 32a above).

34. **Moving to a Flank in Column of Route (or Threes).** When the following order is given:

**“WING MOVE TO THE LEFT/RIGHT IN COLUMN OF ROUTE/THREES
NUMBER X SQUADRON LEADING”**

Squadron commanders are to turn about on the word “leading” and, commencing with the designated squadron commander, give in succession the appropriate order to their flights (see Part 2 Chp 5 para 38c and d).

MOVEMENT OF A WING IN COLUMN OF ROUTE

35. **Forming Line of Squadrons (in Close Column of Flights).** The following order is given:

**“WING AT THE HALT FACING LEFT/RIGHT
FORM LINE OF SQUADRONS IN CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS”**

whereupon the squadron commander of the leading squadron is then to give the command:

**“NUMBER X SQUADRON AT THE HALT FACING LEFT/RIGHT
FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS”**

whereupon the squadron is to act as in squadron drill (see Part 2 Chp 5 para 39a). As the leading marker and guide of each of the remaining squadrons approaches the position where

the right flank of its leading flight is to rest in the new formation, each squadron commander is to act similarly as in squadron drill. The wing adjutant and wing warrant officer are to act on the word of command of No 1 Flight commander of the leading squadron.

36. **Forming Close Column of Squadrons (in Line of Flights).** On the command:

**“WING AT THE HALT FACING LEFT/RIGHT
FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF SQUADRONS”**

the commander of the leading squadron is to give the commands:

**“NUMBER X SQUADRON HALT
INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.**

Each of the remaining squadrons is to be led by its adjutant, warrant officer and marker and guide by the shortest way to its position in Close Column of Squadrons and the squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“NUMBER X SQUADRON HALT
INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.**

DISMISSING A WING

37. A wing may be dismissed on the wing parade ground or may be marched off by squadrons for dismissal. The wing commander may dismiss the wing or the wing adjutant may be instructed to carry out the procedures. When the squadrons are required to dismiss independently on their own parade grounds the wing commander is to give the command:

**“WING SHUN
SQUADRONS ARE TO MARCH OFF AND DISMISS”.**

38. Upon this command, the following actions take place:

- a. All squadron commanders are to salute in acknowledgement and carry on as detailed.
- b. At the same time the wing adjutant is to turn left and the warrant officer is to incline to the right, both salute then march off the parade ground. (The adjutant Returns Swords once off the parade ground).
- c. After acknowledging the salutes, the wing commander Returns Swords and leaves the parade ground.

Annexes:

- A. Wing in Close Column of Squadrons (with Flights in Line).
- B. Wing in Line of Squadrons (in Close Column of Flights).
- C. Wing in Column of Route (in Close Column of Squadrons)

PART 2 – CHAPTER 7

PARADES - GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

GENERAL

1. The object of ceremonial drill is to enable a reviewing officer to judge the standard of drill and the steadiness of the units on parade. The standard of ceremonial drill indicates to a great degree the efficiency of a unit's discipline. The ceremonial drill for the review of a flight, squadron, or wing, is dealt with in this section.
2. It is not easy to explain in words the sequence and detail of ceremonial drill. The text is therefore enhanced with the use of diagrams, which are contained in the annexes to the relevant chapters. The key to be used with all such diagrams is shown at Annex A.

THE REVIEW PARADE GROUND

3. The parade ground on which the unit receives and marches past the reviewing officer is shown at Annex B. It is normally to be a rectangle of 160 x 30 inch paces in length and 80 x 30 inch paces in width, or such other size as is dictated by the parade formation and the space available. The four corners, numbered 1, 2, 3 and 4, are to be so positioned as to allow all drill movements to be carried out within the limits of the parade ground.
4. The area is to be marked out with continuous or interrupted lines.
5. The point termed the "saluting point" is to be marked in the centre of the side between Points 2 and 3 and set five paces back from the line joining these two points. Two points, A and B, are to be marked 10 x 30 inch paces to the left and right respectively of the saluting point in line with Points 2 and 3. The distance of 20 x 30 inch paces between A and B is termed the "saluting base".
6. A point is to be marked on the side of the review parade ground opposite the saluting point and between Points 1 and 4 so as to mark the position of the centre of that line. The whole line between Points 1 and 4 is termed the "receiving base".
7. Points A, B, 1, 2, 3 and 4, are to be marked by the unit commander's flag on poles 8 ft (2.4 metres) high. The saluting point is to be marked by the Royal Air Force Ensign, 6 ft x 3 ft (1.8 metres by 91 cms) on a pole 12 ft (3.6 metres) high.

THE CEREMONIAL OF REVIEW - GENERAL

8. The ceremonial of the review of a flight, squadron or wing consists of:
 - a. The reception of the reviewing officer.
 - b. The inspection by the reviewing officer.
 - c. The march past the reviewing officer.
 - d. The advance in review order.

9. The following drill formations are to be employed for:
 - a. **A Flight.** When a flight is to be paraded independently, it is to be formed up in Line and is to carry out the ceremonial in that formation.
 - b. **A Squadron.** When a squadron is to be paraded independently it is to be formed up on the receiving base in Line. The Squadron is to march past independently by flights, after which it is to march past in Close Column of Flights. The advance in review order is to be carried out in Line.
 - c. **A Wing.** When a wing is to be paraded, it is to be formed up on the receiving base in Line of Squadrons in Close Column of Flights. The wing is to march past by flights then by squadrons in Close Column of Flights. The advance in review order is to be carried out in Line of Squadrons in Close Column of Flights.
10. Normally squadrons are to march past by flights at column distance, but so that two flights shall not be on the saluting base at the same time a minimum distance of 25 paces is to be maintained between flights when marching past. The distance between squadrons marching past independently is to be 60 paces.
11. When the space for the ceremonial is limited, the march past may exceptionally be carried out in Column of Route.
12. Units are to be in Open Order during the reception and inspection phases. Officers are to take post in Review Order for the reception and inspection phases and for the Advance in Review Order.
13. During the Advance in Review Order, the band is to play the “Advance in Review Order” and the units are to halt after 14 paces (14, 1, 2). This is about 30 paces from the reviewing officer. If necessary the distance may be reduced.
14. The flight, squadron or wing is to be drawn up on the receiving base in the drill formation ordered, with its centre opposite the saluting point.
15. The band is to be formed up in the rear of the centre of the flight, squadron, or wing, at 10 paces distance.
16. Supernumerary officers are to be armed with swords when on parade. Supernumerary NCOs on the other hand, are not armed.
17. The following movements are to be carried out when parading:
 - a. **A Flight.**
 - (1) Once the flight has received the reviewing officer and been inspected, it is to wheel round Point 1, halt as its leading guide reaches Point 2, turn into line and march past. The band is to remain in its position and play a quick march while the flight is moving from the receiving base. As the flight turns into Line at Point 2, the drum-major or bandmaster is to signal the band to

move forward and halt with its front rank in line with Points 1 and 4, where it is to continue to play during the march past.

(2) The flight is to march past and halt when the right marker reaches Point 3. The flight is to be turned about and marched past in Quick Time, and when its rear rank is abreast of Point 2 it is to be halted and turned about. The band is to play in Quick Time during the march past. From Point 2 the flight is to be wheeled round Point 1 and form up in its original position in Line on the receiving base with its centre opposite the saluting point. The band is to counter-march to its original position in rear of the receiving base. The flight is then to Advance in Review Order, the band advancing at the same time playing the “Advance in Review Order”.

b. **A Squadron.**

(1) After the review and inspection a squadron is to wheel round Point 1 in Column of Threes and advance in column facing left. Each flight is to be turned into Line at the Halt when its leading guide reaches Point 2, and is to march past independently.

(2) After marching past by flights in Column the squadron is to be halted in its original formation with the right marker of its rear flight abreast of Point 3, after which it is to be turned about. It is then to march past in Quick Time as a squadron in Close Column of Flights, and is to be halted and turned about when its rear flight is abreast of Point 2. The band is to act as detailed for a flight parading independently.

(3) From Point 2 the squadron is to wheel round Point 1 in Column of Threes, and form up in its original formation on the receiving base with its centre opposite the saluting point for the advance in review order. The band is to act as detailed for a flight parading independently.

(4) The squadron is to advance in review order, the band advancing at the same time playing the “Advance in Review Order”.

c. **A Wing.** A wing is to act in a similar manner, independently by squadrons. The band is to act as detailed for a flight parading independently.

18. During the parade of a flight, squadron or wing, flights halt at Point 2 prior to the first March Past (by flights). Where parade personnel are of a sufficiently high standard of training, flights may turn into line on the march. Note that whilst this looks impressive, the dressing of the parade is likely to suffer. The wording of subsequent chapters reflects a Halt at Point 2.

19. When a flight, squadron, or wing, is to march past in Column of Route the band is to be 10 paces in front of the commander and is to change direction when ordered.

20. The term “Band” is used to include pipes, drums and trumpets.

21. The ceremonial of the review may be carried out by any unit or formation organized into flights or squadrons.
22. When an officer of superior rank to that of the formation or unit commander is on parade he is to be 10 paces in front of that commander.

DRESSING

23. In ceremonial drill the dressing is to be carried out as laid down for flight, squadron and wing drill. Personnel are to take up their dressing rapidly and correctly.
24. The guides and markers are to be responsible for maintaining the correct direction, covering, and distance, when marching. They are not to turn their heads towards the reviewing officer when the "Eyes Right/Left" is given during the march past.

COMPLIMENTS

25. When the reviewing officer is being received, and for the salute at the end of the Advance in Review Order, all officers are to salute with their sword.
26. When a wing marches past by Squadrons in Close Column of Flights, the wing commander and squadron commanders only are to salute.
27. In Column of Route, compliments are to be paid by flights; the wing commander, squadron commander, flight commanders, wing and squadron adjutants, and wing and squadron warrant officers, are to salute. Supernumerary officers are not to salute.
28. When a squadron marches past by flights, compliments are to be paid by flights; the squadron commander, flight commanders, and adjutant, are to salute. Supernumerary officers are not to salute.
29. When a squadron marches past in Close Column of Flights, the commanding officer only is to salute.
30. Non-commissioned officers acting as guides and markers are to carry rifles and bayonets, irrespective of their rank. Warrant officers and non-commissioned officers in command of flights are to salute when marching past.
31. The honours and salutes to be given by air forces on parade are laid down in QR(RAF)J152 and J158.





















RULES FOR SPECTATORS AT CEREMONIAL PARADES

31. a. **Marching On Colours or Standards.** Spectators stand and salute or
Whenever a colour/standard is marched on uncover.
and or/passes directly in front of spectators.
- b. **Arrival of Reviewing Officer.** Spectators stand.
- (1) **Royal Salute.** Spectators stand and salute or
uncover.
- (2) **General Salute.** Spectators stand and salute or
uncover.
- c. **Reviewing Officer returns from the** Spectators remain seated.
Inspection.
- d. **Presentation of Colour/Standard.** Spectators stand and salute or
When the new colour/standard is marched on uncover.
parade.
- e. **March Past.**
- (1) **With colour/standard.** Spectators stand and salute or uncover
as colour/standard passes directly in
front of them.
- (2) **Without colour/standard.** Spectators remain seated.
- f. **Advance in Review Order.**
- (1) **Royal Salute.** Spectators stand and salute or
uncover.
- (2) **General Salute.** Spectators stand and salute or
uncover.
- g. **Marching Off Colour/Standard.** Spectators stand and salute or
Whenever a colour/standard is marched off uncover.
and/or passed directly in front of spectators.

Annexes:

- A. **Key to Diagrams.**
B. **The Review Parade Ground.**

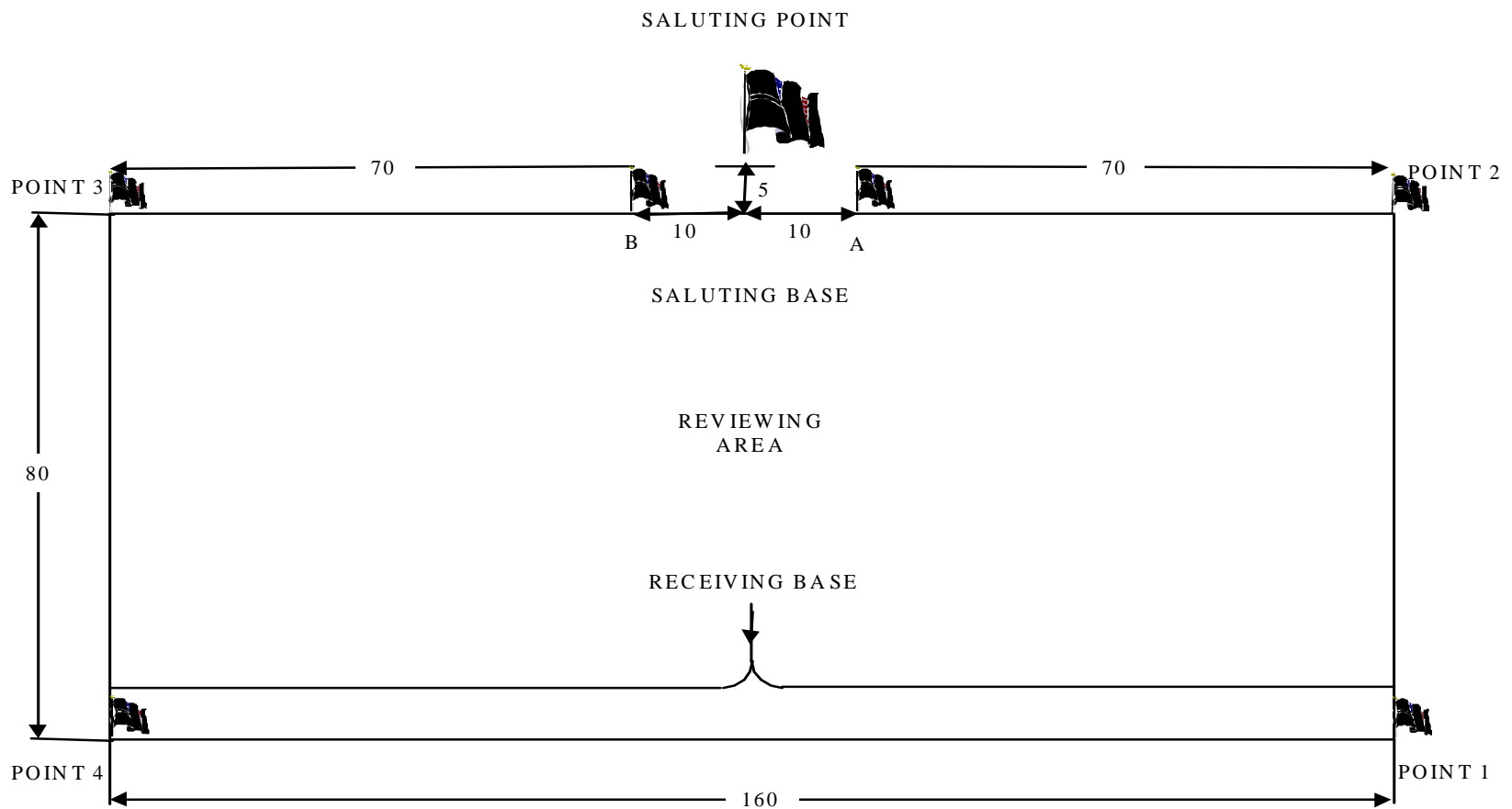
KEY TO DIAGRAMS

- 


- 


- 







- 




- 

NOTE

All measurements indicated in the diagrams are in paces.

THE REVIEW PARADE GROUND



PART 2 – CHAPTER 8

REVIEW OF A FLIGHT

FORMING-UP FOR CEREMONIAL

1. The flight is to be paraded, sized, proved and inspected by the NCO IC the flight before being handed over to the flight commander. The latter is to order the officers to fall in (drawing their swords if appropriate).
2. When the flight commander has inspected the flight, the order to fix bayonets should be given. After this the flight is marched at the Slope Arms to its position on the receiving base, where it is to be drawn up in line facing the saluting point.

THE CEREMONIAL OF THE REVIEW

3. The flight commander is to give the commands:

**“FLIGHT SHOULDER ARMS
OPEN ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER, LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH”.**

The supernumerary officers are to turn to their left, move round the flank of the flight, and take post at equal intervals along its frontage, two paces in front of the front rank. The flight commander is to take post in a central position two paces in front of the supernumerary officers. When all officers have arrived at these positions the flight commander is to give the command:

“OFFICERS LEFT TURN”.

4. The flight is now ready to receive the reviewing officer. The flight commander is to give the commands:

**“FLIGHT STAND AT EASE
STAND EASY”.**

When the reviewing officer has reached a point about 50 yards away from the parade:

**“FLIGHT FLIGHT SHUN
SLOPE ARMS**

and when the reviewing officer has taken up his position in front of the saluting point:

“GENERAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”.

Note: If the flight is being reviewed by a royal personage or head of state, the command is to be:

“ROYAL SALUTE, PRESENT ARMS”.

5. After the band has played the appropriate salute, the flight commander is to give the commands:

**“SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The flight commander is then to report to the reviewing officer. The reviewing officer is to inspect the flight, accompanied by the flight commander. After inspecting the flight the reviewing officer may wish to inspect the band. At the end of the inspection the reviewing officer is to give orders to the flight commander to carry out the march past.

6. The flight commander is to give the commands:

“OFFICERS TAKE POST, LEFT TURN, QUICK MARCH”

whereupon supernumerary officers are to move round the flank of the flight, resuming their original positions. The flight commander then gives the commands:

**“OFFICERS INWARDS TURN
CLOSE ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
FLIGHT SLOPE ARMS
FLIGHT WILL MARCH PAST
MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF THREES RIGHT TURN
BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.**

When the right guide reaches Point 1:

“LEFT WHEEL”.

As the guide reaches Point 2:

**“FLIGHT HALT
INTO LINE LEFT TURN
SHOULDER ARMS
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
SLOPE ARMS”.**

The flight commander is to turn about:

**“FLIGHT WILL MARCH PAST
BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.**

When the flight commander reaches Point A:

“FLIGHT EYES RIGHT”.

When the supernumerary rank of officers is abreast of Point B:

“FLIGHT EYES FRONT”.

7. When the marker reaches Point 3, the flight commander is to give the commands:

**“FLIGHT HALT
ABOUT TURN
SHOULDER ARMS
LEFT DRESS
EYES FRONT
SLOPE ARMS
FLIGHT WILL MARCH PAST
BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.**

When he arrives abreast of Point B:

“FLIGHT EYES LEFT”.

When the supernumerary rank of officers is abreast of Point A:

“EYES FRONT”.

When the rear is abreast of Point 2:

**“FLIGHT HALT
ABOUT TURN
MOVE TO THE LEFT IN COLUMNS OF THREES, LEFT TURN
BY THE RIGHT QUICK MARCH”**

and when the leading guide arrives at Point 1:

“RIGHT WHEEL”.

8. When the flight reaches its original position on the receiving base, the flight commander is to give the commands:

**“FLIGHT HALT
INTO LINE RIGHT TURN
SHOULDER ARMS
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER, LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
OFFICERS LEFT TURN
SLOPE ARMS**

**FLIGHT ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER
BY THE CENTRE QUICK MARCH”.**

The flight is to halt after 14 paces (14, 1, 2):

“FLIGHT GENERAL (ROYAL) SALUTE, PRESENT ARMS”

whereupon the band is to play the appropriate salute.

9. The flight commander is then to give the commands:

**“SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”**

and report to the reviewing officer for orders regarding the parade. He is then to give the commands:

**“OFFICERS TAKE POST, LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
OFFICERS INWARDS TURN”.**

When the reviewing officer has left the parade ground, the flight is to be marched off and dismissed.

PART 2 – CHAPTER 9

REVIEW OF A SQUADRON

FORMING-UP FOR CEREMONIAL

1. The squadron is to be paraded and inspected as for squadron drill. Flights are to be previously sized and proved. After the squadron commander has inspected the squadron, the order to fix bayonets is given.
2. **Formation.** The squadron is then to be marched to its position on its marker on the receiving base, where it is to be drawn up in Line of Flights facing the saluting point. The squadron may also be drawn up in Close Column of Flights should the shape of the parade ground dictate it.
3. **Squadron Standard.** If the squadron possesses a standard, it is marched on in accordance with instructions detailed in Part 2 Chp 12. The standard is to be positioned according to the number of flights on parade. When there are an even number of flights on parade the Standard Party would be central and between the flights, with the standard in line with the flight commanders. When there are an odd number of flights then the Standard Party would be in front of the centre flight with the standard 6 paces in front of the front rank. The squadron commander should be 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight in either case.

THE CEREMONIAL OF THE REVIEW

4. The squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON SQUADRON SHUN
OPEN ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER, OUTWARDS TURN
QUICK MARCH”.**

The squadron adjutant is to turn to the right, and move three paces forward. The flight commanders are to turn to the right and take post in front of the leading markers of their flights. Supernumerary officers are to turn to the left, move around the flank, and take up positions at equal intervals along the frontage of their flights, in line with the flight commander. When all officers have arrived at these positions, the squadron commander is to give the command:

“OFFICERS LEFT TURN”.

5. At this point, if a standard is carried, the squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
MARCH ON THE SQUADRON STANDARD, PRESENT ARMS”.**

6. The squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
SQUADRON SHOULDER ARMS
SQUADRON STAND AT EASE”.**

The squadron is now ready to receive the reviewing officer. When the reviewing officer has reached a point about 50 yards away from the parade:

**“SQUADRON SQUADRON SHUN
SLOPE ARMS”**

and when the reviewing officer has taken up his position in front of the saluting point:

“GENERAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”.

Note: If the reviewing officer is a royal personage or a head of state, the command is to be:

“ROYAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”.

7. The timing of any flypast should follow the salute. After the band has played the appropriate salute, the squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
SQUADRON SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The squadron commander is then to report to the reviewing officer and state:

“NUMBER X SQUADRON READY FOR YOUR INSPECTION SIR/MA’AM”.

The reviewing officer is to inspect the squadron by flights. Each flight commander is to meet the reviewing officer as he arrives at the right flank and, after saluting, is to accompany him along the ranks during the inspection of the flight. When the flight has been inspected the flight commander is to salute and fall in. At the end of the inspection the squadron commander is to request:

“PERMISSION TO CARRY ON WITH THE CEREMONIAL SIR/MA’AM?”

The squadron commander is to move to a position central to and 6 paces in front of the sqn.

Notes:

1. If a squadron standard is on parade, it is to be at the Carry during the inspection, and brought down to the Order on completion of the inspection.
2. When the reviewing officer has inspected the squadron, he may wish to inspect the band before the march past is carried out.

3. Prior to the March Past and Advance in Review Order the parade may encompass additional ceremonial; such as the Presentation of a Standard/Colour or the Hand Over of a colour or standard (including disbandment ceremonial). See appropriate chapters.

8. The squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON SHUN
OFFICERS TAKE POST
LEFT TURN QUICK MARCH”**

whereupon the adjutant, flight commanders and supernumerary officers are to turn to their left and resume their original positions. When all officers have arrived at their positions the squadron commander is to give the command:

“OFFICERS INWARDS TURN”.

When the movement is completed the squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON CLOSE ORDER MARCH
INWARDS DRESS
EYES FRONT
SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS AT POINT 2
MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF THREES
RIGHT TURN”.**

The Standard Party, under the orders of the bearer, is to be positioned between No 1 and No 2 Flights.

“SQUADRON BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

9. After wheeling around Point 1 and as the leading flight reaches Point 2, the squadron commander is to give the command:

**“SQUADRON AT THE HALT FACING LEFT
FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS”**

whereupon each flight commander, as the leading guide reaches Point 2, is to give the commands:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT HALT”

The squadron commander is to give the commands:

“SQUADRON INTO LINE LEFT TURN”.

The Standard Party, under the orders of the bearer, is to take post.

**“SQUADRON SHOULDER ARMS
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
SLOPE ARMS”**

The squadron commander is to turn about.

**“SQUADRON MARCH PAST BY FLIGHTS IN COLUMN AT 25 PACES DISTANCE
NO 1 FLIGHT LEADING”.**

The squadron commander is to lead the squadron. Each flight commander is to give the words of command:

“NO X FLIGHT BY THE RIGHT QUICK MARCH”.

Each flight commander once abreast of Point A is to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT EYES RIGHT”.

Note: No 1 Flight commander is to give his orders in time so as to include the squadron commander and squadron adjutant.

When the supernumerary rank of officers is abreast of Point B, the flight commander is to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT EYES FRONT”.

Note: The squadron commander and squadron adjutant complete the salute on their own on reaching Point B.

As No 1 Flight approaches Point 3, the squadron commander is to give the command:

“AT THE HALT FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS”.

When the right marker arrives at a position 28 paces beyond Point 3, the flight commander is to give the command:

“NUMBER 1 FLIGHT HALT”.

The remaining flights are to be halted to form Close Column of Flights on the leading flight at Point 3.

10. When all flights have reached their positions in Close Column of Flights, the squadron commander is to give the command:

“SQUADRON ABOUT TURN”.

The adjutant, flight commanders and supernumeraries, after turning about, are to move to their new positions in Quick Time. The Standard Party, under the orders of the standard bearer, is to be marched to its position between No 2 and No 3 flights (if 3 flights are on parade). The squadron commander, taking post in the front of the squadron, is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON SHOULDER ARMS
LEFT DRESS
EYES FRONT
SLOPE ARMS
SQUADRON MARCH PAST IN CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS
NO X FLIGHT LEADING
BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.**

When he arrives at Point B:

“SQUADRON EYES LEFT”.

When the supernumerary rank of the rear flight reaches Point A:

“EYES FRONT”

and when the rear rank of the flight is abreast of Point 2:

**“SQUADRON HALT
ABOUT TURN”.**

The adjutant, flight commanders, supernumeraries (and Standard Party), after turning about, are to move to their new positions in Quick Time.

11. The squadron commander, on taking post in front of the squadron, is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON FORM LINE OF FLIGHTS ON THE RECEIVING BASE
NUMBER 3 FLIGHT LEADING
MOVE TO THE LEFT IN COLUMN OF THREES LEFT TURN”**

whereupon the flights are to act as in squadron drill. The Standard Party is to take post. If the squadron is to be formed up in Line of Flights then No 3 Flight leads, if in Column of Flights then No 1 Flight leads. The squadron wheels around Point 1. As the leading flight approaches its original position on the receiving base, the squadron commander is to move to his position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight. The flights are to act as in squadron drill, halting and turning into line on the command of the flight commanders. The standard party resumes its original position.

12. When the squadron is in position, the squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON SHOULDER ARMS, INWARDS DRESS, EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER OUTWARDS TURN
QUICK MARCH”.**

The squadron adjutant is to turn to the right, and move three paces forward. Flight commanders are to turn to their right and take posts in front of the leading guides of their flights.

Supernumerary officers are to turn to the left, move around the flank, and take up positions at equal intervals along the frontage of their flights, in line with the flight commander. The squadron commander is then to give the command:

“OFFICERS LEFT TURN”.

13. On completion of this movement, the squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER BY THE CENTRE QUICK MARCH”**

the squadron is to halt after 14 paces (14, 1, 2):

“SQUADRON GENERAL (ROYAL) SALUTE, PRESENT ARMS”

and after the band has played the appropriate salute:

**“SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The squadron commander is then to report to the reviewing officer. The reviewing officer may give a speech in which case the squadron would be stood At Ease. Upon completion the squadron would be brought to Attention and the reviewing officer may leave the parade ground or the ceremonial may include the squadron marching off parade.

14. If the squadron is to march off the squadron commander is to order:

**“OFFICERS TAKE POST LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
INWARDS TURN
NUMBER X SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF ROUTE RIGHT TURN”.**

Executives and supernumeraries turn themselves again and take up position:

“SQUADRON BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

The squadron then marches off via Points 1, 2, and 3 giving an Eyes Right between Points A and B. The standard is marched off parade in a suitable area. The squadron commander is in position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No1 Flight.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON AT THE HALT
FACING LEFT/RIGHT FORM LINE OF FLIGHTS”**

whereupon the flight commanders turn left/right at an appropriate moment to take up their command position in front of the direction to be faced, halt, and turn to face their flights. As their flights successively come up to the position for halting, they give commands as follows:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT HALT
INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.**

If the squadron adjutant or warrant officer are marching in the column, they are to continue marching with the movements of the leading flight, halting and turning into line as usual on the flight commander’s words of command, before taking up their parade positions.

Squadron Commander:

**“SHOULDER ARMS
INWARDS DRESS
EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER OUTWARDS TURN
QUICK MARCH
LEFT TURN
SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
MARCH OFF THE SQUADRON STANDARD PRESENT ARMS”.**

The Standard Party march off under the command of the standard bearer. The band plays Point of War and the Royal Air Force March.

Squadron Commander (when the standard is out of sight of the squadron):

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS
OFFICERS TAKE POST LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
INWARDS TURN
FALL OUT THE OFFICERS”.**

After the officers have fallen out:

“SQUADRON WARRANT OFFICER”.

The squadron commander then hands the squadron over to the squadron warrant officer, who is to unfix bayonets and dismiss the squadron.

15. If the reviewing officer leaves the parade ground, the squadron commander is to order the standard to be marched off (see above and Part 2 Chp 12). When the Standard Party has marched off, the squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“OFFICERS TAKE POST LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH”.**

The adjutant, flight commander and supernumerary officers are to turn to the left and resume their original positions. The squadron commander is then to give the command:

**“OFFICERS INWARDS TURN
OFFICERS FALL OUT (RETURN SWORDS)”.**

The squadron is then to be marched to its parade ground for dismissal.

PART 2 – CHAPTER 10

REVIEW OF A WING

1. When the station as a whole is on parade the detail for the Review of a Wing is to be used as the basis for the ceremonial. The shape of the parade is to conform as closely as possible to that laid down, but allowing for the symmetry and the size of the parade ground. Whether or not the station commander commands the parade is left to the discretion of the Air Officer Commanding.
2. When more than one squadron standard is to be paraded, they are to be marched on together, the bearer of the senior standard giving the order “Quick March”. Bearer parties are then to act independently until in position. The parade formation would be Line of Squadrons on this occasion, with the senior squadron on the right. The standards are therefore positioned along the front of the parade.

FORMING-UP FOR CEREMONIAL

3. Squadrons are to be paraded on their own parade grounds, and are to be sized and inspected as for squadron drill.
4. Squadron markers are to be positioned on the receiving base by the wing warrant officer as for a Line of Squadrons in Close Column of Flights.
5. Each squadron adjutant is to order fix bayonets and is to tell off and prove the squadron. The squadron commander is to take command of the squadron and inspect each flight. On orders from the wing adjutant or the sounding of the “Advance”, squadron commanders are to march their squadrons on to their markers on the review parade ground from the reverse flank and then give the commands:

**“SHOULDER ARMS
STAND AT EASE
STAND EASY”.**

6. When all squadrons are in position, the wing adjutant is to give the commands:

**“WING WING SHUN
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
TELL OFF BY SQUADRONS
NUMBERS 1 AND 3 SQUADRONS STAND AT EASE
NUMBER 2 SQUADRON STAND AT EASE
WING SHUN”.**

He is then to report to the wing commander:

“WING PRESENT (or otherwise), SIR/MA’AM”.

THE CEREMONIAL OF THE REVIEW

7. a. The wing commander is to give the commands:

**“WING OPEN ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER
OUTWARDS TURN QUICK MARCH”.**

- b. Squadron commanders are to stand fast.
- c. The wing adjutant is to turn to the right and move three paces forward.
- d. The squadron adjutant, flight commanders and supernumerary officers are to act as detailed in the review of a squadron, allowing space for the standard party when necessary. The wing commander is then to give the command:

“OFFICERS LEFT TURN”

- e. The wing commander is to take post 20 paces in front of the centre of the front rank of the centre squadron.
- f. At this stage, standards are to be marched on, as detailed in the Review of a Squadron.
8. The wing is now ready to receive the reviewing officer. The wing commander is to give the following commands:

“WING STAND AT EASE”.

When the reviewing officer reaches a position about 50 yards away from the parade:

“WING SLOPE ARMS”

and when the reviewing officer has taken up his position in front of the saluting point:

“GENERAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”.

If the wing is being reviewed by a royal personage or a head of state the command is to be:

“ROYAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”.

9. After the band has played the appropriate salute, the wing commander is to give the commands before reporting to the reviewing officer:

**“WING SLOPE ARMS
WING SHOULDER ARMS”.**

10.
 - a. The reviewing officer accompanied by the wing commander and his adjutant, is to inspect the wing by squadrons.
 - b. Each squadron commander is to move out to meet the reviewing officer on arrival at the right flank of the squadron, and after saluting is to accompany the party along the ranks during the inspection of the squadron. When the squadron has been inspected the squadron commander is to salute and fall in. Squadron standards which, up to this point, have been in the "Carry" position are now to be brought to the "Order" position, as each squadron commander reaches his position and turns to the front.
 - c. Each flight commander is to meet the reviewing officer as on arrival on the right flank of the flight and after saluting is to accompany the party along the ranks during the inspection of the flight. When the flight has been inspected the flight commander is to salute and fall in.
 - d. At the end of the inspection the reviewing officer may wish to inspect the band before ordering the wing commander to carry out the march past.
11. The wing commander is to give the commands:

**"OFFICERS TAKE POST LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
OFFICERS INWARDS TURN"**

whereupon the adjutants, flight commanders and supernumerary officers are to resume their original positions.

12. The wing commander is then to give the commands:

**"CLOSE ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
WING SLOPE ARMS
MARCH PAST BY FLIGHTS IN COLUMN AT 25 PACES DISTANCE
NUMBER 1 SQUADRON LEADING"**.

13. On the command: "**LEADING**" squadron commanders are to turn about. Each squadron commander, starting with Number 1, is to give the command:

**"NUMBER X SQUADRON MOVE TO THE RIGHT
IN COLUMN OF THREES RIGHT TURN"**

whereupon flights and Standard Party/Parties are to act as in squadron drill. The Standard Party/Parties, under the orders of the standard bearer(s), is/are to be marched to its/their position(s) between Nos 1 and 2 Flights of each squadron.

14. When the leading flight reaches Point 1, the squadron commander is to give the command:

“LEFT WHEEL”

and as the leading flight approaches Point 2:

“FACING LEFT ADVANCE IN COLUMN”.

Flights are to act as in squadron drill and march past, giving compliments on the march. The remaining squadrons are to follow in the same manner at about 60 paces distance.

15. When the first flight of Number 1 Squadron is abreast of Point 3, the squadron commander is to give the command:

“AT THE HALT FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS”

and when the formation is completed:

**“SQUADRON MOVE TO THE LEFT LEFT TURN
BY THE RIGHT QUICK MARCH”**

and on arrival at their position, a distance equal to twice the squadron frontage plus 20 paces, as a squadron in a Wing in Line of Squadrons in Close Column of Flights, he is to give the command:

**“SQUADRON HALT
FLIGHTS INTO LINE LEFT TURN”.**

After turning officers, supernumeraries and standard party are to move to their new positions by marching round the flanks.

16. a. Number 2 Squadron commander is to order his squadron to act in a similar manner. Their final position being a distance of the squadron frontage plus 10 paces.

b. Number 3 Squadron commander is to give similar orders, except that when his squadron has formed Close Column of Flights at Point 3 he is to give the command:

“NUMBER 3 SQUADRON ABOUT TURN”.

Notes:

1. The wing commander is to remain in position until Number 1 Flight of Number 1 Squadron has turned into line at Point 2, when the wing commander is to turn about to face the reviewing officer. As the last flight of the rear squadron reaches a point abreast of the reviewing officer, the wing commander is to left turn, march to a position between Points 3 and 4, and prepare the wing for the march past by squadrons. Standard parties take post as detailed in the Review of a Squadron.

2. The wing adjutant and wing warrant officer are to proceed to Number 3 Squadron after the about turn, via the rear of Numbers 1 and 2 squadrons and take up their new positions on the left flank of Number 3 squadron.

17. When the officers and supernumeraries of Number 3 squadron have taken up their positions the wing commander is to give the commands:

**“WING SHOULDER ARMS
LEFT DRESS
EYES FRONT
SLOPE ARMS
WING MARCH PAST BY SQUADRONS IN CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS
NUMBER 3 SQUADRON LEADING”.**

The squadron commanders of squadrons other than Number 3 are to turn about, and in succession give the command:

“NUMBER X SQUADRON MOVE TO THE LEFT LEFT TURN”.

The wing commander is to take post 10 paces in front of the leading flight of Number 3 squadron.

18. Number 3 squadron commander is to give the commands:

“NUMBER 3 SQUADRON BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”

and when he is abreast of Point B:

“SQUADRON EYES LEFT”.

When the supernumerary officers of the rear flight of the squadron is abreast of Point A:

“SQUADRON EYES FRONT”

and when the rear supernumerary rank of officers is abreast of Point 2:

**“SQUADRON BY THE RIGHT
MOVE TO THE RIGHT RIGHT TURN”.**

Note: The wing warrant officer is to fall out at Point 2 to assist squadron commanders in positioning their squadrons prior to taking up the new formation.

On arrival at the position, a distance of twice the squadron frontage plus 20 paces from point 2, the squadron commander is to give the commands:

**“NUMBER 3 SQUADRON HALT
FLIGHTS INTO LINE RIGHT TURN”.**

19. When the rear flight of Number 3 squadron has passed Point 3, the squadron commander of Number 2 Squadron is to give the commands:

“NUMBER 2 SQUADRON BY THE RIGHT QUICK MARCH”

and when the leading guide on the directing flank reaches Point 3:

**“FLIGHTS INTO LINE RIGHT TURN
BY THE LEFT”**

whereupon the squadron is to march past as detailed for Number 3 Squadron. The final position being a distance of the squadron frontage plus 10 paces from point 2.

20. When the second flight of Number 2 Squadron has passed Point 3, the commander of Number 1 Squadron is to give the command:

“NUMBER 1 SQUADRON BY THE RIGHT QUICK MARCH”

whereupon the squadron is to march past as detailed for Number 2 Squadron with the exception that, when the supernumerary rank of officers of the rear flight is abreast of Point 2, the commander is to give the commands:

**“NUMBER 1 SQUADRON HALT
ABOUT TURN”.**

Note: The wing adjutant is to return, via the rear of Numbers 2 and 1 Squadrons, to his position on the right flank of Number 1 Squadron.

21. The wing commander, having marched past, is to turn right and march to his position between Points 1 and 2, where he is to prepare the wing for the return to the receiving base. When all squadrons have reached their positions the wing commander is to give the command:

**“WING FORM LINE OF SQUADRONS IN CLOSE COLUMN OF
FLIGHT ON THE RECEIVING BASE NUMBER 3 SQUADRON LEADING”.**

Squadron commanders are to turn about, and the commanders of Numbers 3, 2 and 1 Squadrons are in that order, to give the commands:

**“NUMBER X SQUADRON MOVE TO THE LEFT IN COLUMN OF THREES
NUMBER 1 FLIGHT LEADING LEFT TURN”**

whereupon the flights are to act as in squadron drill. As the leading guide of their leading flight reaches Point 1:

“RIGHT WHEEL”.

As the squadrons approach their original position on the receiving base squadron commanders are to give the commands:

**“NUMBER X SQUADRON AT THE HALT FACING RIGHT
FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS”.**

22. When the last flight of the leading squadron has wheeled onto the receiving base, the wing commander is to turn about and march to his position in front of the Wing. Standard Parties are to resume their original positions. When all squadrons are in position, the wing commander is to give the commands:

**“WING SHOULDER ARMS
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER OUTWARDS TURN
QUICK MARCH
OFFICERS LEFT TURN
WING SLOPE ARMS
ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER BY THE CENTRE QUICK MARCH”**

the wing is to halt after 14 paces (14, 1, 2):

“WING GENERAL (ROYAL) SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”

when the band has played the appropriate salute:

**“SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

23. The wing commander is then to report to the reviewing officer, and when the reviewing officer has left the parade ground, the wing commander is to order the standard(s) to be marched off. After the Standard Party/Parties has/have marched off, the wing commander is to give the commands:

**“OFFICERS TAKE POST LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH”**

and when the officers have returned to their positions:

**“OFFICERS INWARDS TURN
SQUADRONS MARCH OFF”.**

Squadron commanders are to turn about then march their squadrons off independently in Column of Route. The Band is to play while the dispersal is taking place and is then to be marched off.

PART 2 - CHAPTER 11

GUARDS OF HONOUR

1. The occasions on which guards of honour are mounted are laid down in QR(RAF) J151.
2. **Formation of the Guard.** A Guard of Honour (full or half) may only be formed up in:
 - a. Line.
 - b. Column of Route.
3. **Arms.** Officers are to carry swords. The colour/standard bearer and the colour/standard warrant officer are to wear swords. All SNCOs and below are to be armed with rifles with bayonets fixed.
4. **Composition of a Royal Guard of Honour.** A Royal Guard of Honour (full guard) with a colour is to consist of the following:
 - a. Guard Commander - Squadron leader.
 - b. Flight Commander - One junior officer.
 - c. Colour Party - Colour bearer, colour warrant officer, 2 SNCO escorts and one Colour Orderly (SAC), who looks after the colour case.
 - d. Guard - Two SNCOs (right and left markers), 2 NCOs (right and left guides) and 2 escort flights each consisting of not more than 48 ORs below the rank of sergeant.
 - e. Band.

Note: A Royal Guard of Honour may be enhanced by an additional junior officer on two occasions:

1. Exceptionally, the squadron leader may be instructed to take up parade position forward of and in the centre of the guard. With the guard in line, the squadron leader would be positioned 12 paces in front of the front rank, and in the centre of the guard. When in column of route the squadron leader would be positioned 3 paces in front of the leading flight commander.
2. When there is no colour on parade and the guard is paraded as one flight.

5. **Positions within a Royal Guard of Honour.** The positions of the various components of a royal guard are shown at Annexes A and B. When a colour is not paraded and the royal guard is formed up in one flight it is not to exceed 4 SNCOs, 96 ORs, one warrant officer, and three officers.

6. **Composition of a Guard of Honour.** A Guard of Honour (half guard) is to consist of the following:

- a. Guard Commander - Flight Lieutenant.
- b. Junior Officer - One junior officer.
- c. Guard - Two SNCOs (right and left markers), 2 NCOs (right and left guides) and 48 airmen below the rank of sergeant in one flight.
- d. Band or Trumpeters.

7. **Positions within a Guard of Honour.** The positions of the components of a Guard of Honour are shown at Annexes A and B. When a squadron standard is paraded with a half guard, the formation to be adopted is as for a royal guard with a colour. The squadron standard is to be positioned centrally between, and three paces forward of the two escort flights. Each flight is to consist of 1 SNCO (marker), 1 NCO (guide) and 24 ORs.

8. **Band.** The band is to take up a position ten paces to the rear of the centre of the guard. If space does not permit, the band may be positioned on one of the flanks, but it may not be positioned forward of the guard.

9. **Combined Colour and Standard Parties.** A Queen's colour and a squadron standard may be paraded together or in pairs of colours or standards. The positions of the combined colour/standard party when paraded with a Royal Guard of Honour are shown at Annex C.

MOUNTING A GUARD OF HONOUR

10. A Guard of Honour is to be paraded on the unit parade ground or other suitable area under the command of the warrant officer or SNCO of the guard, as appropriate. The guard is to be correctly sized and then put in "Open Order", ready for inspection. If a colour or standard is to be paraded, the guard is to be formed up in two flights with an interval of 8 paces between flights.

11. The guard commander is to take over the command of the guard from the warrant officer, or SNCO, who will accompany the guard commander during his inspection.

12. The junior officer(s) of the Guard is/are to take up position 8 paces to the left flank of the guard and 3 paces forward of the front rank remaining At Ease until ordered to fall in. From this point, reference will only be made to one junior officer of the guard.

13. On completion of the inspection, the warrant officer or SNCO of the Guard is to bring the Guard to Attention, salute the guard commander, and take up position in the Guard or with the colour party. The guard commander having returned the salute, is to take up position 12 paces forward of the centre of the front rank (on all occasions - this is prior to the guard commander taking up parade position) and order:

**“GUARD OF HONOUR, CLOSE ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS”.**

If a colour or standard is to be paraded, the order is to be: **“INWARDS DRESS”**. The warrant officer or SNCO of the guard is to supervise the dressing.

“EYES FRONT”.

The guard commander is then to give the command:

“FALL IN THE OFFICER”

whereupon the officer is to come to Attention, salute, and march into position in Quick Time, halting 3 paces in front of the front rank. The guard commander returns the salute of the junior officer, waits until the junior officer is in position and gives the command:

“OFFICERS DRAW SWORDS”.

The officers draw swords together taking the time from the guard commander.

14. When a colour or standard is to be paraded, the guard commander is to give the following orders:

**“GUARD OF HONOUR SLOPE ARMS
MARCH ON THE QUEEN'S COLOUR/SQUADRON STANDARD
PRESENT ARMS”.**

By this time the colour/standard will have been uncased and ‘Point of War’ played prior to the march on. The ‘Royal Air Force March Past’ will be played as the colour/standard is marched on. When both a colour and a standard are to be paraded, the standard is to be marched on first and when in position is to pay compliments to the colour when the colour is subsequently marched on.

When the colour/standard party is in position and the escorts to the colour/standard have presented arms, the guard commander is to give the following orders:

**“SLOPE ARMS, MOVE TO THE RIGHT/LEFT IN COLUMN OF ROUTE
RIGHT/LEFT TURN”.**

After turning, the officers and the colour/standard party take post as for Column of Route. If a colour or standard is not to be paraded, the guard is brought to the Slope, and the same orders apply for the march on:

**“GUARD OF HONOUR BY THE LEFT (RIGHT)
QUICK MARCH”.**

When the guard arrives at the review area, the guard commander marches to a central position, halts, faces the guard, and orders:

**“GUARD OF HONOUR HALT
INTO LINE RIGHT/LEFT TURN”.**

Officers take post and the colour/standard party takes post on orders of the colour/standard bearer. The guard commander then orders:

**“SHOULDER ARMS,
FORM TWO RANKS, OPEN ORDER MARCH
WITHOUT INTERVALS RIGHT (INWARDS) DRESS”.**

When opening order in two ranks the rear rank only is to move two paces backwards. The warrant officer or SNCO of the Guard is to supervise the dressing and when satisfied, report: **"GUARD STEADY"**. When the warrant officer or SNCO has returned to his position the guard commander is to order:

**“EYES FRONT
STAND AT EASE
STAND EASY”.**

Note: Only to be given if a long wait is anticipated and not to be given when a colour/standard is on parade.

At this point the guard commander is to move into position in line with the junior officer. When the arrival of the ‘Personage’ is imminent the guard commander is to bring his guard to the At Ease position by ordering:

“GUARD OF HONOUR”.

Personnel assume the At Ease position on the word: "Honour". When the ‘Personage’ reaches a point about 50 metres from the dais the guard commander orders:

“GUARD OF HONOUR SHUN”

and when about 10 metres from the dais:

“SLOPE ARMS”

when the ‘Personage’ is in position and settled on the dais:

**“GUARD OF HONOUR ROYAL (GENERAL) SALUTE
PRESENT ARMS”.**

Whereupon the band is to play the appropriate National Anthem or the Royal Air Force General Salute. The colour and/or standard is to be lowered or Let Fly, as appropriate, in time with the Anthem or Salute.

15. At the end of the salute the guard commander is to give the following orders:

**“GUARD OF HONOUR SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The guard commander is then to march forward, halt at between 3 and 5 metres from the dais, salute, and report:

“YOUR MAJESTY/YOUR ROYAL HIGHNESS”

or the correct form of address for the Head of State. If the 'Personage' has no title or specific form of address, "Sir" or "Ma'am" is to be used.

**“ROYAL AIR FORCE GUARD OF HONOUR PARADED FOR YOUR INSPECTION
SIR/MA'AM”.**

The guard commander is then to turn half right and accompany the 'Personage' to the Guard. The accompanying officer should follow the 'Personage' and the guard commander. At all times the 'Personage' is to be nearest to the rank being inspected and the guard commander is to change position at the end of the front rank. It is customary to inspect only the front of each rank, not the rear. The band is to play appropriate music during the inspection. When a colour or standard is paraded, the inspecting party is to pay compliments when they pass the colour or standard during the inspection of the front and rear ranks. At the right flank of the rear rank the guard commander is to stand clear of the 'Personage', halt, salute and report:

**“CEREMONIAL COMPLETED PERMISSION TO
CARRY ON SIR/MA'AM?”**

The accompanying officer is then to invite the 'Personage' either to inspect the band, or escort him/her directly to the dais, or his/her transport positioned on the right flank of the guard. The guard commander returns to position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight facing the dais. The guard remains at Attention until the 'Personage' has left the review area. A second Royal or General Salute is not to be given when the 'Personage' departs except when specially ordered for State Visits.

16. When the 'Personage' has left the review area, the guard commander is to give the following orders:

**“GUARD OF HONOUR SLOPE ARMS
CLOSE ORDER MARCH
FORM THREE RANKS
RIGHT (INWARDS DRESS)
EYES FRONT
MOVE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT) IN COLUMN OF ROUTE
RIGHT (LEFT) TURN”.**

Officers and the colour/standard party take post as for Column of Route.

**“GUARD OF HONOUR BY THE LEFT (RIGHT)
QUICK MARCH”.**

The band will take up position during the close order and forming of three ranks. The Guard then marches to the unit parade ground or suitable area.

17. On reaching the unit parade ground the guard commander takes up position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight. The Guard is halted, turned into Line and the colour/standard party is marched off parade. When both a colour and a standard are on parade the colour is marched off first. The guard commander gives the following orders:

**“GUARD OF HONOUR HALT
INTO LINE LEFT (RIGHT) TURN”.**

Officers and colour/standard party take post in Line:

**“MARCH OFF THE QUEEN'S COLOUR/SQUADRON STANDARD
PRESENT ARMS”.**

After the ‘Point of War’ is played, the colour/standard party marches off to the ‘The Royal Air Force March Past’. The colour/standard is to be ‘cased’ off the parade ground under the orders of the colour/standard bearer. When the colour/standard is clear of the parade the guard commander orders:

**“SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS
FALL OUT THE OFFICER”.**

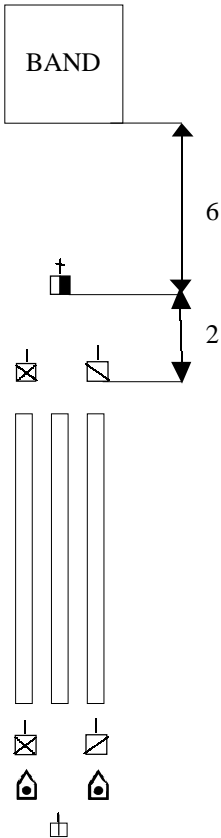
The officer marches forward, halts in front of the guard commander and salutes. The guard commander returns the salute and then orders the officer to Return Swords taking the time from the guard commander. When the officers have returned their swords the junior officer pauses, turns to the right and marches around behind the guard commander, halts and turns into line. The guard commander then hands over the guard to the warrant officer or SNCO of the guard. The guard commander and officer turn to their right and march off parade.

Annexes:

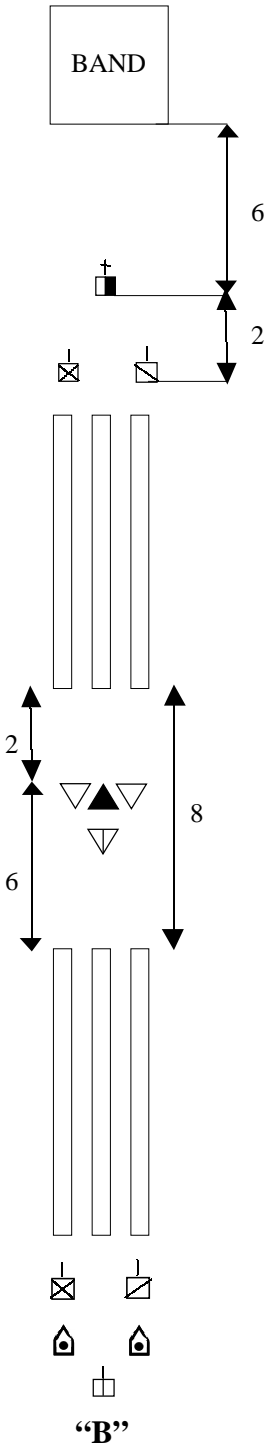
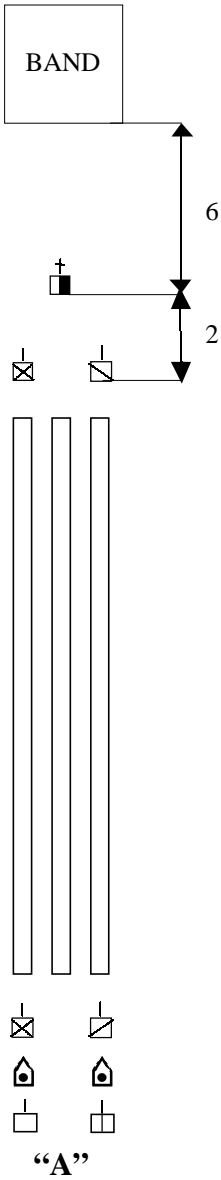
- A. Guards of Honour in Column of Route.
- B. Guards of Honour in Line.
- C. Combined Colour/Standard Party.

GUARDS OF HONOUR IN COLUMN OF ROUTE

**Guard of Honour in Column of Route
 (Half-Guard)**



**Royal Guard of Honour in Column of Route
 "A" - Without Colour (including 2nd junior officer)
 "B" - With Colour**



LEGEND

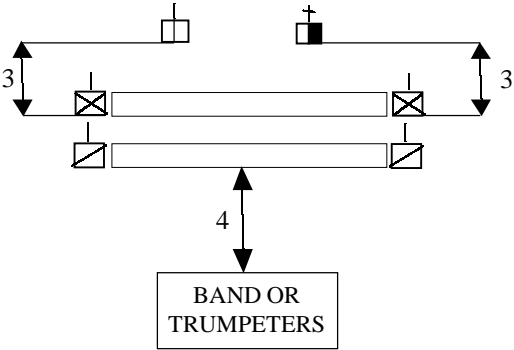
- ☒ Squadron Commander
- ▲ Colour Bearer
- ▽ Colour Escorts
- ▽ Colour W.O.
- ☒ Marker
- 🏠 Trumpeter
- ☒ Guide
- ☐ Supernumerary NCO
- ☐ Junior Officer

Key - See Part 2 Chapter 7 Annex A

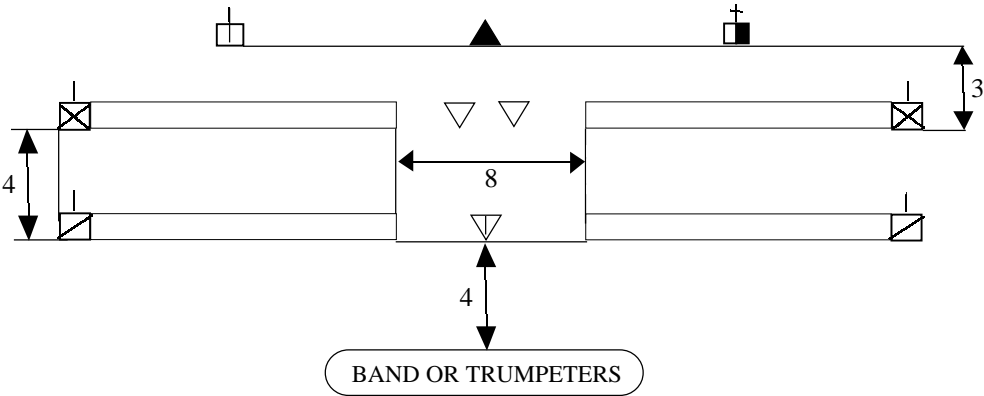
Note - When a band is not on parade, trumpeters are to be utilised.

GUARDS OF HONOUR IN LINE

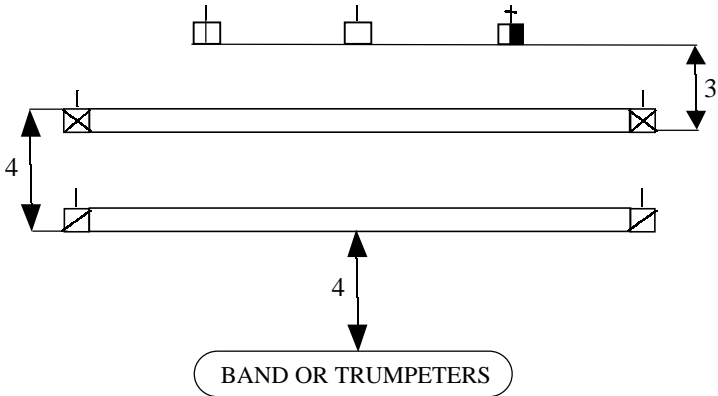
Guard of Honour in Line (Half-Guard)



Royal Guard of Honour in Line (with Colour)



Royal Guard of Honour in Line (without Colour)

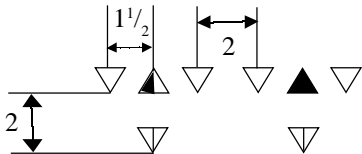


Note - includes 2nd junior officer

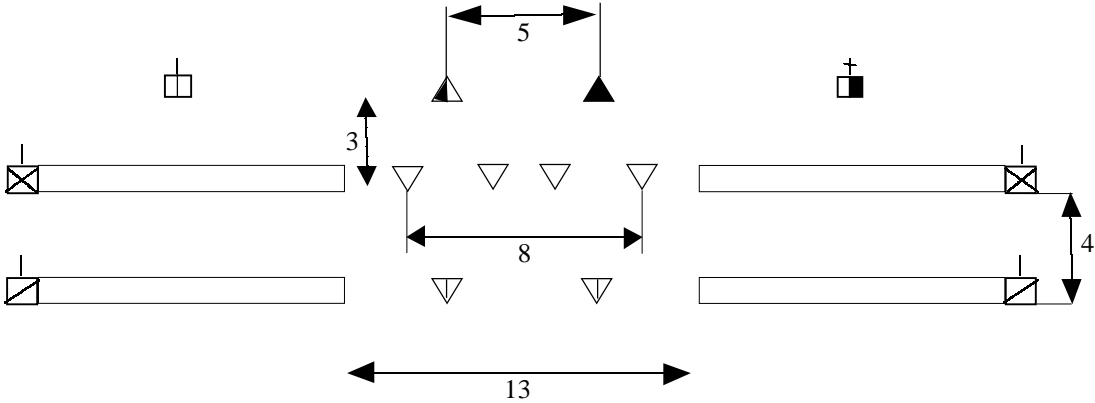
See Key - See Part 2 Chapter 7 Annex A.

COMBINED COLOUR / STANDARD PARTY

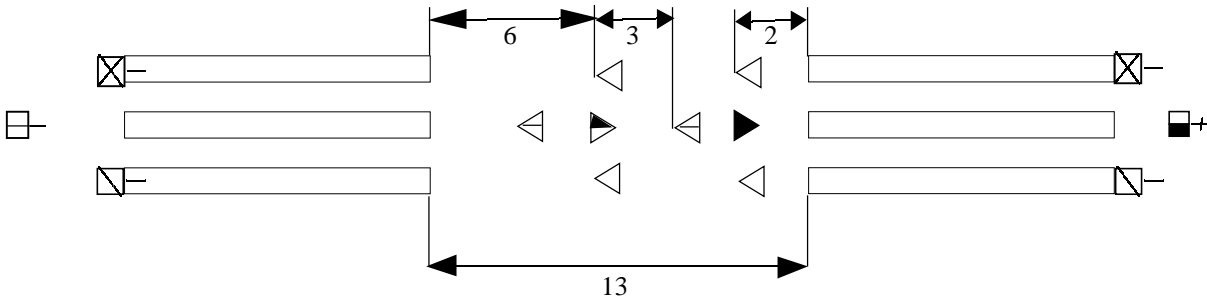
Marching On



With a Royal Guard of Honour in Line



With a Royal Guard of Honour in Column of Route



See Key - See Part 2 Chapter 7 Annex A.

PART 2 - CHAPTER 12

QUEEN'S COLOURS AND SQUADRON STANDARDS

AP 3327 - COLOURS AND STANDARDS IN THE ROYAL AIR FORCE

1. AP 3327 is the source document for the history and etiquette surrounding colours and standards. AP 818 complements AP 3327 by providing the parade ceremonial for colours and standards as well as restating parts of the AP 3327 that provide relevant detail. AP 3327 deals with the following subjects:

- a. Origins and Traditions of Military Colours.
- b. Nature and Importance of Colours in the Royal Air Force.
- c. Consecration and presentation of Colours and Standards (for colours see Part 2 Chp 13 and for standards see Part 2 Chp 14).
- d. Use of Colours/Standards and the Paying of Compliments (see below).
- e. The Service for the Presentation of an Ensign to a Church.
- f. The Service for Consecrating a Colour or Standard.
- g. Battle Honours of the Royal Air Force.
- h. Method of Mounting Colours and Standards.

QUEENS COLOURS

OCCASIONS ON WHICH A QUEEN'S COLOUR MAY BE PARADED

2. A Queen's Colour may be paraded¹:
 - a. By a guard of honour mounted for Her Majesty the Queen, or another member of the Royal Family.
 - b. By a guard of honour mounted for a visiting sovereign or head of a state.
 - c. At a parade in celebration of the birthday of the Sovereign.
 - d. At a parade mounted on the anniversary of the formation of the Royal Air Force. The anniversary date is 1st April each year. When this date falls on a Sunday or during the Easter period the parade is normally to be held on the following Thursday.

¹ As stated in AP 3327 Colours and Standards in the Royal Air Force Chp 4.

e. Other ceremonial occasions will arise at which it is fitting that a Queen's Colour is paraded. In the case of the Queen's Colour for the Royal Air Force in the United Kingdom, the decision is made by Headquarters Personnel and Training Command. The Commandant of the Royal Air Force College Cranwell, the Commandant of the Central Flying School, the Officer Commanding No 1 School of Technical Training, the Commandant General of the Royal Air Force Regiment, the Honorary Inspector General, Royal Auxiliary Air Force and the Officer Commanding Royal Air Force Halton, will decide when their Colours may be paraded.

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

3. **Composition of Queen's Colour Parties and Escort Flights.**

- a. The Retiring Colour Party - Colour bearer: Junior officer.
Colour escort: Two SNCOs.
- b. The Receiving Colour Party - Colour bearer: Junior officer.
Colour escort: Warrant Officer & two SNCOs.
- c. Queen's Colour Escort Flights - A flight lieutenant in command.
One junior officer.
Four SNCOs as guides and markers.
Forty eight Other Ranks in each flight.

4. **Dress.** Ceremonial dress as ordered.

- a. **Colour Bearer.** The colour belt is to be worn over the left shoulder with the socket in the centre of the body. The sword belt is to be passed through the loops inside the colour belt. Medals, if worn, are to be worn on the tunic in the normal manner.
- b. **Sashes - Colour Warrant Officer and Colour Escorts.** Colour WOs and SNCO Colour Escorts are to wear light blue sashes over the right shoulder, outside the webbing belt and behind the bayonet handle, with the tassels on the right hand side of the bayonet scabbard. The entitlement for other personnel to wear the sash is detailed in AP1358 Dress Regulations for the RAF.

5. **Arms.** Officers and warrant officers are to wear swords. All other personnel are to be armed with rifles and bayonets. Warrant Officers are not to carry Pace Sticks when acting as Colour Warrant Officer.

6. **Draping.**

- a. Whenever the Queen's Colour is paraded at a State or service funeral it is to be draped with a black bow. The Queen's Colour is not to be draped when paraded on any other occasion.

b. The Queen's Colour is to be draped with a piece of crepe 2.4 metres (8 ft) long, 32.5 cms (1 ft 1 inch) wide, tied in a bow around the foot of the gilt crown in such a manner that the span of the bow is 30 cms (1 ft). The ends should be pointed in a single point and hang about halfway down the colour.

7. **Transport.** A Queen's Colour may be moved either by air or by road but its safety must always be assured. When in transit it is to be cased and is to be accompanied by its Colour Belt and the Queen's Colour Record book. The colour bearer should always accompany the colour during a move.

POSITION OF THE QUEEN'S COLOUR ON PARADES

8. **Squadron Parades.** With a Queen's Colour present on a squadron parade the colour and the squadron commander would be positioned as follows:

a. **Close Column of Flights.** Colour - 6 paces centrally in front of No 1 Flight. Squadron Commander – 12 paces in the same direction.

b. **Line of Flights.** The colour is to be positioned according to the number of flights on parade. When there are an even number of flights on parade the colour party would be central and between the flights, with the colour in line with the flight commanders. When there are an odd number of flights then the colour party would be in front of the centre flight with the colour 6 paces in front of the front rank. The squadron commander is to be 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight.

c. **Column of Route.** Colour - 6 paces in front of the guide and marker of No 2 Flight and 2 paces in rear of the last section of supernumeraries of No 1 Flight. These distances are to be adjusted as the squadron marches off. Squadron Commander – 6 paces in front of the leading guide and marker.

d. **Review Order.** In Close Column of Flights, and in Line of Flights, the colour and the squadron commander are to be positioned as above.

9. **Wing Parades.** With a wing on parade, the colour is paraded with No 1 Squadron.

10. **Guards of Honour.** When the colour is paraded with a Royal Guard of Honour, the colour and guard commander are to be positioned as shown in the Annexes to Part 2 Chp 11 (see also Note 1 to para 4 of the same chapter).

11. **Route-Lining.** When a colour is paraded for route-lining the colour is to be on the right hand side of the route (as seen by the Procession) and is to move to the other side of the route if the procession is returning by the same route. The colour is normally to be paraded in the centre of the length of route lined by the Royal Air Force.

COMPLIMENTS TO BE PAID - COLOURS AND STANDARDS

12. **Compliments by the Colour Party.** When the Queen's Colour is uncased, the colour party and escort flight are not to pay compliments except to persons entitled to the compliment of having the Queen's Colour lowered (the Royal Salute) or "Let Fly" (a General Salute)². When the Queen's Colour is cased the colour party and escort flight are to pay such compliments as would be appropriate if no colour were present.
13. **Compliments to the Colour/Standard.** Personnel are to pay compliments to a colour/standard party as follows:
- a. **Individuals.** Individuals are always to salute an uncased colour or standard when passing or being passed by it. Personnel armed with rifles are to salute when passing an uncased colour or standard and are to halt and Present Arms if the colour or standard passes the individual.
 - b. **Parties on the March – Uncased Colours/Standards.** The procedures for paying compliments to uncased colours/standards are as follows:
 - 1) **Colour/Standard Party and an Unarmed Party on the March.** When an uncased colour or standard passes an unarmed party on the march, the unarmed party is to halt, turn into line and salute, and the colour or standard, if at the Slope, is to be brought to the Carry.
 - 2) **Colour/Standard Party and an Armed Party on the March.** If the colour/standard party passes an armed party on the march, the armed party is to halt, turn into line and Present Arms.
 - 3) **Party on the March Passing Uncased Colour/Standard.** When a party on the march passes an armed party at the halt with an uncased colour/standard at the Order, the party at the halt is to be brought to the Slope, the colour to the Carry and the marching party is to give Eyes Right/Left.
 - c. **Parties on the March – Cased Colours/Standards.** Parties with a cased colour or standard are always to pay compliments to an uncased colour or standard.
 - d. **Parties on the March – Equal Seniority.** When two parties pass, each carrying a cased or uncased colour or standard no compliments are to be exchanged.
 - e. **Colour/Standard Party Marching onto Parade.** When a colour or standard party is marching onto parade, officers are to be in Review Order.
 - f. **Colour/Standard Party on Parade.** The Stand Easy is not to be adopted by personnel when a colour or standard party is on parade.

² See QR J152 and QR 164 - Honours and Salutes to Members of the Royal Family and other Personages.

g. **Inspecting Officer's Party during a Parade.** The inspecting officer's party is to pay compliments to the colour/standard when passing to the rear of the colour/standard party during an inspection. An officer with a drawn sword is to bring the sword to the Recover and turn the head in the appropriate direction. An officer without a sword is to salute with the hand and turn the head accordingly.

PRECEDENCE OF COLOURS AND STANDARDS ON PARADE

14. Whenever a Queen's colour is paraded with a squadron standard, the Queen's colour is to be paraded with No 1 Squadron and the squadron with the standard is to be No 2 Squadron on the parade. When more than one squadron standard is on parade the squadron standards are to be positioned in order of (squadron) seniority from the right. However, on Freedom of Entry parades the colour is normally paraded centrally in front of the dais or saluting point; the squadron standards remain in order of seniority from the right.

THE DISPLAY OF QUEEN'S COLOURS AND SQUADRON STANDARDS

15. Colours and standards are normally to be kept horizontally hung in a secure room in the Officers' Mess. They are to be displayed only on formal occasions; for example when an important personage is being officially entertained at a station. The approved method of mounting colours and standards is shown in AP 3327 (Colours and Standards in the Royal Air Force) Appendix F. When more than one squadron standard is on display, they are to be positioned in order of seniority from the right. When a Queen's colour is displayed with squadron standards it is to be positioned centrally in front of the standards on its own plinth.

SQUADRON STANDARDS

OCCASIONS ON WHICH STANDARDS MAY BE PARADED

16. Squadron standards are less limited in use than Queen's Colours and may be paraded on any occasion considered suitable by the squadron commander. The following list of occasions is a guide ³:

- a. Ceremonial parades.
- b. Guards of honour.
- c. Route-lining detachments.
- d. Service funerals of squadron personnel or during Battle of Britain or other important church services.

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

17. Except as hereinafter specified, the procedure for squadron standards should conform to that for Queen's Colours, whenever paraded for ceremonial purposes.

18. Standards are awarded to operational squadrons that have been in existence for 25 years (including existence as units of the Royal Naval Air Service and the Royal Flying Corps). Standards may also be awarded to squadrons which have been in existence for a shorter period, but which have earned the Sovereign's appreciation for outstanding operational service.

19. Squadron standards are to be carried, attended, and escorted by officers and personnel of the squadron to which the standard has been awarded or by personnel who support the squadron in its operational role. The standard bearer should hold the rank of pilot officer or flying officer. He should be a General Duties officer, except in the case of RAF Regiment squadrons. The standard warrant officer does not carry a sword.

POSITION OF STANDARDS ON PARADE

20. When the Queen's Colour is paraded with the squadron standard on a wing parade, No 1 Squadron is to escort the Queen's Colour and the squadron with the standard is to be No 2 Squadron on the parade. The squadron standard is to be marched on first, and when in position, the Queen's Colour is to be marched on from the left flank across the front of the parade and the squadron standard is to be lowered in salute. Whenever more than one squadron standard is paraded, they are to take precedence on the basis of the date of award. The most senior is to be on the right of the parade. Note that this procedure does not apply when a royal guard of honour is mounted.

21. When a Queen's Colour and a squadron standard are to be paraded together with a

³ As stated in AP 3327 Colours and Standards in the Royal Air Force Chp 4.

royal guard of honour, the procedure to be followed is in Part 2 Chp 11 paras 9 and 14 and Annex C. Note that at all times the Queen's Colour is to be on the right, facing in the direction of march.

THE SALUTE BY LOWERING THE STANDARD

22. In addition to those personages to whom the Queen's Colour is lowered, standards are to be lowered in salute to Admirals of the Fleet, Field Marshals and Marshals of the Royal Air Force.

PARADE PROCEDURES FOR A COLOUR OR STANDARD PARTY

23. The parade procedures for a colour or standard party are at Annex A. This Annex is comprised of rules for parties on parade, compliments, marching onto and off parade, repositioning on parade and taking part in a RGOH.

COLOURS AND STANDARDS IN CHURCH

24. The ceremonial procedure for parading colours and standards in church is detailed at Annex B. This Annex is comprised of rules for drill, carriage of weapons and wearing of head-dress by parties, ceremonial to and from the altar and ceremonial for laying-up a colour or standard.

Annexes:

- A. Parade Procedures for a Colour or Standard Party.
- B. Ceremonial in Church including Laying Up.

PARADE PROCEDURES FOR A COLOUR OR STANDARD PARTY

1. All references to colours in this Annex apply to standards unless stated otherwise.

RULES FOR CARRYING COLOURS AND STANDARDS

2. **At the Halt.** At the Halt, the Colours will never be sloped; they will be held at the Carry or Order depending on whether the troops are at the Slope or the Shoulder but during an inspection, when the men are at the Shoulder, Colours will be at the Carry. When a colour party is turned about, the SNCO escorts are to turn inwards towards the colour, i.e. one of them will execute a Left About Turn.

3. **On the March.** The colour party is never to be marched in file. Whilst on the march, Colours will always be carried at the Slope, except on the following occasions when they will be at the Carry:

- a. Marching onto and off the parade ground.
- b. On the saluting base.
- c. Marching past.
- d. Advancing in Review Order.
- e. Marching in Slow Time down the ranks while trooping the Colour.
- f. Marching through cities/towns which have conferred their freedom on the RAF station.
- g. When compliments are being paid to the uncased colour by a body of personnel.

RULES FOR PAYING COMPLIMENTS WITH COLOURS AND STANDARDS

4. The Colours will be Let Fly as the caution is given for a Royal or General Salute and whilst marching past in Quick Time. The Colours must be caught immediately after: "Eyes Front" is given.

5. Colours and standards will be lowered during a Royal Salute as detailed in Queen's Regulations ¹. Colours and standards will not be lowered at a General Salute, but only Let Fly.

¹ QR J152 and QR 164.

MARCHING COLOURS ONTO PARADE

6. The colour is to be uncased before the main parade is joined. The colour party is to bring the colour from the place where it is normally kept and is to form up 25 paces from and 10 paces forward of the left flank of the parade, facing the centre of the parade ground. When the parade is called to Attention, stood At Ease, or ordered to Slope Arms, the colour party is to conform to the movements. When the parade is fully prepared (ie at the Slope Arms position), the parade commander is to take up position facing the parade, 12 paces in front of and in the centre of the formation, and is to give the command:

“PARADE MARCH ON THE QUEEN’S COLOUR PRESENT ARMS”.

7. The band is to play “Point of War”, after which the bearer is to give the command:

“COLOUR PARTY BY THE CENTRE QUICK MARCH”.

8. The band is to play the Royal Air Force March to march the colour party onto parade. The colour party is to march across the front of the parade, and when it reaches the centre it is to wheel to the right, march to its position in the centre of the formation where the colour bearer then gives the following commands:

“COLOUR PARTY HALT COLOUR PARTY ABOUT TURN”.

The Colour warrant officer is to execute a Right Turn and step off and left wheel to a position 2 paces behind the bearer in 10 paces ie 8, 1-2. The bearer is to take 3 paces forward to take up parade position in line with the flight commanders. The escorts are then to Present Arms.

9. The parade commander is then to give the following commands:

“PARADE SLOPE ARMS PARADE SHOULDER ARMS”.

The parade commander is then to return to the normal position (either central to the parade or in front of No 1 Flight). From this point onwards the colour party are to act as part of the parade.

MARCHING COLOURS OFF PARADE

10. At the end of the parade, the parade commander is to take up a position 12 paces in front of the parade in the front and centre of the formation and is to give the command:

“PARADE SLOPE ARMS MARCH OFF THE QUEEN’S COLOUR PRESENT ARMS”.

11. The band is to play “Point of War”, after which the colour bearer is to give the command:

“COLOUR PARTY BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

The band is then to play the Royal Air Force March, to march the colour party off parade.

12. The bearer is to Mark Time for two paces, and is then to step short until the escorts are in line with him. When the colour escorts are in line with the bearer, the colour party is to left wheel and march across the front of the parade and return to a position 25 paces to the left flank of the parade to case the colour and dismiss the colour party.

13. When the colour party has left the parade ground the parade commander is to give the command:

“PARADE SLOPE ARMS”.

The parade is then to be dismissed in the normal manner.

PROCEDURE WHEN A COLOUR IS ON PARADE WITH A SQUADRON

14. **Forming Column of Threes or Column of Route from Line.** To reposition the colour party from the centre of a 3 flight squadron to its new position between Nos 1 and 2 Flights, the colour bearer waits until the squadron has turned, and then gives the commands:

**“COLOUR PARTY TAKE POST
RIGHT WHEEL QUICK MARCH
RIGHT WHEEL LEFT WHEEL HALT”.**

15. **Forming Line from Column of Threes or Column of Route.** To bring the colour party in front of the centre of a 3 flight squadron, the colour bearer waits until the squadron has turned and then gives the commands:

**“COLOUR PARTY ABOUT TURN
TAKE POST LEFT WHEEL QUICK MARCH
LEFT WHEEL RIGHT WHEEL HALT”.**

16. **Forming Column of Flights (or Close Column) from Column of Route.** The colour party will be leading No 2 Flight as in squadron drill. On the command of the colour bearer, the colour party is to wheel to its position in front of No 1 Flight in column (or close column) and halt.

17. **Turning About.** After turning about with the squadron, and after the warrant officer has taken his post behind the colour, the colour bearer is to march the colour to its new position via the right flank.

WITH A ROYAL GUARD OF HONOUR

18. **Marching on the Queen's Colour.** The colour party is to halt with the colour bearer and the two escorts in Line with the front rank of the guard and centrally between the flights.

19. **Forming Column of Route from Line.** After the Royal Guard has been turned, the colour bearer is to give the command:

“COLOUR PARTY ABOUT TURN”.

On receipt of the command, the colour warrant officer is to turn to face the opposite direction to which the Guard has turned, the SNCO escorts are to turn inwards towards the colour. The colour Bearer is to execute an About Turn and is to march forward three paces to resume his position in between the SNCO escorts. The colour bearer is then to give the command:

**“COLOUR PARTY TAKE POST
LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL
QUICK MARCH”.**

On receipt of the command, the colour bearer and SNCO escorts are to wheel around to face the new direction, the colour warrant officer is to wheel around and take position behind the colour bearer. The wheel is to be completed over 6 paces ie 4, 1-2.

20. **Forming Line from Column of Route.** After the Royal Guard has turned, the colour bearer is to give the command:

**“COLOUR PARTY TAKE POST
LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL
QUICK MARCH”.**

The wheel is to be completed over 6 paces ie 4, 1-2. The colour bearer is then to march forward 3 paces to assume his parade position. When the guard is open ordered in two ranks the colour warrant officer is to be positioned in line with the rear rank, covering off the colour bearer. The colour party is to dress by the centre. The colour bearer is to cover off the parade commander who is to position himself centrally on the guard during the dressing.

CEREMONIAL IN CHURCH INCLUDING LAYING UP

GENERAL

1. **Drill in Church.** Orders in church are to be loud enough only to be heard by the colour/standard party. All drills are to be smart, dignified and above all quiet so as not to detract from the reverence of the occasion.
2. **Head-Dress in Church.** The colour or standard party are to remove head-dress once inside the church. The exceptions to this rule are the laying-up of a colour or standard and occasions when one or more members of the standard or colour party are female – in these instances males are to remove head-dress once the party is seated. The exception that applies when females form part of the colour/standard party is in place to ensure uniformity of head-dress when the colour/standard party are in the public eye.
3. **Arms in Church.** With the agreement of the appropriate ecclesiastical authority, a Queen's Colour or squadron standard may be marched up the aisle and laid on the altar at church services. Escorts will normally carry sidearms only (swords or bayonets according to rank); however, when a colour or standard is being laid up it is appropriate for escorts to be armed with rifles and to have bayonets fixed (see para 7 onwards).

CEREMONIAL IN CHURCH

4. **Entry Procedure.** A colour, standard or ensign is brought into church in the normal way. In the porch of the church (or at the west end of the nave when there is no porch), the colour or standard party is to halt and the NCO escorts are to be ordered to unfix bayonets and hand their rifles to the safe keeping of orderlies.
5. **Colour/Standard to the Altar.** Prior to the commencement of the service the colour/standard party is to be formed up with the colour/standard at the west end of the nave. When members of the clergy approach the chancel steps and have taken up their appointed places, the bearer is to give the order:

“COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY, BY THE CENTRE, SLOW MARCH”.

The band is to play a suitable slow march. When trumpeters are available, a short fanfare is to be sounded prior to the march on of the colour/standard. When no band is available the colour/standard may be marched up the aisle in Quick Time. When the party is approximately 3 paces from the chancel steps, the bearer is to give the order:

“COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY HALT”.

After a pause the bearer is to take 2 paces forward and is then to bring the colour/standard to the Port position (silk to the bearer's left). The bearer is to sink forward placing the right knee onto a stool or cushion and hand the colour/standard to the officiating chaplain. When

the chaplain has laid the colour/standard on the altar the bearer is to rise. The National Anthem is then to be played. When the Anthem has been completed, the bearer is to take two paces to the rear and adopt the normal position between the escorts. The bearer is then to give the order:

“COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY LEFT/RIGHT TURN”

whereupon the party is to turn into single file. The party is then to wait while the Colour/standard warrant officer observes a pause, turns about and marches to the rear of the party. Once the warrant officer is in position the bearer gives the order:

“COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY QUICK MARCH”

whereupon the party march to their allocated seats and take part in the service.

6. **Colour/Standard from the Altar.** At the end of the service and after the Blessing, the colour/standard party is to march in single file to the chancel steps. The bearer halts and gives the orders:

“COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY HALT INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.

After turning, the Colour/Standard warrant officer is to pause, turn about, and march to the normal position to the rear of the bearer. The bearer is then to take 2 paces forward.

As the officiating chaplain takes the colour/standard from the altar, the bearer is to sink forward placing the right knee onto the stool or cushion and receive the colour/standard in the Port position (silk to the bearer’s left). He is then to stand up, bring the Colour/standard to the Carry position and give the order:

“COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY ABOUT TURN”

whereupon the party turns about. After a pause, the warrant officer turns to the right and marches round to his normal position at the rear of the party. The bearer then gives the order:

“BY THE CENTRE SLOW MARCH”.

The band then plays the Royal Air Force March. When trumpeters are available, the slow march is preceded by a fanfare. When no band is available the colour party may be marched down the aisle in Quick Time.

When the party reaches the west end of the nave, just before the exit door (or when in the porch where there is one), the bearer is to give the order:

“COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY HALT”.

There the party recover their rifles and prepare to escort the colour/standard under arms back to the unit. Rearming the party is to be done as soon as is practicable, within the church, before exiting.

LAYING-UP OF QUEENS' COLOURS AND SQUADRON STANDARDS

7. **Arrangements.** The Chaplain-in-Chief's office is to be informed of the laying-up of squadron standards and Queen's Colours to enable appropriate liaison between RAF and civilian ecclesiastical authorities regarding the carrying of rifles in church. It is usual for a service to be arranged specifically for the laying-up of a colour or standard.

8. Colour/Standard to the Altar.

a. Prior to the commencement of the service the colour/standard party is to remain at the back of the church. The senior officer detailed to handover the colour/standard is to be seated at the inside end of the right-hand front pew.

b. At the beginning of the last verse of the hymn preceding the ceremony, the colour/standard party, under arms and wearing head-dress, is to form up with the colour/standard at the west end of the church.

c. At the end of the hymn, the band is to sound a short fanfare and then play the Royal Air Force March. The colour/standard party, with the colour/standard at the Carry, is to move forward in Slow Time and halt two paces from the Sanctuary step. The bearer's orders are:

**“COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY SLOPE ARMS
COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY BY THE CENTRE
SLOW MARCH”.**

When no band is available the colour/standard may be marched up the aisle in Quick Time.

d. The senior officer, without head-dress, is to move to the foot of the Sanctuary step, facing the colour/standard party. When the Colour/standard party is approximately 3 paces from the Sanctuary step the bearer is to give the orders:

“COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY HALT”.

e. After a pause the colour/standard bearer takes 2 paces forward and is then to bring the colour/standard to the Port position (silk to the bearer's left). When the colour/standard party reaches this position, the Chaplain-in-Chief will come to the Sanctuary step and say:

"It is an ancient and laudable custom to lay-up in the House of God the consecrated emblems of man's duty and service, there to remain for all time as a reminder of duty well done and of the strength that God supplies".

f. The senior officer is then to take the colour/standard and, turning about, is to say to the Chaplain-in-Chief:

" Venerable Sir, I ask you to receive this Queen's Colour/standard (full title) for safe lodging in the House of God until such a time as it shall pass to dust like those whose courage and devotion are enshrined in its history".

g. The Chaplain-in-Chief will reply:

"We receive this Colour/standard into the safe keeping of God's House, here to hang for all time as a reminder to those who pass by of man's duty to God, to his Sovereign, and to this country".

h. The colour bearer is to order the Present Arms and the bearer and the Colour/standard warrant officer are to salute on the third movement of arms drill. The command is:

“ESCORTS PRESENT ARMS”.

i. The Chaplain-in Chief, followed by the senior officer, will proceed to the altar rails where he will receive the colour/standard from the senior officer and lay it upon the Holy Table. The senior officer is then to turn about and resume his seat. The Chaplain-in-Chief will then say the following prayer:

"Almighty and Everlasting God, giver of all strength and grace, and Captain of our Salvation, we offer in this thy House the symbol of man's faithfulness. May thy blessing rest on those who have borne it, and may it ever remain a sign of that unity which springs from the acceptance of thy grace, who art with the Son and the Holy Spirit, one God, world without end. Amen".

j. A fanfare of trumpets is to introduce the National Anthem. When the Anthem has been completed, the bearer is to give the order:

“ESCORTS SLOPE ARMS”.

The bearer is then to take 2 paces to the rear and adopt the normal position between the escorts. The bearer then gives the orders:

“COLOUR/STANDARD PARTY RIGHT/LEFT TURN”.

The party is to turn in single file in the designated direction. The Colour/standard warrant officer is to observe a pause, turn about and march to the rear of the party. Once the warrant officer is in position the colour/standard bearer gives the order:

“QUICK MARCH”.

The colour/standard party then march to their allocated seats, and remove head-dress.

PART 2 - CHAPTER 13

QUEEN'S COLOURS – PRESENTATION

THE CONSECRATION AND PRESENTATION

1. Formation of Parade.

- a. The parade, except the escort squadron, is to be formed up in wing formation, with the front rank 14 paces from the receiving base. The escort squadron is comprised of 2 flights. If the inspection is to be carried out in a car the distance between flights and/or squadrons is to be adjusted accordingly.
- b. The escort squadron, which is to be armed, is to parade centrally on that receiving base in Line of Flights.
- c. The band is to be positioned with its front rank in line with the rearmost flights of the wing.
- d. Drums are to be piled centrally in the area between the march past line and the saluting base. Three side drums are to be used.

2. Parade Procedure.

- a. Before marching on the main parade ground, the colour party is to parade with the escort squadron as follows:

- (1) The colour bearer is to be in the supernumerary rank of officers of No 2 Flight, so that in Review Order he will be in the centre of his flight.

- (2) The colour escort of two senior NCOs is to be on the right of the supernumerary rank of NCOs of No 2 Flight. The warrant officer, with the colour cased and carried at the Slope, is to be on the left of the colour escort.

- b. When the parade has been marched on (escort squadron last with squadron commander 12 paces in front of left flank of No 1 Flight) and handed over to the parade commander, the parade is to be prepared as follows:

- (1) The officers ordered to take post in Review Order and the parade stood At Ease. The parade commander orders:

“MARCH ON THE CASED COLOUR”.

- (2) The warrant officer is to march between Nos 1 and 2 Flights to the piled drums, where he is to place the cased colour against the drums, pike to the right, and return to his previous position.

(3) The chaplains are to take up their positions facing the parade a few paces to the right of the pile of drums and in the rear of the saluting base. The senior chaplain is to be on the left.

(4) Two junior officers are to be positioned at Points A and B respectively. These officers are to act on the words of command of the parade commander.

3. **Reception of the Personage Presenting the Colour.** As the personage approaches the parade ground, the parade is to be brought to the Slope Arms. When he (or she) is in position on the dais, the Royal/General Salute is to be given. After the salute has been given and the parade is at the Shoulder Arms, the parade commander is to report to the personage who then inspects the parade.

4. **Preparation for Consecration and Presentation.** At the end of the inspection, the parade commander is to ask for permission to proceed with the ceremony. Then the following commands are to be given and movements carried out:

Parade Commander:

**“PARADE STAND AT EASE
UNCASING OFFICERS UNCASE AND DRAPE COLOUR ON DRUMS
PILE TO THE RIGHT
UNCASING OFFICERS TAKE POST
PARADE STAND EASY”.**

The parade commander is to take up his position on the right of the personage.

5. **The Ceremony.** The personage moves forward to a position behind the piled drums. The Chaplain-in-Chief is to move to a position in front of the drums, facing the personage, and the assisting chaplains are to form a line in order of seniority on the left of the Chaplain-in-Chief, facing the drums. The parade commander is now to address the Chaplain-in-Chief as follows: "Venerable Sir, on behalf of the Royal Air Force we ask you to bid God's blessing on this Colour". The Chaplain-in-Chief is to reply: "We are ready to do so", and then proceed with the Service of Consecration. Prior to the actual prayer of consecration the parade is to be brought to Attention, and stood At Ease on its completion. At the end of the service the chaplains are to move to their left front and form a line on the right of the drums. The following commands are then to be given and movements carried out:

Parade Commander:

“PARADE SHUN”.

On this command, the colour party is to move to its position without further word of command.

The colour bearer is to march forward into position to receive the colour, and there Return Swords. The warrant officer is to order the colour escorts to Shoulder Arms and turn right and march them round the right flank of No 2 Flight to their position 6 paces in front of No 2 Flight.

The personage moves round to the left in front of the drums and is handed the colour by the Station Commander.

The colour bearer is to move forward, sink on the right knee, receive the colour from the personage, rise and step backwards.

The personage gives an address, and a reply is made. After the address and reply the parade commander orders:

“PARADE SLOPE ARMS”.

The colour bearer turns about.

“GENERAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”.

On the third movement of the "Present", simultaneously:

- a. All officers salute.
- b. The bands start playing the National Anthem.
- c. The colour bearer steps off in Slow Time and halts (after turning about) whilst marking time in his position between the colour escorts, and halting on the last note of the National Anthem.

Parade Commander:

**“PARADE SLOPE ARMS
PARADE SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The personage then returns to the dais on the saluting base accompanied by the parade commander, who is to request permission for the escort squadron to march past in Review.

Parade Commander:

**“WING STAND AT EASE
ESCORT SQUADRON COMMANDER, MARCH PAST YOUR
SQUADRON IN REVIEW”.**

6. Review of the Escort Squadron.

- a. The escort squadron is to march in Column of Threes to Point 2 where it is to form Close Column of Flights. The colour party is to move with No 2 Flight. The squadron is to be dressed by the right.
- b. The wing is to be called to Attention and the escort squadron is to march past by flights in column in Slow Time. The colour party is to follow No 1 Flight at column distance and is to be followed by No 2 flight at column distance. Where Royalty of Marshal of RAF or equivalent rank from another service is present the

colour (or standard) must be lowered before Point A and raised on passing Point B.

c. On arrival at Point 3, the escort squadron is to be halted in Close Column of Flights, turned about, and dressed by the left. The wing is to be stood At Ease.

d. The wing is to be called to Attention and the escort squadron is to march past in Close Column of Flights in Quick Time. On passing Point B the colour (or standard) is allowed to fly, at Point A the standard/colour is gathered in.

e. On arrival at Point 2, the escort squadron is to be halted and turned about. The wing is to be stood At Ease.

f. The escort squadron is to march to the receiving base in Column of Threes (No 3 or 2 Flight leading) and halt, facing right, in Line of Flights. The squadron commander is to be in position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight. The squadron is to be dressed and brought to Review Order.

7. **The Advance in Review Order.** The parade commander is to bring the wing to Attention and take up his position in front of the left flank of the escort squadron. The escort squadron, led by the parade commander, is to advance in Review Order, and the Royal Salute is to be given. Standard/colour being lowered. At the end of the salute the parade is to be brought to the Shoulder, three cheers for Her Majesty the Queen are to be given (see Part 2 Chp 2), and the parade commander is to report to the personage and ask for permission to march off.

8. **Dispersal of Parade.** After the escort squadron has left the parade area, squadrons are to march off independently in Column of Route for dismissal. If a march past in Column of Route is ordered, the escort squadron is to lead. The band is to play during the dispersal or march past, and is then to march off.

PART 2 - CHAPTER 14

SQUADRON STANDARDS - PRESENTATION

PRESENTATION OF SQUADRON STANDARDS (TWO-FLIGHT SQUADRON)

1. **Dress and Arms.**
 - a. Officers. No 1 Dress, orders, decorations and medals (or greatcoats). The standard bearer is to wear the ceremonial standard belt. Swords.
 - b. Other Ranks. No 1 Dress, orders, decorations and medals (or greatcoats). Rifles and bayonets.
2. **Standard Party.** The standard party is to consist of the standard warrant officer/NCO, who will be unarmed, and two senior NCOs. The standard warrant officer is to bring the cased standard on parade. The standard bearer is to parade with No 2 Flight as a supernumerary officer, and is to cover off the right-hand file of No 2 Flight. The standard warrant officer and standard escorts are to parade on the right of the supernumerary rank of NCOs of No 2 Flight (the warrant officer on the left, with the cased standard carried at the Slope/Order), covering the third, fourth and fifth files from the right marker of the flight.
3. **Officiating Chaplains.** The chaplains are to take up a position on the right of the dais, facing the parade, the senior chaplain nearest the dais.
4. **Squadron Formation.** Number 'X' squadron is to march on at the Slope bayonets fixed, in column of threes in two flights, with supernumerary officers and NCOs and is to form Line of Flights on the receiving base (10 paces between flights). The squadron commander is positioned 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight.

Squadron Commander:

**“NUMBER X SQUADRON HALT
INTO LINE LEFT TURN
SHOULDER ARMS
FORM TWO RANKS
OPEN ORDER MARCH
WITHOUT INTERVALS RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
MARCH ON THE CASED STANDARD”.**

The standard warrant officer is to turn about, march between Nos 1 and 2 Flights, and lay the standard against the piled drums (three only) with the pike on the right and is then to return to position by the same route.

Squadron Commander:

**“STANDARD ESCORT SLOPE ARMS
OFFICERS AND STANDARD PARTY
TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER
OUTWARDS TURN”.**

The standard party turn right.

“QUICK MARCH”.

The standard bearer leads off, wheeling into position between Nos 1 and 2 Flights and two paces in front of the squadron. The standard escorts follow and open out into position in line with the front rank of the squadron and at 3 paces interval from the left and right flanks of Nos 1 and 2 Flights respectively. The standard warrant officer follows and takes up his position centrally in rear of the standard party and in line with the rear rank of the squadron. The standard party should aim to halt together (approximately 10 paces). The standard escort Shoulder Arms without further word of command.

Squadron Commander:

**“OFFICERS LEFT TURN
SQUADRON STAND AT EASE”**

Arrival of the personage presenting the standard.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SHUN
SLOPE ARMS
GENERAL/ROYAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”.**

The band is to play a General Salute/National Anthem.

**“SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The squadron commander is to report to the personage that the parade is ready for inspection.

After the inspection the squadron commander is to request permission from the personage to carry on with the parade.

5. Consecration.

Squadron Commander:

“SQUADRON STAND AT EASE”.

On this command, two officers so detailed march forward (one from Point A and one from

Point B (see Annex B to Part 2 Chp 7)) and uncase the standard. The silk is to be draped over the drums, facing the parade, and is not to touch the ground. They are then to return to their original positions and the case of the standard is to be handed to an orderly and removed from the parade.

The squadron commander moves to a position in front of the senior chaplain, approximately 3 paces from him, salutes, and says:

**“VENERABLE SIR ON BEHALF OF NO X SQUADRON
WE ASK YOU TO BID GOD’S BLESSING ON THIS STANDARD”.**

The Senior Chaplain replies:

“WE ARE READY TO DO SO”.

The squadron commander moves to a position in front of Point A facing the piled drums.

The officiating chaplains move to a position facing, and on the parade side of, the piled drums. After the consecration they return to their original positions.

Then follows the service of consecration of the standard. Before the prayer of consecration, the squadron is brought to Attention. After the prayer, the squadron is stood At Ease.

6. Presentation.

Squadron Commander:

“SQUADRON SHUN”.

The standard bearer is to march straight forward to a position 3 paces from the piled drums, and is to return swords.

The standard is then to be taken from the piled drums by the station commander and handed to the personage.

The standard bearer is to sink forward on to his right knee, receive the standard, rise, and step back.

The personage gives his/her address.

The squadron commander makes his reply.

The squadron commander then marches to a position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight.

Squadron Commander:

“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS”.

The standard bearer turns about.

**“MARCH ON THE SQUADRON STANDARD
PRESENT ARMS”.**

The band plays the National Anthem.

The standard bearer is to march in Slow Time to his position in the centre of the parade 3 paces in front of the standard escort, turn about and halt (on the last note of the National Anthem).

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The squadron commander then asks permission to carry on with the ceremonial and resumes his position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight.

**“OFFICERS TAKE POST, LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
INWARDS TURN”.**

The knee stool is to be removed from the parade area by an orderly.

**“SQUADRON CLOSE ORDER MARCH
FORM THREE RANKS
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT”.**

7. Parading the Standard.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS AT POINT 2
MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF THREES RIGHT TURN”.**

The standard party stands fast and then acts on the words of command of the standard bearer.

Squadron Commander:

“SQUADRON BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

No 1 Flight wheels at Point 1 and the standard party 7 paces further on, followed by No 2 Flight at a further 7 paces interval.

Squadron Commander (on approaching Point 2):

“SQUADRON AT THE HALT, FACING LEFT, FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF

FLIGHTS”.

Flight commanders are to halt their flights independently and left turn into line. The standard party is to left wheel into position and halt.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SHOULDER ARMS
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
SLOPE ARMS
SQUADRON MARCH PAST BY FLIGHTS IN COLUMN,
IN SLOW TIME, AT 25 PACES DISTANCE, BY THE RIGHT”.**

No 1 Flight Commander:

“NUMBER 1 FLIGHT, BY THE RIGHT, SLOW MARCH”.

The standard party and No 2 Flight follow at 25 paces interval. At Point A flight commanders are to give the word of command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT EYES RIGHT”.

As the rear rank of the flight passes Point B the flight commanders are to give the words of commands:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT EYES FRONT”.

The standard party act on the orders of the standard bearer who carries out the normal standard drill. The standard is lowered according to protocol, and this includes a Marshal of the Royal Air Force or equivalent rank in the other Services.

Squadron Commander (on approaching Point 3):

“SQUADRON, AT THE HALT, FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS”

Flight Commanders (at Point 3):

“NUMBER X FLIGHT HALT”.

so that the rear rank of No 2 Flight is in line with Point 3.

Squadron Commander:

“SQUADRON ABOUT TURN”

Supernumerary officers and NCOs are to turn about, left turn, and take up position in the rear of their flights. Flight commanders are to turn about, turn right, and take up position in front of their flights.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SHOULDER ARMS
LEFT DRESS
EYES FRONT
SLOPE ARMS
SQUADRON MARCH PAST IN CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS
BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.**

On approaching Point B:

“SQUADRON EYES LEFT”.

As the rear rank of No 1 Flight passes Point A

“SQUADRON EYES FRONT”.

As the rear rank of No 1 Flight comes in line with Point 2:

**“SQUADRON HALT
ABOUT TURN”.**

Supernumerary officers and NCOs are to carry out the same drill as at Point 3.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON FORM LINE OF FLIGHTS ON THE RECEIVING BASE NUMBER 2
FLIGHT LEADING
MOVE TO THE LEFT IN COLUMN OF THREES
LEFT TURN”**

No 2 Flight Commander:

“NUMBER 2 FLIGHT BY THE RIGHT QUICK MARCH”.

The standard party and No 1 Flight follow suit.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON
SHOULDER ARMS
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER OUTWARDS TURN
QUICK MARCH
OFFICERS LEFT TURN
SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER
BY THE CENTRE QUICK MARCH”.**

The band is to play the Advance in Review Order and the sqn is to halt after 14 paces (14, 1, 2):

“SQUADRON GENERAL/ROYAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”.

The band is to play a General Salute/National Anthem.

**“SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS
SQUADRON WILL REMOVE HEAD-DRESS (see Part 2 Chp 2)
REMOVE HEAD-DRESS
*THREE CHEERS FOR HER MAJESTY THE QUEEN
SQUADRON WILL REPLACE HEAD-DRESS
REPLACE HEAD-DRESS”.**

* Three cheers may be given to the member of the Royal Family making the presentation of the squadron standard, and not to Her Majesty herself, when such standards are presented on behalf of Her Majesty by a Member of the Royal Family.

The squadron commander is now to request permission from the personage for the squadron to march off:

Squadron Commander:

**“OFFICERS TAKE POST LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
INWARDS TURN
NUMBER X SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF ROUTE RIGHT TURN”.**

Executives and supernumeraries turn themselves again and take up position:

“SQUADRON BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

The squadron then marches off via Points 1, 2, and 3 giving an Eyes Right between Points A and B. The standard is marched off parade in a suitable area. The squadron commander is in position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No1 Flight.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON AT THE HALT
FACING LEFT/RIGHT FORM LINE OF FLIGHTS”**

whereupon the flight commanders turn left at an appropriate moment to take up their command position in front of the direction to be faced, halt, and turn to face their flights. As their flights successively come up to the position for halting, they give commands as follows:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT HALT
INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”**

If the squadron adjutant or warrant officer are marching in the column, they are to continue marching with the movements of the leading flight, halting and turning into line as usual on the flight commander's words of command, before taking up their parade positions.

Squadron Commander:

**“SHOULDER ARMS
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER OUTWARDS TURN
QUICK MARCH
LEFT TURN
SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
MARCH OFF THE SQUADRON STANDARD PRESENT ARMS”.**

The standard party march off under the command of the standard bearer. The band plays the Royal Air Force March.

Squadron Commander (when the standard is out of sight of the squadron):

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS
OFFICERS TAKE POST LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
INWARDS TURN
FALL OUT THE OFFICERS”.**

After the officers have fallen out:

“SQUADRON WARRANT OFFICER”.

The squadron commander then hands the squadron over to the squadron warrant officer, who is to unfix bayonets and dismiss the squadron.

Notes:

1. When the squadron standard is marched off parade, it is to be cased under orders from the standard bearer and taken to a place of safe custody.
2. The standard is not to be carried on parade or displayed until it has been presented.

PART 2 – CHAPTER 15

COLOURS AND STANDARDS – HANDING OVER

OCCASIONS FOR HANDING OVER

1. **Handover of a Colour.** There are few occasions on which a Queen's Colour is handed over. A Queen's Colour might be formally handed over upon a change in colour bearer (this is not obligatory), or from one unit to another unit eg on the disbandment of 1 S of TT and its reformation.
2. **Handover of a Standard.** A squadron standard might be formally handed over upon a change in standard bearer (this is not obligatory). More usually a handover would take place on the disbandment of a squadron or on the reformation of a squadron. For a disbandment parade the standard would leave the parade ground, for a reformation the standard would come onto the parade ground.

SQUADRON REFORMATION PARADE (TWO-FLIGHT SQUADRON)

3. **Standard Coming onto Parade Ground.** The standard is brought onto the parade ground by the retiring standard party – the receiving standard party are already on parade with the squadron. This parade is written for the handover of a squadron standard but applies equally to the handover of a colour.
4. **Dress and Arms.**
 - a. **Officers.** No 1 Dress, orders, decorations and medals (or greatcoats) and swords. The standard bearers are to wear the ceremonial standard belts and swords.
 - b. **Other Ranks.** No 1 Dress, orders, decorations and medals (or greatcoats). Rifles and bayonets.
5. **Standard Parties.**
 - a. **Receiving Standard Party.** The receiving standard bearer, with sword drawn, is to cover off the right-hand file of No 2 Flight. The standard warrant officer and standard escort are to parade on the right of the supernumerary rank of NCOs of No 2 Flight, covering off the 3rd, 4th and 5th files from the right marker of the flight.
 - b. The retiring standard party is to parade in standard party formation at Point A facing the squadron.
6. **Squadron Formation.** No X squadron is to march on at the Slope Arms, bayonets fixed, in column of threes in 2 flights, with supernumerary officers and NCOs, and is to form line of flights on the receiving base (10 paces between flights).

Squadron Commander:

**“NUMBER X SQUADRON HALT
INTO LINE LEFT TURN
SHOULDER ARMS
FORM TWO RANKS
OPEN ORDER MARCH
WITHOUT INTERVALS RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
STANDARD ESCORT SLOPE ARMS
OFFICERS AND STANDARD PARTY, TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER
OUTWARDS TURN”.**

The receiving standard party is to turn right

“QUICK MARCH”.

The standard bearer leads off, wheeling left into position between Nos 1 and 2 Flights and 2 paces in front of the front rank, in line with the flight commanders. The standard escorts follow and open out into position in line with the front rank of the squadron, and at 3 paces interval from the left and right flank of Nos 1 and 2 Flights respectively, and in line with the rear rank of the squadron. The standard party should aim to halt together, and the standard escorts Shoulder Arms on the orders of the standard bearer.

Squadron Commander:

**“OFFICERS LEFT TURN
SQUADRON STAND AT EASE”.**

7. Arrival of the Distinguished Guest.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SHUN
SLOPE ARMS
GENERAL/ROYAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”.**

The band is to play a General Salute National Anthem.

**“SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The squadron commander is to report to the personage that the squadron is ready for inspection.

After the inspection the squadron commander is to request permission from the personage to carry on with the parade and is then to return to a position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight.

8. Handing-Over Ceremony.

Squadron Commander:

“MARCH ON THE CASED STANDARD”.

The retiring standard party under the orders of the standard bearer marches to a central position 20 paces from and facing the squadron. An orderly (a selected aircraftman, unarmed) is to march two paces behind the warrant officer.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
STANDARD PARTY TAKE POST”.**

The receiving standard party, under the orders of the standard bearer, is to march forward to a position 5 paces from the retiring standard party.

Squadron Commander:

“STANDARD ESCORTS OUTWARDS TURN”.

The standard escorts of both standard parties are to make a three-quarter About Turn, alternatively left and right, so that they face outwards from the standard.

**“UNCASE THE SQUADRON STANDARD
SQUADRON PRESENT ARMS”.**

The standard escorts are to come to the On Guard position and the receiving standard bearer is to salute with his sword. The warrant officer of the retiring standard party is to march forward to a position that will allow him to remove the case. After the standard has been dressed the orderly is to march forward and take the case from the warrant officer, both warrant officer and orderly then salute, the orderly marches off parade, and the warrant officer takes post.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
STANDARD ESCORTS INWARDS TURN
PARADE SHOULDER ARMS
HAND OVER THE SQUADRON STANDARD”.**

The receiving standard bearer is to Return Swords and then report name, rank, and station. The retiring standard bearer is to march 4 paces forward and bring the standard to the Port, whereupon the receiving standard bearer is also to grasp the standard and the pike. The retiring standard bearer is then to say:

**“I GIVE INTO YOUR SAFE KEEPING THE STANDARD FOR
NUMBER X SQUADRON.
I CHARGE YOU TO GUARD AND DEFEND IT”.**

The receiving bearer is to reply:

“I WILL DO SO”.

The retiring standard bearer is to relinquish hold on the standard and pike and it is then to be brought to the Order by the receiving standard bearer. The retiring standard bearer is to march 2 paces backward and Draw Swords.

Squadron Commander:

“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS”.

The receiving standard bearer is to order the receiving standard party to turn about.

**“MARCH ON THE SQUADRON STANDARD
PRESENT ARMS”.**

When the Present Arms has been completed the receiving standard bearer is to order the receiving standard party to Slow March. The band is to play the RAF General Salute as a Slow March. The standard party is to halt in a position between Nos 1 and 2 Flights and the standard bearer is to order the standard party to turn about. The standard bearer is then to take 2 paces forward in line with the officers in Review Order.

Squadron Commander:

**“SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

On the completion of the Shoulder Arms the retiring standard bearer is to order the retiring standard party to Slope Arms, turn about and march off the parade ground. When clear of the parade ground they are to be dismissed. The squadron commander is then to move to a position in front of the Reviewing Officer and request:

“PERMISSION TO CARRY ON WITH THE CEREMONIAL SIR/MA’AM?”

and then return to position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight.

Squadron Commander:

**“OFFICERS TAKE POST LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
OFFICERS INWARDS TURN
SQUADRON CLOSE ORDER MARCH
FORM THREE RANKS
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT”.**

9. **Ceremonial.** The parade is to continue as laid down for parading the standard in the

ceremonial for the presentation of a standard (see Part 2 Chp 14). The ceremonial follows the standard pattern of the squadron review:

- a. March Past by flights via Points 1, 2, and 3. A halt and right dress at Point 2 enable the flights to correct their dressing prior to the March Past Points A and B in Slow Time. The march past may be undertaken in Quick Time at the discretion of the station commander.
- b. March Past as a squadron to Point 2 in Quick Time with an Eyes Left between Points A and B.
- c. Reform on the receiving base.
- d. Advance in Review Order and General Salute. No requirement for cheering unless royalty present.
- e. The squadron then marches off via Points 1, 2, and 3 giving an Eyes Right between Points A and B. The standard is marched off parade in a suitable area.

SQUADRON DISBANDMENT PARADE (TWO FLIGHT SQUADRON)

10. **Standard Leaving the Parade Ground.** The standard is brought onto the parade ground in the normal manner by the retiring standard party. The receiving standard party is to parade in standard party formation at Point A, facing the squadron. This parade is written for the handover of a squadron standard but applies equally to the handover of a colour.

11. **Squadron Formation.** No X squadron is to march on at the Slope Arms, bayonets fixed, in column of threes in 2 flights, with supernumerary officers and NCOs, and is to form line of flights on the receiving base (10 paces between flights).

Squadron Commander:

**“NUMBER X SQUADRON HALT
INTO LINE LEFT TURN
SHOULDER ARMS
FORM TWO RANKS
OPEN ORDER MARCH
WITHOUT INTERVALS RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER
OUTWARDS TURN
QUICK MARCH
OFFICERS LEFT TURN”.**

Whilst these movements are being carried out the retiring standard party, after uncasing, are to move to a position between Points 3 and 4 and in front of the flights.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
MARCH ON THE SQUADRON STANDARD
GENERAL SALUTE - PRESENT ARMS”.**

The band plays Points of War and the standard bearer gives the command:

“STANDARD PARTY BY THE CENTRE QUICK MARCH”.

The Standard Party then moves into a position between the flights. After the standard bearer has taken 3 paces forward the escorts Present Arms.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS
STAND AT EASE”.**

12. Arrival of the Distinguished Guest.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SHUN
SLOPE ARMS
GENERAL/ROYAL SALUTE PRESENT ARMS”.**

The band is to play a General Salute National Anthem. Any flypast should be timed for this moment.

**“SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The squadron commander is to report to the personage that the squadron is ready for inspection.

After the inspection the squadron commander is to request permission from the personage to carry on with the parade and is then to return to a position 12 paces in front of the left flank of No 1 Flight.

If the Reviewing Officer is to address the parade it would be at this point. The squadron would be stood At Ease and brought to Attention after the address.

13. Handing-Over Ceremony.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
STANDARD PARTY TAKE POST”.**

The retiring standard party move to a designated point 15 paces in front of the squadron. The standard bearer orders:

**“STANDARD PARTY BY THE CENTRE QUICK MARCH
STANDARD PARTY HALT”.**

The receiving standard party are to move from their position between the dais and Point B, to a position 5 paces in front of the retiring standard party.

The receiving standard bearer orders:

**“RECEIVING STANDARD PARTY BY THE CENTRE QUICK MARCH
RECEIVING STANDARD PARTY HALT
PRESENT ARMS
SLOPE ARMS”.**

Squadron Commander:

**“PARADE SHOULDER ARMS
HANDOVER THE SQUADRON STANDARD”.**

The receiving standard bearer to Return Swords, and report rank, name and station. Both standard bearers march 2 paces forward. The retiring standard bearer brings the squadron standard to the Port, whereupon the receiving standard bearer is also to grasp the Squadron Standard and the Pike.

The retiring standard bearer is then to say:

**“I GIVE INTO YOUR SAFE KEEPING THE STANDARD OF NUMBER X
SQUADRON. I CHARGE YOU TO GUARD AND DEFEND IT”.**

The receiving standard bearer replies:

“I WILL DO SO”.

The retiring standard bearer is to relinquish hold of the squadron standard, and it is then to be brought to the Order by the receiving standard bearer. Both standard bearers march 2 paces backwards. The retiring standard bearer Draws Swords then orders:

**“RETIRING STANDARD PARTY SLOPE ARMS
PRESENT ARMS
SLOPE ARMS
ABOUT TURN - LEFT WHEEL - QUICK MARCH”.**

The retiring standard party are to move to a position between the dais and Point A.

Squadron Commander:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
MARCH OF THE SQUADRON STANDARD
PRESENT ARMS”.**

When the Present Arms has been completed the receiving standard bearer orders:

“STANDARD PARTY BY THE CENTRE LEFT WHEEL QUICK MARCH”.

Between Points 1 and 2 the receiving standard bearer orders:

**“STANDARD PARTY HALT
ABOUT TURN
STANDARD PARTY BY THE CENTRE SLOW MARCH”.**

After leaving the parade ground the receiving standard party proceeds to a designated location to case the standard.

When the receiving standard party have marched off between Points 3 and 4 the squadron commander orders:

**“SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The squadron commander marches forward to the Reviewing Officer, salutes and requests:

“CEREMONIAL COMPLETED PERMISSION TO MARCH OFF SIR/MA’AM?”

14. **March Off.** When permission is granted, the squadron commander salutes, about turns and marches back to his position, facing the squadron and orders:

**“OFFICERS TAKE POST LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
OFFICERS INWARDS TURN
SQUADRON CLOSE ORDER MARCH
FORM THREE RANKS
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
SLOPE ARMS
MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF ROUTE
RIGHT TURN”.**

After a pause the flight commanders march forward to their positions at the front of their respective flights and the supernumerary officers and flight SNCOs About Turn and march to the rear of their respective flights. The squadron commander then takes post at the head of the squadron. On the beat of a drum all Executives and Supernumerary Officers and NCOs turn to face the direction of the march.

Squadron Commander:

“SQUADRON BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

The squadron commander leads the squadron, wheeling around Point 1, and again at Point 2, to bring the squadron onto the March Past Line.

Squadron Commander:

“BY THE RIGHT”.

When the squadron commander is abreast of Point A, No 1 flight commander orders the Eyes Right for No 1 Flight. When No 2 Flight Commander is abreast of Point A he gives the order for No 2 Flight. The Eyes Front is to be called by the flight commanders when the last person of their respective flights is abreast of Point B. The squadron is then marched back to the form up area, halted and turned into line. The squadron commander is then to fall out the officers and hand the parade over to the squadron warrant officer.

PART 2- CHAPTER 16

THE ROYAL AIR FORCE ENSIGN

1. The RAF Ensign has the Union insignia in the top left quadrant and a RAF roundel in the bottom right quadrant; the background is light blue. The ensign is flown at RAF units and is available in two sizes (stock numbers 8345.99.1251117 and 8345.99.1251347 (large)). The RAF Ensign is rarely carried in ceremonial as it is not consecrated (AP 3327 refers); but when such ceremonial does take place, the Ensign Party is to consist of an officer and 2 SNCOs.
2. The RAF Ensign is not to be paraded on the ceremonial parade ground or to be escorted by bodies of personnel. Coffins are never to be dressed with the ensign.

HANDLING THE ROYAL AIR FORCE ENSIGN

3. Flags are fitted with a short length of rope, known as the tack, to facilitate fastening to the halyard of the unit flag mast (see Annex A). This is sewn in permanently to the sleeve of the flag and runs from top hoist corner to the bottom hoist corner then extends further down in length, about as much again as the depth of the flag. At either end of the tack is fitted an Inglefield clip. Named after their Royal Naval inventor (later an Admiral), Inglefield clips are bronze C-shaped swivel hooks which are mutually interlocking and serve to fasten the flag to the halyard. In some cases the tack is fitted instead with a toggle at the top and a loop at the other end; the halyard on the mast or staff must be fitted to correspond. The action of attaching the flag to the halyard preparatory to hoisting is known as "bending on".
4. When hoisting or hauling down the Royal Air Force Ensign, an NCO is to be detailed for the duty. The NCO is to ensure that it is handled with becoming dignity and at no time is it to touch the ground.
5. **Hoisting.** The ensign is to be bent on to the halyard (taking care that the head of the flag is uppermost, thus ensuring that the flag will not be hoisted upside down) and the folds laid over the free arm. The flag is then hoisted slowly and reverently, keeping the halyard gently taut all the time otherwise the clip or toggle may disconnect from its counterpart on the halyard. On completion of the hoisting the NCO is to ensure that the flag is close up to the top of the mast (or staff) and secure the halyard neatly to the cleat (see Annex A) keeping them reasonably taut (but excessive strain is to be avoided). If the flag is to be left flying for some hours, the duty NCO is to check occasionally throughout the period that the flag is still close up to the head and that the halyards are secured to the cleat. The RAF Ensign is never to be broken at the peak.
6. **Hauling Down.** The halyard is to be taken from the cleat and is to be kept taut. The ensign is to be slowly lowered, with both lengths of halyard kept gently taut all the time. When the flag comes within reach, the NCO is to use one hand to catch the flag at the fly. The folds are to be collected carefully in the arms to prevent contact with the ground. On completion of the lowering, the NCO is to remove the ensign from the halyard and join the halyard to itself by its Inglefield clips for toggle and loop), taking care not to let either end go. This is most important; it is a very tiresome business retrieving halyards, especially from a high flagstaff. The halyard is then secured neatly to the cleat and the flag folded (see para 7

below).

7. **Folding.**

a. The ensign is first to be folded along its length. For a 4m (12 ft) flag or longer, two folds will be necessary.

b. It is then to be folded to half its length. This folding is to be repeated twice more, so that the ensign is finally folded in eight folds with the top hoist (ie part of the Union) showing uppermost. For a large flag an orderly is to assist in catching it on the fly and for folding it. The orderly should stand facing the NCO and on the NCO's left hand side throughout the ceremony.

8. **Carrying.** When folded, the ensign is to be carried on the left forearm which is horizontal and extended forward (with the upper arm close into the side).

DAILY HOISTING AND HAULING DOWN

9. An officer, normally the orderly officer, is to attend the daily hoisting and hauling down of the RAF Ensign and the orderly sergeant is responsible to the station warrant officer for the task. The following procedure is to be carried out:

a. The NCO is to prepare for the ceremony by taking the halyard from the cleat. For hoisting the NCO will also unclip the halyard and bend the ensign on. The NCO then stands At Ease, back to the flagstaff, holding the halyard to await the arrival of the officer (for hoisting, the flag is over the arm). As the officer approaches and takes up position, the NCO is to come to Attention.

b. On orders from the officer, the NCO is to sound the Still (one long blast of the whistle). On hearing this, all personnel out of doors are to stop movement, turn and face the direction of the flagstaff and stand at Attention. Officers are to salute. A warrant officer who is orderly officer is to salute; other warrant officers do not.

d. The NCO, without further orders, is then to start hoisting or lowering the ensign, as appropriate.

d. On completion, the NCO is to resume the position of Attention, prior to securing the halyard. On orders from the officer, the NCO is to sound the Carry On (two blasts of the whistle) whereupon officers cease saluting and all personnel carry on with their duties.

e. The NCO then secures the halyard, (after lowering the ensign, the NCO then folds it and falls out).

HALF-MASTING

10. The half-mast position is midway between the head (or peak) and the securing cleat for the halyard. On occasions when instructions have been given for the RAF Ensign to be flown at half-mast, the following procedures are to be carried out:

- a. **Ensign to be Hoisted to Half-Mast.** The procedure described in para 9 is to be followed, the NCO first hoisting the flag up to the peak (or head) and then, as a continued movement, immediately lowering it to the half-mast position. The Carry On is not to be ordered until the flag has come to rest at half-mast.
- b. **Ensign to be Hauled Down from the Half-Mast.** The procedure described in para 9 is to be followed. The NCO first hoists the flag close up to the peak (or head) and then, as a continued movement, immediately hauling it down in the usual manner.
- c. **Ensign Already Flying.** No Still or Carry On need to be sounded for this change. The NCO detailed is to remove the halyard from the cleat and lower the flag to the half-mast position; then secure the halyard again. The ensign remains in this position until the daily lowering ceremony.

UNIT COMMANDER'S FLAG OR PENNANT

11. The appropriate rank flag or pennant of the unit commander (see Annex B) is to be flown at the head or truck of the mast. This flag remains aloft at all times during the period of command and, unlike the Ensign, is not lowered daily. When a deputy is in temporary command, the rank flag should also correspondingly be changed temporarily as appropriate, thus showing the rank of the officer in actual command at the time. No formal procedure is necessary; the flag being changed by the duty NCO when detailed by the station warrant officer. The rank flag, bent on to its own halyard which runs to the button at the head (or truck), is hauled down or hoisted and the halyard resecured to the cleat.

12. At a formation HQ flying the RAF Ensign on a staff over the main building, a rank flag is not flown together on that staff. The air officer's rank flag may, however, be flown on a small staff mounted just over the entrance porch or doorway to the HQ building.

MISCELLANEOUS UNIT FLAGS

13. In a few instances, some units have been privileged over the years to receive a non-Service flag as a gift of esteem, often in token of recognition by some local association, or with a city, some other significant corporate body or a distinguished person. Such a flag, while being recognised as a valuable emblem by the unit concerned, is never to be flown in association with any official Royal, State or Service flag ie it is not correct to fly it on the same mast as the RAF Ensign etc. It may be displayed within the unit on a separate lesser mast or pike as appropriate.

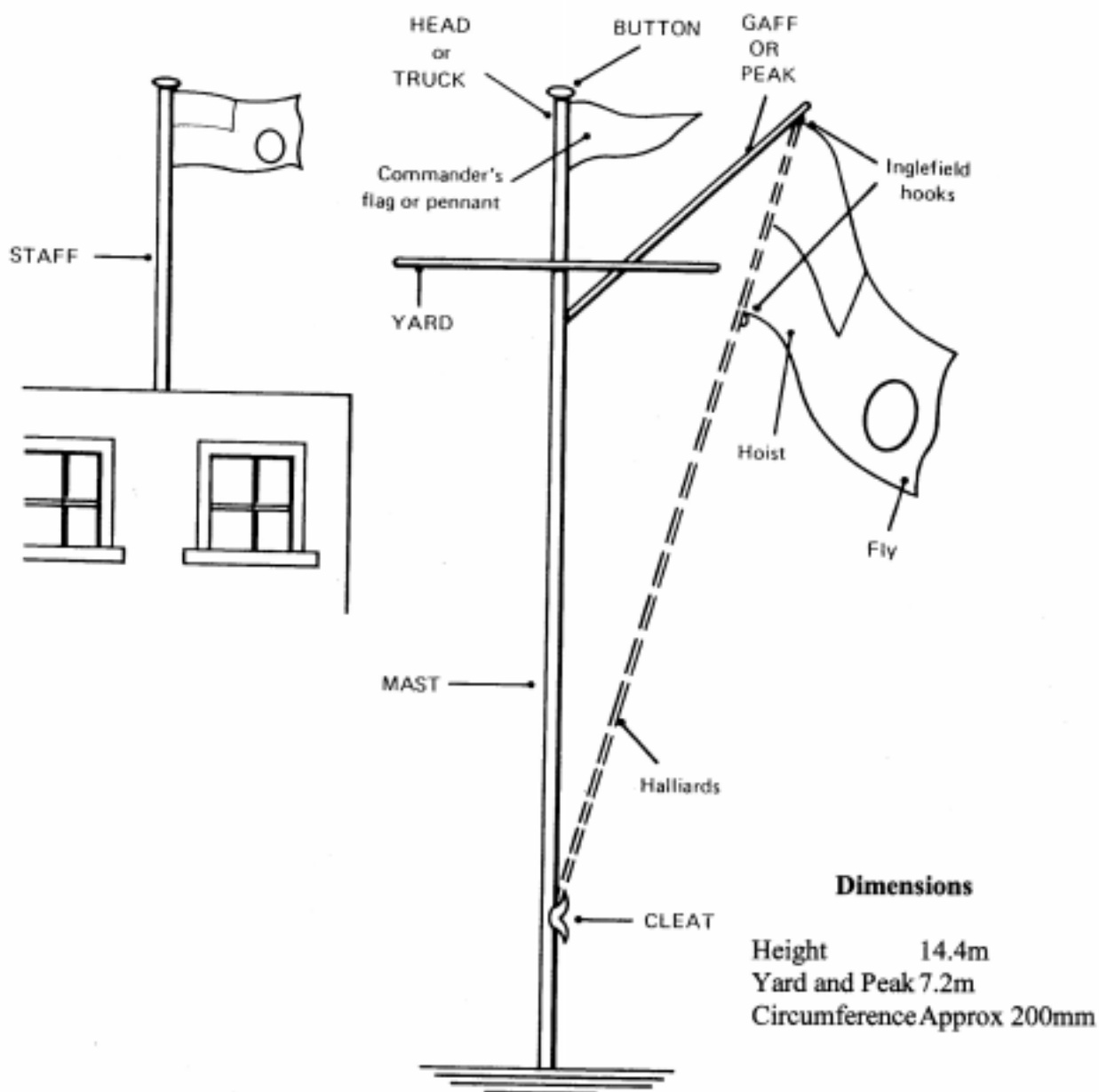
Annexes:

- A. Flagstaff and Mast.

B. Commanders' Rank Flags and Pennants.

FLAGSTAFF AND MAST

Fig 16-1 Headquarters Flagstaff Fig 16-2 Unit Flag Mast



COMMANDERS' RANK FLAGS AND PENNANTS

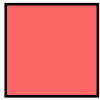
Each item is annotated with its Stock Reference Number.



MRAF
4B 1251122



Air Chf Mshl
4B 1251123



Red



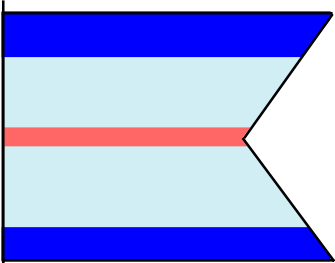
Air Mshl
4B 1251124



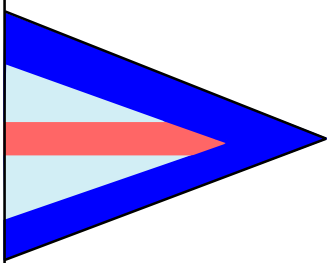
AVM
4B 1251110



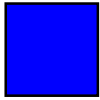
Light
Blue



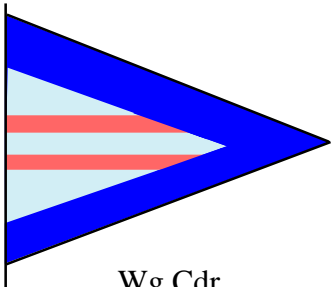
Air Cdre
8345.99.1251111



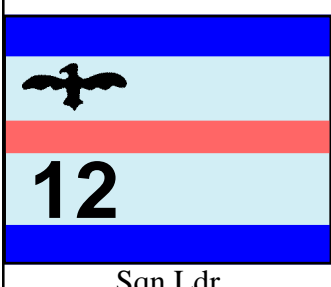
Gp Capt
8345.99.1251112



Dark
Blue



Wg Cdr
8345.99.1251114



Sqn Ldr
8345.99.1251113

PART 2 - CHAPTER 17

ROYAL STANDARDS

1. **Visit.** On the occasion of a Royal (or Presidential) visit, it may be required to break the visitor's personal flag at the masthead. This personal flag is generally known colloquially as a "Royal Standard", although it is technically a personal Banner. A true standard is the consecrated lesser colour awarded to operational Squadrons. The personal standard is broken at the head at the moment of the visitor's arrival on the Station, signifying their presence. It remains there until the personage leaves the unit at the end of the visit. Should the visitor be remaining overnight, the standard remains aloft in the same manner as the unit commander's rank flag does normally.

2. **Parade.** If the visitor is reviewing a formal parade a standard may also be broken at the parade flag staff at the moment of the Royal Salute. This standard remains flying only so long as the personage is present at the parade ground. It is immediately hauled down as the person leaves, unless this happens to be the main Station flag mast, in which case the instructions at para 1 apply.

PREPARING A STANDARD FOR BREAKING

3. The standard is to be laid flat with the head uppermost on the table. Fold the foot (or bottom) of the flag to the head and fold again. Fold the flag edge in half to the hoist, then tightly roll the standard towards the hoist. Pass the tack round the resultant roll and tuck it under itself.

4. To ensure that the standard does not break out whilst being hoisted, pass two or three turns of cotton round the roll and tie them tightly.

5. The standard can now be bent on to the halyard, taking care that the head of the flag goes uppermost (otherwise the flag will be upside down) hoist the roll to the staff or mast head, where it replaces the commander's rank flag.

BREAKING

6. At the appropriate moment, a sharp tug on the track end of the halyard will break the standard clear. A rehearsal before the formal occasion is strongly recommended.

HAULING DOWN

7. On departure of the distinguished visitor the standard is hauled down without ceremony by the duty NCO and the unit commander's normal rank flag is hoisted again.

ORDERING THE ROYAL STANDARD AND NATIONAL FLAGS

8. The Royal Standard and National Flags may be ordered from HQLC SM36A1.

PART 2 - CHAPTER 18

FREEDOM OF ENTRY TO A CITY OR TOWN

HISTORY

1. The action of a city, town or borough conferring upon a unit, 'Freedom of Entry with swords drawn, bayonets fixed, drums beating, bands playing and Colours or Standards flying', dates from the time when fortress walls were necessary to protect the inhabitants of the city from incursions. Bodies of armed men were refused entry to the city unless the citizens were confident that they meant no harm. Thus the granting of permission for a formed body of armed men to enter a city became a mark of the trust and confidence in which the body was held by the citizens. Today, it is the highest honour that a city, borough or town can bestow on the Royal Air Force. Before a unit accepts a Freedom, the efficacy of the situation is to be discussed with P1(Cer)(RAF).

GENERAL

2. **Initial Granting.** The granting of the Freedom normally takes the form of a ceremonial parade at which the Freedom is conferred and a Parchment Scroll is presented to the receiving unit by the Mayor or Lord Mayor. Having been given the Freedom, the unit is then free to 'exercise its right' and march through the City, Town or Borough with swords drawn, bayonets fixed, drums beating, bands playing and Colours or Standards flying. At the end of the ceremonial parade a Civic Luncheon or Dinner is normally given for the unit that has just received the Freedom.

3. **Exercising Rights.** Once awarded a Freedom, the unit will normally be invited to exercise that Freedom on an annual basis. Alternatively, the unit may take the initiative and request permission to do so. If manpower constraints apply, it would be appropriate to celebrate a joint Freedom with any other eligible Service units in the area. In any event the minimum size of parade contingent should be two flights of personnel, preferably armed, with an accompanying band. The ceremonial would normally take the form of a march past with the Mayor taking the salute and the station commander in attendance. The parade is to form up and dismiss at pre-arranged assembly areas as for the review of a squadron with flights in line, and the procession will normally be through the main thoroughfare of the town or city.

INITIAL GRANTING OF FREEDOM

4. The format of the Freedom of Entry Parade is flexible to allow for the variations in parade area and number of personnel involved. The following instructions relate to the recommended size of parade. The format of the parade is to be followed as closely as possible. These instructions have been drafted to include:

- a. A Queen's Colour and a sqn standard being paraded together. Any request for the Queen's Colour for the RAF in the United Kingdom should be made to P1(Cer)(RAF) as soon as the Freedom has been offered to the unit.
- b. An Aircraft Fly-past.

c. A support sqn (of 2 flts of 30 ORs plus SNCO guides and markers). Up to 2 additional support sqns may be employed – see para 5 below.

5. The parade is to be sized, proved and inspected before embussing at the parent unit.

6. Depending on the venue, the parade is to be marched onto the parade area, escort squadron leading, so that the completed parade is formed up with the escort squadron in front (in line of flights), and the support squadron behind (in line of flights). If there are to be more than one support sqn then each support sqn is to be in Close Column of Flights. The squadron parading the Standard is to be No 1 Squadron. The Queen's Colour party, Squadron Standard party and Scroll party are to be formed up 20 paces from the left flank and facing the centre, in a line, with the Queen's Colour party on the right, Squadron Standard party in the centre, and Scroll party on the left. It is usually convenient to locate the band on the right flank facing the centre.

FORMING-UP FOR THE CEREMONIAL

7. Squadrons are to be paraded on their own parade grounds, and are to be sized, proved and inspected as for squadron drill. Squadron markers are to be positioned on the ceremonial parade ground by the parade warrant officer. The parade adjutant is then to order the trumpeters to sound "Advance", after which they are to return in single file to their positions in the band. Squadrons are to be marched on to the ceremonial parade ground and ordered to Shoulder Arms and stand At Ease. When the squadrons are in position, the parade adjutant is to give the commands:

**“PARADE PARADE SHUN
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT
TELL OFF BY SQUADRONS
NUMBER 1 SQUADRON STAND AT EASE
ESCORT SQUADRON STAND AT EASE”**

and on the arrival of the parade commander:

“PARADE PARADE SHUN”.

He is then to report to the parade commander:

"PARADE PRESENT, SIR/MA'AM".

The parade commander is then to give the commands:

**“PARADE OPEN ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS, EYES FRONT
OFFICERS TAKE POST IN REVIEW ORDER OUTWARDS TURN
QUICK MARCH”.**

Officers are to act as detailed in the Review of Wing.

**“OFFICERS LEFT TURN
PARADE STAND AT EASE”.**

The parade then awaits the arrival of the mayor.

THE CEREMONIAL

8. On a signal from the parade commander, trumpeters sound the "Still". The parade commander then gives the command:

“PARADE PARADE SHUN”.

After which the trumpeters sound the "Alert".

“PARADE SLOPE ARMS”.

When the mayor is in position on the dais:

“PARADE, GENERAL SALUTE, PRESENT ARMS”.

The band plays the General Salute.

**“PARADE SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS”.**

The parade commander then goes forward and presents the parade for inspection. Whilst the mayor is inspecting the parade, the band plays appropriate music. On completion of the inspection the parade commander is to give the command:

“PARADE STAND AT EASE”.

The Freedom Ceremony now commences.

At the conclusion of the mayor's address and before the Title Deed of Freedom is handed to the station commander, the parade commander is to give the command:

“PARADE PARADE SHUN”

and before the station commander addresses the assembly:

“PARADE STAND AT EASE”

and after the station commander has addressed the assembly:

**“PARADE PARADE SHUN
UNCASE THE QUEEN'S COLOUR AND
NUMBER X SQUADON STANDARD
PARADE WILL FIX BAYONETS, FIX BAYONETS
SHUN
OFFICERS WILL DRAW SWORDS, DRAW SWORDS
PARADE SLOPE ARMS
MARCH ON NUMBER X SQUADRON STANDARD,
PARADE PRESENT ARMS”.**

The band plays "Point of War". The Standard bearer is to give the command:

“STANDARD PARTY, BY THE CENTRE, QUICK MARCH”.

The Standard party is to march across the parade to a position between No 1 and No 2 Flights of No 1 Squadron. The parade commander then gives the command:

**“PARADE SLOPE ARMS
MARCH ON THE QUEEN'S COLOUR FOR THE ROYAL AIR FORCE IN
THE UNITED KINGDOM
PARADE PRESENT ARMS”.**

The band plays "Point of War". The Squadron Standard is to be Let Fly in salute. The Queen's Colour bearer is to give the command:

“COLOUR PARTY, BY THE CENTRE, QUICK MARCH”.

The Colour party is to march across the front of the parade from the left flank to a position between No 1 and No 2 Flight of the escort squadron. The parade commander is to give the command:

**“PARADE SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS
STAND AT EASE”.**

On the command "Stand At Ease" the Scroll bearer and his escort are to march to the front of the dais and receive the Scroll from the station commander. They then turn about, march to the left flank of the parade and turn about. The Scroll is to be carried in both hands, in front of the body, and is not to be attached to the bearer by means of a cord.

PARADING THE SCROLL

9. The parade commander is to give the command:

**“SCROLL BEARER PARADE THE SCROLL
PARADE PARADE SHUN”.**

The Scroll party, under the orders of the Scroll bearer, is to march in Slow Time along the front of the parade, (paying compliments as it passes the Queen's Colour), to the right flank, where it halts, about turns, and marches in Quick Time to a position alongside the dais.

The most convenient time to stage an aircraft fly-past is whilst the Scroll is being marched across the front of the parade in Slow Time.

The parade commander is to give the command:

**“PARADE SLOPE ARMS
PARADE GENERAL SALUTE, PRESENT ARMS”.**

The band plays the General Salute and both the Queen's Colour and the Squadron Standard are Let Fly.

The parade commander is to give the commands:

**“PARADE SLOPE ARMS
SHOULDER ARMS
OFFICERS TAKE POST, LEFT TURN
QUICK MARCH
OFFICERS INWARDS TURN
PARADE CLOSE ORDER MARCH
RIGHT DRESS
EYES FRONT”.**

THE MARCH PAST

10. The parade commander is to give the commands:

**“PARADE SLOPE ARMS
PARADE WILL MARCH PAST IN COLUMN OF ROUTE
ESCORT SQUADRON LEADING
MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF ROUTE, RIGHT TURN”.**

The Queen's Colour and Squadron Standard parties take post between No 1 and 2 Flights of their respective squadrons. The Escort Squadron commander gives the command:

“ESCORT SQUADRON, BY THE LEFT, QUICK MARCH”.

The band starts playing and the parade moves off by squadrons. The Scroll Party march off and dismiss – the Scroll is taken to the Officers' Mess/SHQ for safe-keeping. Should there be a saluting base on the route, compliments are to be paid by flights. The Queen's Colour party and Squadron Standard party pay compliments on the orders of the flight commander of No 2 Flight of their respective squadrons. After marching through the streets, the parade will reach the area for dismissal.

DISMISSAL

11. Dependent upon the area available for dismissal the parade commander may delegate the responsibility for marching off the Queen's Colour to the Escort Squadron Commander and for the Squadron Standard to No 1 Squadron Commander. Any other squadrons may be dismissed independently by their squadron commanders. After the Queen's Colour has been marched off, the parade is brought to the Shoulder Arms, handed over to the parade warrant officer and embussed for the parent unit.

PART 2 – CHAPTER 19

SERVICE FUNERALS

PLANNING AND PREPARATION

1. The regulations dealing with Service Funerals are contained in QR(RAF) 174 and AP 1922 Casualty Procedure. Funerals may need to be adapted to satisfy family requests or circumstances that arise during the planning of the event. Provided that the ceremony is carried out with dignity, respect and military precision there is no reason why changes cannot be made. For example, the deceased's family may wish for a Service Bearer Party, but opt for the interment to be a purely private affair.

2. **Personnel.** An officer or SNCO is to be in overall command of the funeral party on the day. A full Service funeral will necessitate the use of all the following personnel in ceremonial duties; however, the minimum requirement would be for a Bearer Party.

a. **Bearer Party.**

(1) The rank of the commander of the Bearer Party depends upon the status of the deceased as follows:

- Senior Non-Commissioned Officer for SNCOs and below.
- Warrant Officer for warrant officers and officers up to and including the rank of Air Cdre.
- An officer for AVMs and above.

(2) Six to eight bearers (Other Ranks) depending on the size of the coffin.

(3) Two reserve bearers.

(4) Two hat orderlies (who are also to be trained as reserve bearers).

b. **Pallbearers.** Pallbearers are normally present only at the funerals of AVMs and above. There would usually be six Pallbearers of similar rank as the deceased (from any Service).

c. **Firing Party.**

(1) A Senior Non-Commissioned Officer in charge.

(2) A Corporal.

(3) Twelve junior ranks.

(4) One Trumpeter/Piper (if available).

d. **Route-Lining Party.** The Firing Party will usually act as route-liners; however, a separate Route-Lining Party can be detailed if available. Route liners should be spaced at a maximum interval of 9 paces.

3. **Planning.** Generally, there is ample preparation time available to organise a ceremonial parade; however, for Service funerals, the time between notification of death and interment is short, so swift and comprehensive planning is paramount to ensure a precise and dignified ceremony. The following factors must be considered:

a. **Where?** Locations that must be identified are:

- (1) The Chapel of Rest.
- (2) The home of the deceased.
- (3) The church.
- (4) The cemetery or crematorium.
- (5) The precise route between each location.

b. **When?** Timings that must be confirmed are:

- (1) When the remains are to leave either the Chapel of Rest or the home of the deceased.
- (2) The time and expected duration of the service.
- (3) The time of interment or cremation.
- (4) The expected travelling times between each location.

c. **Who?** The main personnel who need to be contacted are:

- (1) The head of the family/next of kin.
- (2) The funeral director.
- (3) The padre.
- (4) Grave-digger.
- (5) The effects officer.

4. **Reconnaissance.** The way in which a Service funeral is carried out changes from one event to another, as no two churches, cemeteries, or crematoriums and their access routes are the same. Therefore a preliminary visit must be carried out at the earliest opportunity to ascertain the following details:

a. **The Chapel of Rest.**

(1) The route out of the Chapel of Rest, noting the dimensions and turns in corridors, the number of steps, and the size of doorways.

(2) The position of the hearse.

b. **The Home of the Deceased.** The internal dimensions of the house will be a primary factor in determining the overall feasibility of using the Bearer Party within the house.

c. **Church.**

(1) The position of the hearse on arrival and departure and the subsequent location of the Bearer Party.

(2) The position of the Route-lining Party, from the hearse to the church.

(3) The width of the aisle, location of the coffin in front of the altar, enough space to turn the coffin prior to exit from the church, and removal of trestles.

(4) Seating for the Bearer Party.

d. **Crematorium.** The Firing Party is not normally used during a service cremation; however, the Firing Party may be used to lead the coffin from the crematorium gates to the main building entrance; or may Route-line at an appropriate position.

e. **Cemetery/Graveyard.**

(1) Position of the hearse (cemetery only).

(2) Route-lining from church door to gravesite (if gravesite is within grounds of church).

(3) Route-lining from hearse to gravesite (if gravesite is at a cemetery).

(4) Route to the grave for both the Bearer Party and Firing Party.

(5) Grave including position, size and surround. During periods of inclement weather it may be necessary to reinforce the sides with covered boards.

- (6) The position for the Firing Party to fire volleys with blank cartridges.
- (7) The position of the trumpeter/piper.

5. **Preparation for the Funeral.** Detailed preparation of the following must be made once initial visits have been carried out:

a. **Transport.** Separate vehicles should be made available for both the Bearer Party and Firing Party to ensure they are ahead of the cortege throughout the funeral route. See QR174.

b. **Equipment.** Check whether items of equipment will be provided by the funeral director or from Service sources.

- (1) Trestles, ideally two sets.
- (2) Support poles and straps (not for crematorium).
- (3) Black umbrellas during inclement weather.
- (4) Arms and blank ammunition, including bayonets.
- (5) Black arm bands.
- (6) White webbing belts and gloves.
- (7) A practice coffin.

c. **Practice and Rehearsal.** Extensive practice is required by the Bearer and Firing Parties to ensure a precise and well-drilled, yet dignified ceremony. A practice coffin can be filled with sandbags appropriate to the weight of the deceased, in order for the Bearer Party to rehearse accurately.

d. **Dressing the Coffin.** The coffin is always to be carried feet first. It is to be dressed with certain items specific to rank (see Figs 19-1 and 19-2) - these should be secured lightly to the flag. These items are as follows:

- (1) Union Flag placed centrally over the coffin, with the corners and ends folded neatly in position and secured with pins. The RAF Ensign is not to be used under any circumstance¹.
- (2) No 1 SD hat positioned centrally at the head end of the coffin.

¹ QR 165 refers.

- (3) Decorations and medals placed on a black cushion, positioned centrally, at the head end of the coffin below the head-dress.
- (4) Sidearm either sword sheathed for an officer or bayonet sheathed in white ceremonial scabbard for Other Ranks.
- (5) The family wreath positioned at the foot end. Should this be an outside item then a Service wreath may be used.



Other Ranks

Fig 19-1



Officer

Fig 19-2

DRESSING THE COFFIN

- e. **Miscellaneous.** Other considerations need to be made:
- (1) Accommodation requirements if funeral is away from the parent unit.
 - (2) Messing.
 - (3) Security of arms and ammunition including authorisation for their movement.

(4) Liaison with the civilian police regarding security and traffic control.

6. **Orders of Dress.** The following dress is to be worn at Service funerals:

- a. No 1 SD with medals.
- b. White gloves and white webbing (airmen and airwomen).
- c. Brown leather gloves (officers and warrant officers).
- d. Black arm bands (officers and warrant officers only at Service funerals)². At Service funerals all officers are to wear mourning bands if in uniform. Warrant officers in uniform at Service funerals are to wear mourning bands but not if they are on duty in the procession (including Bearer Party), lining the route or elsewhere.

7. **Floral Tributes.** The way that floral tributes are displayed during the ceremony depends largely upon the wishes of the deceased's family. It is usual for the main family wreath to accompany the coffin at all times. Other wreaths and floral sprays may be removed from the hearse prior to the service and placed outside the church or chapel. The funeral director will normally organize the floral tributes; nevertheless, a reserve member of the Bearer Party should assist with wreaths and flowers during the funeral.

FUNERAL CEREMONIAL

8. **From Chapel of Rest/Home of the Deceased.** If the Bearer Party is to load the coffin onto the hearse either at the Chapel of Rest or at the home of the deceased the procedure is to be carried out with due reverence. The procedures will be determined by the layout of the building and environs.

9. **At the Church or Crematorium.**

² QR 196 refers.

a. When the hearse arrives at the church or crematorium, the Route-lining Party is to be formed in two ranks, lining from the hearse to the church or crematorium door. The SNCO in command is to give the command:

**“LINING PARTY PRESENT ARMS
LINING PARTY LOWER ON YOUR ARMS REVERSE”.**

The Lining Party is to lower on their arms reversed. Once the coffin and procession have entered the church or crematorium the SNCO is to bring the Lining Party to the Slope Arms.

b. The coffin is borne by the Bearer Party and carried feet-end foremost into the church or crematorium, where it is to be placed in the allotted position, feet-end facing the altar.

c. The procession to the church or crematorium is to be in the following order:

- (1) Chaplain.
- (2) Coffin with Bearers and Pall Bearers.
- (3) Chief mourners.

d. At a crematorium the Bearer Party will normally carry the coffin directly to the catafalque (see Bearer Drill). On occasions a coffin trolley will be provided at the crematorium entrance. The coffin is to be lowered onto the trolley and bearers are then to escort the trolley to the catafalque with their inside hand resting on the top of the coffin, fingers together and extended with the palm of the hand facing down.

10. At the Cemetery/Graveyard.

a. The route should be lined from the church or the cemetery entrance to the graveside. If the interment is at a cemetery, the Bearer Party, Route-lining Party and Firing Party should make their way from the church independently of the funeral cortege to ensure their arrival before the hearse.

b. The Firing Party may line the route. Alternately, if resources allow, a cortege may be formed for the journey from the church to the graveside. Pallbearers (if any) are to have fallen in behind the coffin in two files. The senior Pallbearer is positioned nearest to the right rear of the coffin, the next most senior on the left-hand side, and so on, at two pace intervals. The Lining Party is to be in two files and at the Slope Arms. Before the coffin approaches, the SNCO in command of the Lining Party is to give the command:

**“LINING PARTY
PRESENT ARMS”.**

After a pause the commander of the Lining Party is then to give the command:

**“LINING PARTY
SLOPE ARMS
LINING PARTY
REVERSE ARMS
LINING PARTY
OUTWARDS TURN”.**

The Corporal is to take post 2 paces in front of and centrally between the 2 files. The trumpeter/piper is to take post 2 paces to the rear of and between the 2 files. The SNCO is to take post 2 paces to the rear of the trumpeter/piper. When the funeral procession is formed up and the chief mourners have taken their positions, the officer/SNCO in command of the Funeral Party is to give the command:

**“FUNERAL PARTY
SLOW MARCH”.**

11. At the Graveside.

- a. When the coffin arrives at the graveside, it is to be placed on stretchers over the grave and the lowering ropes are to be adjusted. The Union Flag, head-dress, and sword or sidearm are to be removed from the coffin by the Bearer Party, who then stand clear.
- b. If the Firing Party were also detailed for the Lining Party duties then they are to form three ranks and take up position for Firing Party duties as the coffin is being undressed.
- c. The Bearer Party are to take their places and lower the coffin into the grave, after which they are to stand clear so as to allow mourners to stand near the grave before the service starts.
- d. Throughout the service the Firing Party are in three ranks at Lower on your Arms Reversed. At the end of the service the SNCO in command of the Firing Party is to give the commands:

**“PARTY
PRESENT ARMS
SLOPE ARMS
VOLLEYS WITH BLANK CARTRIDGE LOAD
PRESENT
VOLLEYS FIRE”.**

- e. Three separate volleys are to be fired, by ranks, (4 personnel firing on each occasion). Each volley is preceded by the words of command:

“VOLLEYS FIRE”.

- f. The SNCO in command of the Firing Party is then to give the command:

“UNLOAD”.

- g. After a pause the SNCO in command of the Firing Party is to give the commands:

**“SHOULDER ARMS
FIRING PARTY WILL FIX BAYONETS
FIX, BAYONETS
SHUN”.**

- h. While the Firing Party is fixing bayonets, the trumpeter/piper is to take post at the graveside. The SNCO in command of the Firing Party is to give the commands:

**“FIRING PARTY SLOPE ARMS
PRESENT ARMS”.**

The Firing Party is to remain at the Present while the trumpeter/piper plays the Last Post/Lament followed by one minute's silence and the Reveille. All officers present at the graveside and the cdrs of the Bearer Party and Firing Party are to salute for the duration of the Last Post, silence and Reveille. Other Ranks who are in uniform are to stand at Attention.

- i. The SNCO commanding the Firing Party is to give the command:

“FIRING PARTY SLOPE ARMS”.

The elements of the Funeral Party are then to move off independently and form up outside the cemetery. The Firing Party is to unfix bayonets when it halts outside the cemetery. The Funeral Party is then to be dismissed.

BEARER PARTY DRILL

1. At the church or chapel and when ordered, the Bearer Party, without head-dress, are to step off and halt, without ceremony, alongside the coffin and then turn inwards. The commander is to be 2 paces to the rear.
2. **Lifting and Moving the Coffin.**
 - a. On the command: **“PREPARE TO LIFT”** the bearers are to place both hands, fingers together, under the coffin, with the thumbs running vertically up the side of the coffin. The hands should be shoulder width apart with the Union flag between the hands and the coffin (see Figs 19-3 and 19-4).
 - b. On the command: **“LIFT”** the Bearer Party are to take the weight of the coffin by straightening their backs, keeping their arms at their fullest extent and raising the coffin clear of the trestles. The trestles are then to be removed.
 - c. On the command: **“PREPARE TO RAISE – RAISE”** the Bearer Party are to lift the coffin slowly, ensuring that it remains level until the hands come into line with the shoulders (see Figs 19-5 and 19-6).
 - d. On the command: **“OUTWARDS”** the bearers are to rotate the hand nearest to the foot end of the coffin, so that the thumb is underneath and fingers held together, running vertically up its side (see Figs 19-7 and 19-8).
 - e. On the command: **“TURN”** the bearers are to turn and face the foot end at the same time placing the coffin on to the shoulders and passing the inside arm beneath it so that the hand can rest on the outside shoulder of the bearer opposite. The outside hand should be as close to the face as possible (see Fig 19-9 and 19-10).
3. **Marching.**
 - a. On the command: **“TURNING, SLOW MARCH”** the Bearer Party are to execute a turn to the right to face the exit. In order not to disturb the coffin the foot end bearers are to step one side pace to the right then bring their feet together. The head end bearers are to step one pace to the left and then bring their feet together. The inside bearers are to step short on the spot and pivot the coffin around to face the new direction. This manoeuvre is difficult so control must be maintained throughout and the movement executed very slowly.
 - b. On the command: **“STAND STILL”** the Bearer Party are to stand still and make any adjustments as directed by the commander or prepare to step off in the new direction.

- c. On the command: **“SLOW MARCH”** the bearer party are to step off with the inside foot leading. The commander may keep the step by saying very softly: **“INSIDE/OUTSIDE”**. The Bearer Party commander is to be positioned 2 paces to the rear of the head of the coffin and maintain the step and control throughout the moving of the coffin.
4. **Obstacles.** Whilst on the march the Bearer Party may have to negotiate obstacles such as doors, steps and corners. If so, the Bearer Party is to be halted and the obstacle is to be negotiated with dignity. If moving down or up stairs the leading bearers are to change their hand positions to take the weight of the coffin.
5. **Halting and Lowering the Coffin.**
 - a. On the command: **“HALT”**, given as the outside feet come into contact with the ground, the bearers are to take a further pace with the inside foot then place the feet together.
 - b. On the command: **“INWARDS TURN”** the bearers are to rotate their outside hand, so that the fingers are together and underneath the coffin, with the thumb running vertically up the side. The bearers are then to turn inwards to face the coffin taking the weight with the outside hand. At the same time the arm is withdrawn from beneath the coffin enabling both hands to be placed side by side supporting the full weight of the coffin.
 - c. On the command: **“PREPARE TO LOWER/LOWER”** the bearers are to lower the coffin slowly to the height of the trestles or to enable the coffin to be fed into a hearse.
6. **The Feed into the Hearse.** The bearers are to feed the coffin into the hearse by sliding it onto the runners of the hearse. As the coffin slides onto the hearse the bearers are to remain in the position for lifting the coffin (see Fig 19-3). Then working in pairs they are to return to the correct position of Attention.
 - a. On the command: **“OUTWARDS TURN”** the Bearer Party turns to face the hearse. Then the commander is to give the command: **“PREPARE TO RECEIVE HEAD-DRESS/RECEIVE”**. The Bearer Party are to bend their arms at the elbows, at the same time extending the fingers so that the palms of the hands are approximately 9 inches (225mm) apart, in front and to the right or left of the outside shoulder.
 - b. The hat orderlies act together, moving down the files distributing the hats to the bearers. It is important to clearly label the hats to save any confusion. After all the hats are distributed the orderlies are to march back to their given position.
 - c. On the command: **“HEAD-DRESS”** the Bearer Party will replace their hats using both hands and remain in position with the fingers on the edge of the hat.
 - d. On the command: **“SHUN”** the hands are to cut away to the correct position of Attention. Then on the order of the commander the Bearer Party will step off in Slow Time to take up their positions either side of the hearse. The Bearer Party halt

in this position with the commander being two paces to the rear and centre of the hearse. If the place of interment is at a different location then the Bearer Party may be marched off in Quick Time to embark onto the transport.

e. The commander of the Firing Party will then give the command: **“FUNERAL PARTY SLOW MARCH”** whereupon the cortege is to proceed to the place of interment. If the route is long then the Firing Party commander may give the words of command: **“BREAK INTO QUICK TIME”**.

7. **The Arrival and Halt of the Hearse.** If the Bearer Party is part of a cortege it should step short before the hearse halts so as to take up position to the rear, ready to remove the coffin. The procedure is as follows:

a. On the command: **“HALT”**, given by the Firing Party commander, the bearers and the hearse stop together. The Bearer Party if wearing head-dress should then remove hats.

b. On the command: **“INWARDS TURN”** the bearers will turn to face the coffin and if necessary can be given the command: **“OUTWARDS DRESS”**. Note that the funeral director will need to open the hearse doors and prepare the coffin for removal before the execution of any movements.

c. On the command: **“PREPARE TO FEED/FEED”** the bearers will adopt the Feed position at the same time the pair closest to the hearse will slide the coffin from the hearse. It will be passed along the Bearer Party until it is clear of the hearse.

d. On the command: **“RAISE”** the coffin is to be slowly raised up to shoulder height.

e. On the command: **“OUTWARDS TURN”** the Bearer Party is to carry out the action and the hearse will then move off.

f. With the padre leading, the Bearer Party will make its way to the graveside. The commander will give the order: **“HALT”** as the foot-end bearers are one pace from, and in line with, the grave. The orders: **“INWARDS TURN”** and: **“PREPARE TO LOWER/LOWER”** are then executed.

8. **Placing the Coffin over the Grave.**

a. When the Bearer Party commander is satisfied that the coffin is in line with the sides of the grave he is to order: **“SLOW MARCH”**. The Bearer Party is to side step moving along the side of the grave until the commander orders: **“STAND STILL”**. He is to ensure that the coffin is correctly positioned over the grave, support poles and straps. The Bearer Party is to stand at Attention.

b. On the command: **“PREPARE TO LOWER/LOWER”**, the bearers take a pace back with the right foot and at the same time bend both knees slowly lowering the coffin. Once the coffin is on the supports the commander gives the command: **“SHUN”** and the bearers cut their arms away to the side of the body and kneel on the right knee at Attention.

9. **Undressing the Coffin.**

a. On the command: **“WREATH”** the right hand end bearer will lift the wreath and place it to his left on the coffin. The bearer to his left then places the belt and side arm on the wreath and moves it to the left, placing it down on the coffin. The bearer opposite will then place the decorations on the wreath and place it to his right. Finally the next bearer to the right is to place the hat on top of all the accoutrements and move the items to a position in front of the commander. The commander will then remove all the items from the coffin.

b. On the command: **“PREPARE TO FOLD FLAG/FOLD”** the bearers are to grasp the base of the flag with both hands thus removing any securing pins. Then on the command: **“FLAG”** the right side bearers will fold the flag across to the far side of the coffin. Ensuring the flag has no creases they are to place both hands on the coffin and on the command: **“SHUN”** will cut their arms away to the position of Attention.

c. On the command: **“LEFT SIDE FOLD”** the left hand side bearers will fold the flag so the left edge is level with the far side, placing their hands flat on the coffin. Then on the command: **“SHUN”** they will cut their arms away to the position of Attention.

d. Finally on the command: **“PREPARE TO FOLD FLAG/ FOLD”** and starting from the right foot end bearer, the flag is folded into a triangle using alternate folds right to left until the flag is in front of the commander. As each fold is completed the bearer is to cut his arms away to the Attention position. The commander is then to place all the accoutrements on the flag and remove them from the coffin. It is recommended that they then be given to an orderly.

10. **Feeding the Straps.** (See Fig 19-11).

a. The straps should be pre-positioned across the grave so that they are to the right side of the bearers. The bearers should take care not to kick the straps into the grave as they step over them.

b. On the command: **“PREPARE TO FEED STRAPS/FEED”** the bearers are to take up the straps in their right hands.

c. On the command: **“STRAPS”** both hands are used to take up the slack in the straps by feeding them through the handle and continuing to feed until the centre of each strap is under the coffin.

d. On the command: **“STAND UP”** the bearers are to resume the position of Attention, at the same time allowing the straps to run through the hands. The arms are then to be at their fullest extent with both hands cupped around each strap and held in the centre of the body.

11. **Lifting and Lowering the Coffin** (See Figs 19-12 and 19-13).

- a. On the command: **“PREPARE TO LIFT/LIFT”** the bearers are to take the weight of the coffin by holding the straps and lifting so that the coffin is just clear of the supports. Persons nominated should then come forward and remove the supporting poles clear of the grave.
- b. On the command: **“PREPARE TO LOWER/LOWER”** the bearers are to lower the coffin by allowing the straps to run slowly through their fingers ensuring that the coffin remains level and clear of the graveside. If at any time the coffin is not level then the Bearer Party commander is to take control.
- c. Ensuring that the coffin is flat on the base of the grave the command: **“PREPARE TO RELEASE/RELEASE”** is given. The bearers are to let the straps fall to the right and rear and then return both hands to the position of Attention.

12. **The March Off.**

- a. On the command: **“OUTWARDS TURN”** the bearers turn to face the commander.
- b. On the command: **“QUICK MARCH”** the Bearer Party will march off to a previously chosen position. The commander follows at a distance of two paces to the rear of the coffin and in the centre of the line of march.
- c. On arrival at the designated position the party are to receive head-dress and are to remain there for the duration of the service. During the Present Arms it is only the commander who is to salute.



Prepare to Lift

Fig 19-3



Prepare to Lift

Fig 19-4

LIFTING AND MOVING THE COFFIN



Prepare to Raise

Fig 19-5



Prepare to Raise

Fig 19-6

LIFTING AND MOVING THE COFFIN



Outwards

Fig 19-7



Outwards

Fig 19-8

MOVING AND LIFTING THE COFFIN



Turn – front

Fig 19-9



Turn - rear

Fig 19-10

MOVING AND LIFTING THE COFFIN



Fig 19-11

PREPARING THE GRAVE

2-19-A-10



Taking the Weight

Fig 19-12



Fig 19-13

LIFTING AND LOWERING THE COFFIN

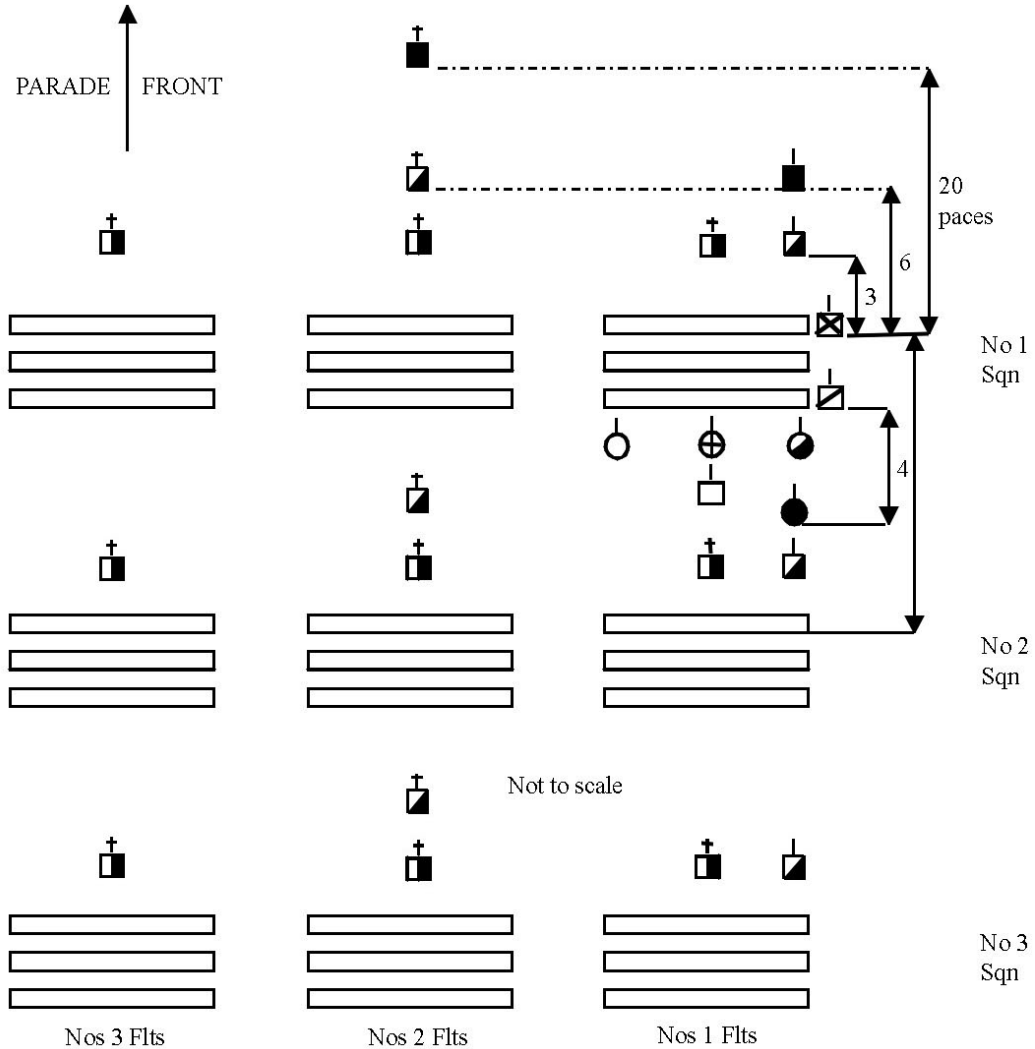
PART 2 - CHAPTER 20

SERVICES AT LOCAL WAR MEMORIALS

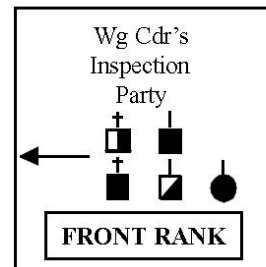
1. Owing to the large number of variations, it is impracticable to lay down a set ceremony. The following order of service may therefore be used as a guide:
 - a. March on to selected positions.
 - b. Band (if available) to play incidental music.
 - c. Parade brought to Attention as senior personage arrives.
 - d. Trumpeters sound Last Post.
 - e. Two minutes silence.
 - f. At the end of silence, trumpeters sound Reveille.
 - g. Principal wreaths are laid on the Memorial.
 - h. Religious service finishing with Blessing.
 - i. One verse of the National Anthem is sung by all on parade.
 - j. March off.

2. When other Services take part, all words of command are to be given by commanders of contingents in the following order:
 - a. Royal Navy.
 - b. Royal Marines.
 - c. Army.
 - d. Royal Air Force.
 - e. Civil Defence and other civilian organisations, in turn.

WING IN CLOSE COLUMN OF SQUADRONS (WITH FLIGHTS IN LINE)



Note: Only sufficient of the appointments are shown to display the pattern of layout. Other officers and airmen are to be positioned accordingly.

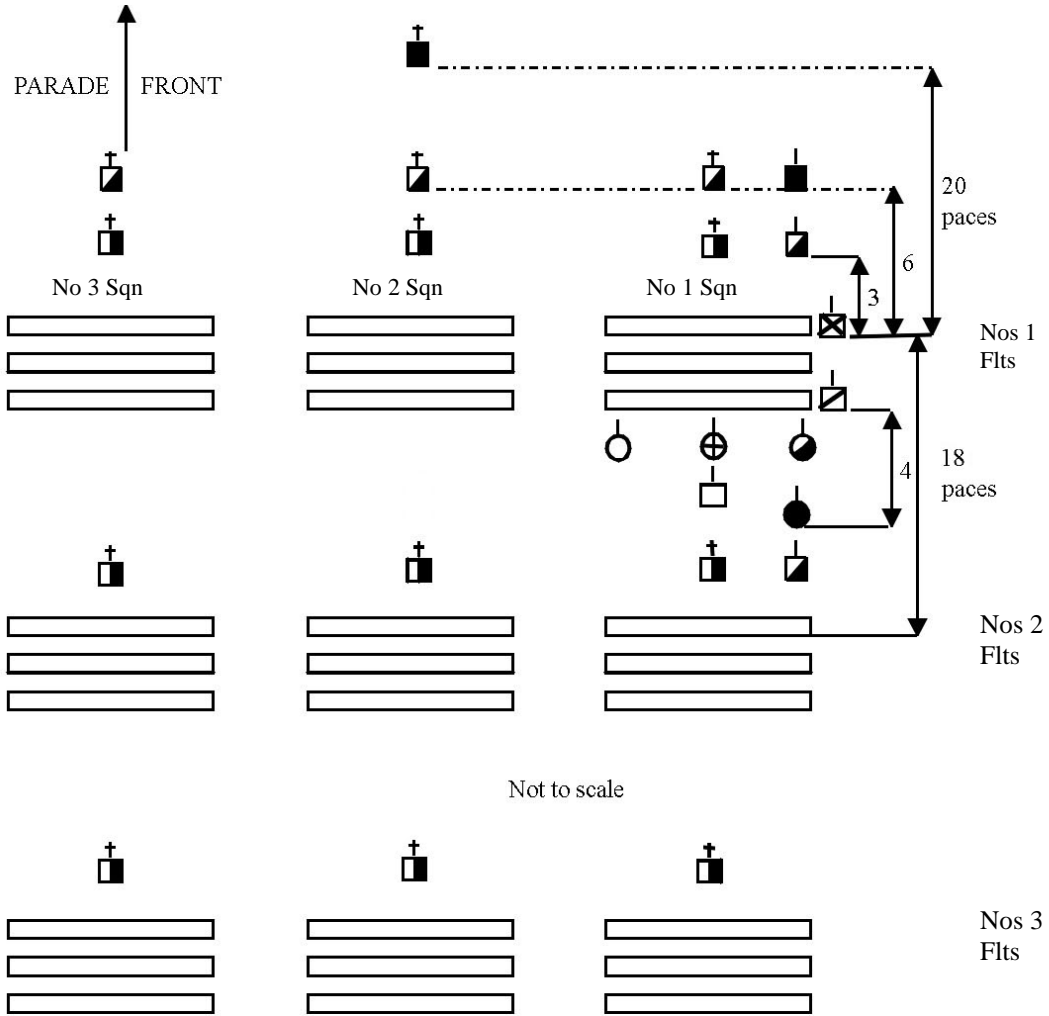


Appendix 1. Wing in Close Column of Squadrons (with Flights in Line) - Positions of Executives and Supernumeraries.

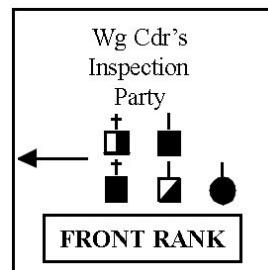
**WING IN CLOSE COLUMN OF SQUADRONS (WITH FLIGHTS IN LINE)
 - POSITIONS OF EXECUTIVES AND SUPERNUMERARIES**

Appointment (a)	Position (b)
1. Wing Commander	20 paces in front of the centre of the leading squadron (14 paces in front of the commander of the leading squadron).
2. Wing Adjutant	6 paces in front of the right file of the flight on the right of the line of the leading squadron (in line with the squadron commander).
3. Wing Warrant Officer	4 paces to the rear of the right file of the flight on the right of the line of the leading squadron (one pace behind the line of supernumerary officers).
4. Squadron Commander	6 paces in front of the centre of the squadron.
5. Squadron Adjutant	3 paces in front of the right file of the flight on the right of the line, in line with the flight commanders.
6. Squadron Warrant Officer	2 paces to the rear of the right file of the flight on the right of the line, in line with the supernumerary NCOs.
7. Flight Commander	3 paces in front of the centre of the flight.
8. Supernumerary Officers	Equally spaced, 3 paces to the rear of the rear rank.
9. NCO IC of the Flight	2 paces to the rear of the centre of the rear rank.
10. Supernumerary NCOs	Equally spaced, 2 paces to the rear of the rear rank (starting from the right).
11. Markers	One on each flank of the front rank.
12. Guides	One on each flank of the rear rank.

WING IN LINE OF SQUADRONS (IN CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS)



Note: Only sufficient of the appointments are shown to display the pattern of layout. Other officers and airmen are to be positioned accordingly.

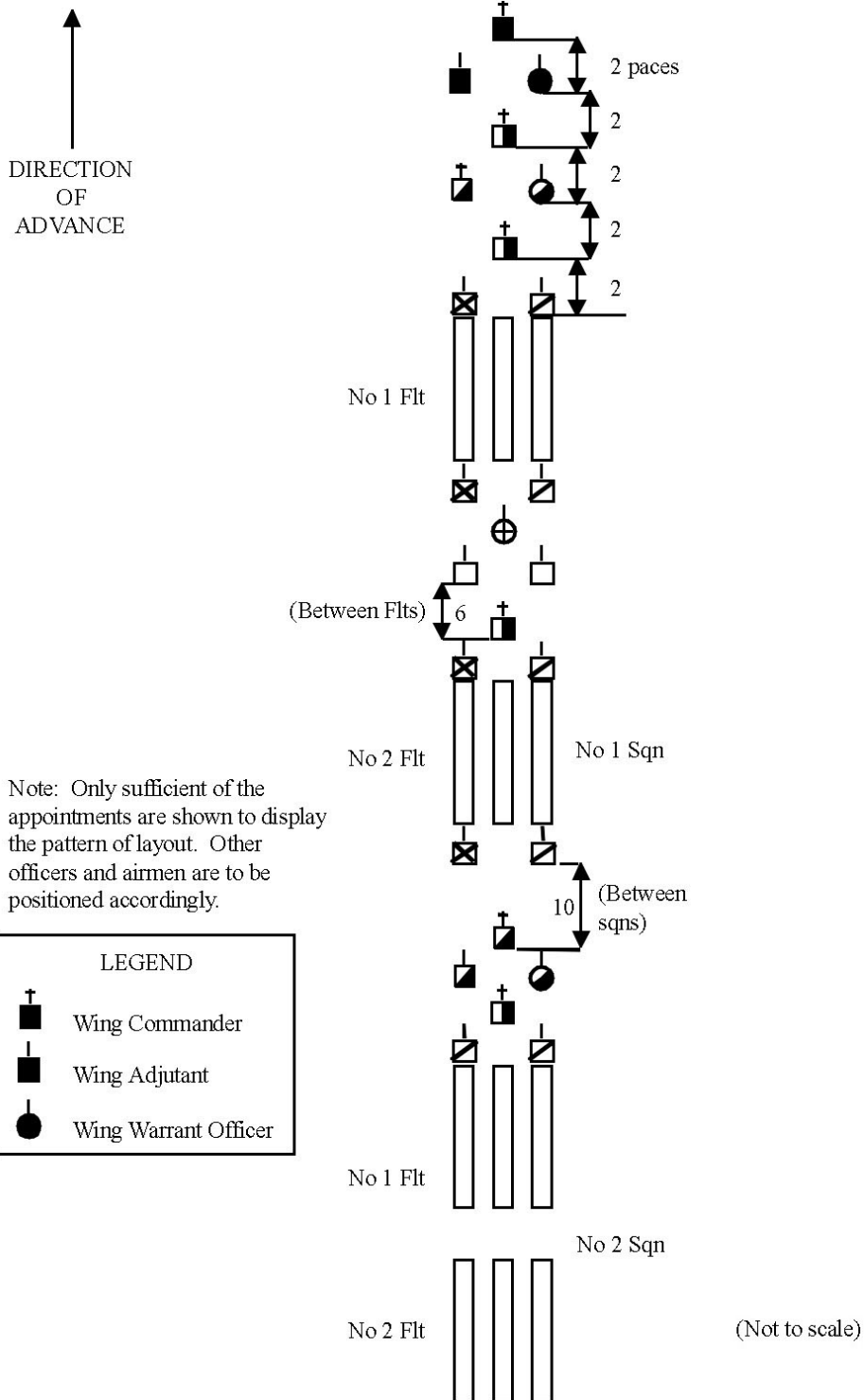


Appendix 1. Wing in Line of Squadrons (in Close Column of Flights) - Positions of Executives and Supernumeraries.

**WING IN LINE OF SQUADRONS (IN CLOSE COLUMN OF FLIGHTS)
 - POSITIONS OF EXECUTIVES AND SUPERNUMERARIES**

	Appointment (a)	Position (b)
1.	Wing Commander	20 paces in front of the centre of the alignment.
2.	Wing Adjutant	6 paces in front of the right file of the flight on the right of the line of the squadron on the right (in line with the Squadron commanders).
3.	Wing Warrant Officer	4 paces to the rear of the right file of the flight on the right of the line of the squadron on the right (one pace behind the line of supernumerary officers).
4.	Squadron Commander	6 paces in front of the centre of the leading flight.
5.	Squadron Adjutant	3 paces in front of the right file of the leading flight in line with the flight commander.
6.	Squadron Warrant Officer	2 paces to the rear of the right file of the leading flight in line with the supernumerary NCOs.
7.	Flight Commander	3 paces in front of the centre of the flight.
8.	Supernumerary Officers	Equally spaced, 3 paces to the rear of the rear rank.
9.	NCO IC of the Flight	2 paces to the rear of the centre of the rear rank.
10.	Supernumerary NCOs	Equally spaced, 2 paces to the rear of the rear rank (starting from the right).
11.	Markers	One on each flank of the front rank.
12.	Guides	One on each flank of the rear rank.

WING IN COLUMN OF ROUTE (IN CLOSE COLUMN OF SQUADRONS)



Appendix 1. Wing in Column of Route (in Close Column of Squadrons) - Positions of Executives and Supernumeraries.

**WING IN COLUMNS OF ROUTE - POSITIONS OF EXECUTIVES
 AND SUPERNUMERARIES**

Appointment (a)	Position (b)
1. Wing Commander	10 paces centrally in front of the leading marker and guide.
2. Wing Adjutant	2 paces to the rear and one pace to the left of the wing commander (directly in front of the squadron adjutant).
3. Wing Warrant Officer	2 paces to the rear and one pace to the right of the wing commander (directly in front of the squadron warrant officer).
4. Squadron Commander	6 paces centrally in front of the leading guide and marker.
5. Squadron Adjutant	2 paces to the rear and one pace to the left of the squadron commander (directly in front of the marker).
6. Squadron Warrant Officer	2 paces to the rear and one pace to the right of the squadron commander (directly in front of the guide).
7. Flight Commander	3 paces in front of the centre of the flight.
8. Supernumerary Officers	In lines of threes, one pace to the rear of the supernumerary NCOs.
9. NCO IC of the Flight & Supernumerary NCOs	In lines of threes, one pace to the rear of the flight, each line of three one pace to the rear of the one before.
10. Markers and Guides	In their same relative positions as for Flight in Line.

PART 3 – CHAPTER 1
STICK DRILL – ADVANCED

CONTENTS

LESSON No	TITLE	PAGE No
1	Attention	3-1-2
2	Stand At Ease and the Stand Easy	3-1-7
3	The Carry and Compliments on the March.	3-1-12
4	Quick Time and Slow Time stick turning	3-1-17
5	Changing Sticks	3-1-22
6	Carry Sticks / Pacing Sticks	3-1-29

THE OBJECT OF OPEN PACE STICK DRILL

1. The Pace Stick is issued with the aim of providing uniformity and attaining a high standard of steadiness and cohesion amongst instructors. The Pace Stick is used to gauge the correct length of pace and to measure the distance between ranks. The gauge settings common to the Pace Stick are as follows:

MEASUREMENT	USE
12 inches	Side paces and distance between heels.
21 inches	Stepping short.
24 inches	Not used.
30 inches	Paces in Quick and Slow Time.
33 inches	Stepping out.
40 inches	Double Time.

LESSON 1 – ATTENTION

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Attention.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasise the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress. Pace Stick open at 30 inches.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	To introduce you to open Pace Stick drill. This lesson will teach you the position of Attention with the Pace Stick open. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to adopt the Attention position when on parade with the open Pace Stick, in a smart uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) ATTENTION – ONE (Fig 3-1-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground. The foot is then placed flat on the ground in the normal position of Attention. 2. The stick is held in the right hand with the leading leg of the stick parallel to the right leg. 3. The foot ferrule is on the ground and in line with the toecap. 4. The rear leg pointing towards the rear. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is held in the right hand with the thumb on the inside. 2. The fingers are extended on the outside and curl round to the front. 3. The left arm is in the position of Attention. 4. The heels are together and angled at 45 degrees. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 3-1-1).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The Squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Confirm by collective practise: STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SHUN.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Final Position

Fig 3-1-1

ATTENTION PACE STICK OPEN

LESSON 2 – STAND AT EASE AND THE STAND EASY

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Stand At Ease and the Stand Easy.
Timings	One 10 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace Stick drill is the Stand At Ease and the Stand Easy. The reason these movements are taught is to enable an individual to adopt a relaxed position when instructing drill with the open Pace Stick, in a smart uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) **STAND AT EASE – ONE (Fig 3-1-2).**

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the command, the left leg is bent in front of the body so that the thigh is parallel to the ground. The foot is then placed flat on the ground in the normal position of Stand At Ease. The left arm, however, remains in the position of Attention. 2. At the same time the wrist of the right hand is to spin the stick forward moving the rear leg to the front. 3. The leading leg remains on the ground with the foot ferrule in line with the toecap. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is held in the right hand with the thumb on the inside. 2. The fingers are extended on the outside and curl round to the front. 3. The left arm is in the position of Attention. 4. The rear leg of the stick is spun forward. 5. The body is relaxed and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 3-1-2).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: ONE.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The instructor is to demonstrate the Stand Easy in the same manner. 2. The position is the same, however the body adopts a relaxed posture.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Confirm by collective practise: STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME STAND AT EASE.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: ONE.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary.



Final Position

Fig 3-1-2

STAND AT EASE AND STAND EASY

LESSON 3 – THE CARRY AND COMPLIMENTS ON THE MARCH

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Carry and Paying Compliments.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. This lesson uses paying compliments on the march as its basis – it also covers paying compliments at the Halt.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace Stick drill is the Carry and Paying Compliments. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to march in Quick Time and pay compliments with the stick open, in a smart uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SALUTING TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK UP TWO THREE FOUR FIVE DOWN SWING.</p>	<p>1. There is one part to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION YOU WILL LEARN THIS AS ONE MOVEMENT.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CARRY STICKS – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the left foot advances forward the stick is brought up into the Carry. 2. The right arm is bent at the elbow. 3. The grip of the right hand changes so the thumb is curled around the back leg and the forefinger is curled around the leading leg. 4. The remaining fingers are curled around the rear leg. 5. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The elbow is bent to raise the forearm parallel to the ground. 2. The leading leg of the stick is perpendicular to the right leg. 3. The left arm continues to swing as normal. 4. If paying compliments the stick is then passed across to the left hand and the Salute executed as normal. 5. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 3-1-3).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SALUTING TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out:</p> <p>CHECK UP TWO THREE FOUR FIVE DOWN SWING.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The instructor is to demonstrate Compliments with the stick in the Carry on the march and at the Halt. 2. The stick is passed across to the left hand. 3. The grip is the same as for the right hand. 4. The leading leg of the stick is perpendicular to the left leg. 5. The Salute is executed in the normal manner (Fig 3-1-3).
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SALUTING TO THE LEFT/RIGHT SALUTE.</p>	<p>Students to execute the movement and call out the timing:</p> <p>CHECK UP TWO THREE FOUR FIVE DOWN SWING.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary.



On the march - Left



On the march - Right



At the Halt - Front

Fig 3-1-3

PAYING COMPLIMENTS

LESSON 4 – QUICK TIME AND SLOW TIME STICK TURNING

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach stick turning in Quick and Slow Time.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. The basis of the lesson is stick turning in Slow Time.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent. It is recommended that open Pace Stick drill be taught on grass until the squad becomes proficient.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace Stick drill is stick turning in Quick and Slow Time. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to march in Quick or Slow Time with the stick open and turning, in a smart uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME BY THE LEFT SLOW MARCH.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) SLOW MARCH – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is turned under the control of the right hand by twisting the wrist and applying pressure with the thumb on the leading leg of the stick. 2. At the same time the stick is kept perpendicular and the foot ferrule is on the ground. 3. The left arm remains in the position of Attention and the Slow March executed in the normal manner. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is controlled by the right hand with pressure from the thumb on the leading leg. 2. The leading leg remains perpendicular. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) SLOW MARCH – TWO.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick continues to turn under the control of the right hand by twisting the wrist and applying pressure with the thumb on the leading leg of the stick. 2. At the same time the stick is kept perpendicular with the foot ferrule on the ground. 3. The left arm remains in the position of Attention and the Slow March executed in the normal manner. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is controlled by the right hand with pressure from the thumb on the leading leg. 2. The leading leg remains perpendicular. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOW MARCH.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is to call out: LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.	
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Confirm by collective practise: STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME SLOW MARCH.	Students to execute the movement and call out the timing: LEFT RIGHT LEFT RIGHT LEFT.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. Once the squad is proficient in Slow Time then demonstrate Quick Time.

LESSON 5 – CHANGING STICKS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Change Sticks on the March.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. The basis for this lesson is Changing Sticks in Slow Time. Changing Sticks in Quick Time is covered at the end of the lesson.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent. It is recommended that open Pace Stick drill be taught on grass until the squad becomes proficient.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace Stick drill is the Change Sticks. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to use the stick in either hand whilst marching in Quick or Slow Time, in a smart uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGING STICKS CHANGE STICKS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is not required to call out the timing.</p>	<p>1. There are two parts to this movement.</p>
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CHANGE STICKS – RIGHT TO LEFT - ONE (Fig 3-1-4).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the first movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. With the stick turning under the control of the right hand the cautionary word “Changing Sticks” is given. 2. The executive word “Change” is given on the left foot and the word “Sticks” given on the right foot. 3. On receipt of the command “Sticks” the leading leg of the stick is moved across the body, with the left foot passing inside the stick. 4. At the same time the left hand moves to the stick and takes control from the right hand; at this point both hands are on the stick. 5. At the same time the leading ferrule is placed on the ground to the outside of the left foot. 6. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand takes control from the right hand. 2. Both hands are still on the stick. 3. The stick is swung across the body so that the leading leg is now on the outside of the left foot. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) CHANGE STICKS – TWO.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. As the right foot comes forward the left hand takes control of the stick and the right hand is cut away to the side of the body. 2. The rear leg of the stick is moved across to the left and the foot ferrule placed on the ground. 3. The left hand reverses the turn and continues to pace the stick. 4. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The left hand controls the stick. 2. The turn is reversed and under the control of the left hand continues to pace sticks. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

3) CHANGE STICKS – LEFT TO RIGHT (Fig 3-1-5).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CHANGING STICKS CHANGE STICKS.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The executive word “Sticks” is given as the left foot is on the ground. 2. The stick under the control of the left hand moves across the body, with the right foot passing inside the stick. 3. The right hand then takes control of the stick and the left hand is cut away to the side of the body. 4. The rear leg is moved across the to the right and the foot ferrule placed on the ground. 5. The right hand reverses the turn and continues to pace the stick. 6. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out: ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The right hand controls the stick. 2. The turn is reversed and under the control of the right hand continues to pace sticks. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION (Fig 3-1-4 & 3-1-5).

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL</p> <p>CHANGING STICKS</p> <p>CHANGE STICKS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is not required to call out the timing.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The squad is to practise changing sticks from both hands. 2. There is no timing for this movement.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>Confirm by collective practise:</p> <p>STICK DRILL</p> <p>CHANGING STICKS</p> <p>CHANGE STICKS.</p>	<p>Students are not required to call out the timing.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. There is no timing for this movement. 3. Once the squad is proficient in changing in Slow Time they are to be practised in Quick Time.



CHANGING STICKS – RIGHT TO LEFT

Fig 3-1-4



CHANGING STICKS – LEFT TO RIGHT

Fig 3-1-5

CHANGING STICKS ON THE MARCH

LESSON 6 – CARRY STICKS / PACING STICKS

INSTRUCTOR'S NOTES

Aim	To teach the Carry Sticks and Pacing Sticks.
Timings	One 30 minute period.
Method	A basic outdoor or indoor instructional lesson. Explain the EXECUTION of the movements and emphasize the POINTS TO NOTE, as under column headings below. The basis of this lesson is Slow Time Drill. Carry and Pacing Sticks in Quick Time are covered at the end of the lesson.
Dress & Stores	Clean Working Dress.
Preparation	Select an area on the parade square or any area of hard ground, or indoor equivalent. It is recommended that open Pace Stick drill be taught on grass until the squad becomes proficient.

CONDUCT OF LESSON

A. PRELIMINARIES.

Squad Formation	The squad stood properly to Attention in a straight line.
Revision	Nil.
Spoken Introduction	The next stage in Pace Stick drill is the Carry Sticks and Pacing Sticks. The reason this movement is taught is to enable an individual to Carry Sticks and to resume Pacing Sticks when turning sticks in Quick and Slow Time, in a smart uniform manner.

B. COMPLETE DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to give a complete demonstration of the movement:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME CARRY STICKS PACE STICKS.</p>	<p>On the execution of the movement the instructor is not required to call out the timing.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There are two parts to this movement. 2. There is no timing for this movement.
<p>FOR THE PURPOSE OF INSTRUCTION THIS MOVEMENT IS BROKEN DOWN INTO TWO PARTS.</p>		

C. MOVEMENTS.

1) CARRY STICKS – ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The executive command “Sticks” is given on the left foot in Slow Time and right foot in Quick Time. 2. Working on the next right foot the stick is brought up into the Carry position. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad is to call out : ONE. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The stick is held in the Carry. 2. The right arm is bent with the elbow held well in. 3. The leading leg of the stick is perpendicular to the right leg. 4. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

2) PACING STICKS - ONE.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
<p>The instructor is to demonstrate the second movement giving the words of command:</p> <p>INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL JUDGING THE TIME PACE STICKS ONE.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The executive word of command is given on the left foot in Slow Time and right foot in Quick Time. 2. As the next left foot strikes the ground, the leading leg ferrule is placed on the ground and the stick is brought back into action. 3. On the execution of this movement the squad are not to call out the timing. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The cautionary word of command “Pacing” is given over three or four paces. 2. The stick is brought into action on the next left foot. This applies for both Quick and Slow Time. 3. The body is erect and square to the front.
<p>ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?</p>	<p>The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.</p>	

D. FINAL DEMONSTRATION.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
The instructor is to give a final and complete demonstration: INSTRUCTOR STICK DRILL CARRY STICKS PACE STICKS.	On the execution of the movement the instructor is not required to call out the timing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. There is no timing for this movement.
ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS?	The squad is to practise Collectively-Individually-Collectively.	

E. END OF LESSON DRILLS.

INSTRUCTOR	EXECUTION	POINTS TO NOTE
Confirm by collective practise: STICK DRILL CARRY STICKS PACE STICKS.	Students are not required to call out the timing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make any corrections where necessary. 2. Once the squad is proficient in changing in Slow Time they are to be practised in Quick Time. 3. There is no timing for this movement.

PART 3 - CHAPTER 2

SENTRY DRILL

1. **Teaching Method.** Personnel will first be taught the duties of a sentry as a squad. The most effective method of teaching is to start by teaching single sentry drill and then double sentry drill. Personnel must know the following duties of a sentry:

- a. Paying compliments, patrolling and halting at the sentry post.
- b. Challenging.
- c. Turning out the guard and the occasions on which this should happen.
- d. Action on being posted and relieved.
- e. Compliments due to officers and other groups.

2. GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS.

Before sentry drill is taught or practised, the instructor must start the lesson using the words of command:

“YOU ARE NOW ON SENTRY, AND THIS IS YOUR FRONT”.

3. The introductory word of command:

“AS ON SENTRY”

will be used before every word of command. All sentry drill will start and end at the Stand At Ease position and will have the regulation pause between each movement.

4. The sentry at the sentry post will:

- a. Stand At Ease facing the front in the centre of and one pace forward from, the sentry box, (if appropriate).
- b. Stand in the box only in bad weather.
- c. Not to leave the post or converse with anyone except in the execution of sentry duty.

5. The sentry on the beat will:

- a. March at the Slope Arms in Quick Time.
- b. When at the end of the beat turn left or right about, so that the back is never turned on the front of the post.

- c. Not Halt on the beat except when paying compliments and challenging.

6. **COMPLIMENTS.**

A sentry on post will attempt to be either at the Salute or Present Arms if the recipient of the Salute is less than three paces away. The sentry will return to the Slope Arms when the recipient has passed by a distance of three paces. If in a box the sentry will stand to Attention.

7. A tactical sentry with arms slung will Halt, turn to the front and remain at Attention until the officer or party has passed.

8. A sentry with a pickhelve or pistol will Salute with the hand.

9. **SINGLE SENTRY DRILL.**

The compliments of a single sentry at the sentry post can be practised as a squad using the following words of command and actions:

- a. **“AS ON SENTRY, TO THE FRONT SALUTE”.**

The squad, are to be at Stand At Ease, as would an individual sentry at post, and are to come to Attention, Slope Arms and Salute with the regulation pause between each movement.

- b. **“AS ON SENTRY, PRESENT ARMS”.**

Come to Attention, Slope Arms then Present Arms.

- c. **“AS ON SENTRY, STAND AT EASE”.**

If at the Salute, the squad will return the right hand to their side, then Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease. If they are at the Present Arms, the squad will Slope Arms, then Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease.

Note: When at his post a sentry will Present Arms from the Slope, and return to the Slope Arms prior to Shoulder Arms.

10. PATROLLING.

The squad can practise patrolling using the following words of command and actions:

a. **“AS ON SENTRY, TO THE RIGHT MARCH”.**

The squad will come to Attention, Slope Arms, turn to their right and step off in Quick Time.

b. **“AS ON SENTRY, ABOUT TURN”.**

This order is always given as the left heel strikes the ground. The squad in this case must Left About Turn. The movement is as for the Right About Turn taking a half marching pace to bring the right foot in beside the left in a sharp manner. The left knee is then bent so that the thigh is parallel to the ground with the foot hanging naturally below the knee, the head, shoulders, body and left foot are forced through 90 degrees to the right.

c. **“AS ON SENTRY, STAND AT EASE”.**

This is given as for the halt. The squad Halt, turn to their front, Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease.

11. **Compliments on the Sentry Beat.** Whenever possible, a sentry will return to his post to pay compliments. The only difference between compliments paid from the Stand At Ease position and from the march is that the Present Arms is from the Slope Arms and must return to the Slope Arms in the latter case. The squad must be practised in this.

12. **Patrolling a Given Number of Paces.** To practise patrolling a given number of paces, the instructor must give his orders before the squad start to patrol, by telling them to patrol out a set number of paces then on return, if required, to pay a compliment or Stand At Ease. The word of command would be for example:

“YOU ARE NOW ON SENTRY, YOUR BEAT IS FIFTEEN PACES TO THE RIGHT. AS ON SENTRY, TO THE RIGHT MARCH”.

Note: The given number of paces is always an odd number, so that the end of the beat always comes on a left foot. The count starts again when the left foot first strikes the ground after the About Turn is completed. When the sentry is going to Halt the full number of paces is counted and the right knee bent after the last pace of the count. If a sentry cannot return to the post to pay a compliment the actions are to Halt, face the front, Salute or Present Arms, and then continue on patrol.

13. **DOUBLE SENTRY DRILL.**

A double sentry is composed of two sentries who act together from a series of commands and/or hand signals.

14. **Instructions.** The co-ordination of the movements of double sentries is achieved by a series of words of command and/or hand signals. These commands and signals are normally given by the right hand sentry, who should be the senior person in command of the post. The only exception to this rule is when the left hand sentry or junior person, sees an approaching officer or party, in which case that person will give the command or signal.

15. **Commands when at the Halt.** The right hand senior sentry will look toward the left hand sentry and then give the appropriate word of command, for example:

“PATROL”, “SALUTE”, “PRESENT”.

16. The left hand sentry will acknowledge the order with a look. They then both look to their front, observe the pause, then carry out the movements in unison.

17. **Commands on the March.** These orders are given by the right hand senior sentry by straightening the fingers of the right hand on the inward beat with the back of the hand to the front indicating as follows:

- a. One finger. Stand At Ease.
- b. Two fingers. Salute.
- c. Whole hand. Present Arms.

18. In order to practise the movements the instructor must number and prove the squad, then divide them by making the left half move:

“FOUR PACES, LEFT SIDEWAYS MARCH”.

Stationing himself behind the squad in the centre with it at Stand At Ease, knowing the number of paces that they are to patrol outwards, the necessary orders are given.

19. **PATROLLING.**

The executive word of command is:

“PATROL”.

The squad pause, come to Attention, Slope Arms, turn outwards and patrol in Quick Time over their given beat. They should be allowed to continue until the two halves are together and ready to progress further.

20. **Stand At Ease – One Finger.** On the instructor raising one finger the squad must straighten the forefinger of their right hand as they come forward for the last three beats of the right foot, before they halt at the end of their inward beat. They then turn to their front, Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease.

21. **Compliments from the Halt.** These can be the Salute or the Present Arms:

a. The instructor will give the word of command: **“SALUTE”**. The squad pause, come to Attention, Slope Arms and Salute. They remain at the Salute for five seconds, then look inwards, pause, look to their front, Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease.

b. The instructor will give the word of command: **“PRESENT”**. The squad pause, come to Attention, Slope Arms and Present Arms. They remain at the Present for five seconds then look inwards, pause, look to their front, Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease.

22. **Compliments on the Beat.** When an instructor raises two fingers the squad will straighten the first two fingers of their right hand:

a. **Two fingers – Salute.** The squad Halt at the end of their inward beat, turn to their front, Salute for five seconds, look inwards, then look to their front, return their right arm to the side, turn outwards and continue to patrol.

b. **Whole hand – Present.** When the instructor opens the whole hand, the squad straighten all the fingers of their right hand and carry out the same procedures as for the Salute.

Note: The Present Arms is always carried out from the Slope Arms, and the squad will always return to the Slope Arms after the Present Arms.

23. When a squad have practised all the movements of double sentry, they should be split into pairs, the right hand person designated as senior, but ensuring that both are practised as senior person. The junior person must always take the timings from that of the senior person. Whenever possible, double sentries will return to their posts to pay compliments. If this is not possible, the sentry first sighting an officer must give the appropriate signal on three successive beats of the left foot. Both sentries will then Halt, turn to their front, pay compliments, turn inward and continue to patrol.

PART 3 - CHAPTER 3

STATE CEREMONIAL

STREET LINING

1. A flight for Street Lining is to comprise of one officer, one SNCO and one JNCO marker. The number of personnel can be subject to change but normally will comprise of 24 other ranks. If forming part of a Tri-Service street lining contingent the street lining flight is referred to as a Half Company.
2. When in position the interval between pairs of street liners is normally 9 paces, this can vary depending on the nature of the route to be lined, street liners are one pace from the kerb, officers (and Colours and Standards, if carried) are to be on the right side of the procession as it approaches with the officer in the centre of the street lining flight. If the procession is to return along the same route the officer (Colour/Standard, if carried) and SNCO will need to change position to be on the right side of the procession as it passes for the second time.
3. The flight is to be formed up in 3 ranks in the mounting area. If the Street lining flights are to march out in sectors then they may be formed up in sixes ie 2 street lining flights formed up side by side which separate as they reach their own allocated position.
4. Bands are not to be placed where the route is left open by police or traffic. If circumstances permit they are to be placed opposite the Colour or Standard party; otherwise they are to be conveniently placed where a side street opens into the route of procession. The leading rank of the Band is to be in line with the personnel lining the route.
5. Flight commanders will be allotted the area of the route they are to line. A JNCO Marker is to be positioned for each street lining flight by the conducting WO to provide each flight with a point to march onto. The SNCO is to act as the guide for the flight and change position depending on whether the flight is formed up left or right leading approximately 8 paces from the JNCO marker.

TAKING UP POSITION AS A STREET LINING FLIGHT.

6. Approximately 20 paces from the JNCO Marker the officer is to peel off from his position in the front centre of his flight to the flank furthest from the kerb. The SNCO is to move across to the opposite flank when the flight is approximately 8 paces from the marker. The officer is to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT HALT

NUMBER X FLIGHT INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN

NUMBER X FLIGHT FORM TWO RANKS

NUMBER X FLIGHT RIGHT DRESS” (the dressing is without intervals)

“EYES FRONT”.

7. The officer is then to take up position on the flank of the flight closest to the JNCO marker and SNCO. The officer is then to give the command:

“FRONT RANK QUICK MARCH”.

8. The front rank is to march across to the opposite side of the road. In sufficient time before they reach the kerb the officer is to give the command:

“FRONT RANK HALT

FRONT RANK ABOUT TURN

NUMBER X FLIGHT OUTWARDS TURN”.

9. Both ranks are to turn outwards away from the JNCO Marker and the SNCO. The SNCO and JNCO are to remain facing each other. The officer is then to give the command:

“AT X PACES EXTENDED QUICK MARCH”.

10. Working as pairs across the road each pair of street liners step off and halt in pairs their set number of paces. Each pair must extend to an odd number of paces. (Using 9 paces as an example the first pair would march out and Halt 8, 1-2, and so it would continue along the flight). Once they have halted each pair turn inwards, Shoulder Arms and dress off in the direction of the two NCOs. When the dressing is complete the officer is to incline his head towards the SNCO who will then nod which is the signal for the street liners to turn their head and eyes to the front in pairs. Once this has been completed the SNCO and JNCO will Fix Bayonets on receipt of a further nod from the SNCO. Each pair of street liners will then Fix Bayonets together after observing the regulation pause after the preceding pair.

11. The SNCO is then to Slope Arms and commence to pace out the area covered by the flight. The SNCO is to Halt after each interval and adjust the position of the street liners as necessary. The SNCO is then to return to position and Shoulder Arms. The officer is then to take up position in the centre of the flight and give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT STAND AT EASE”

“STAND EASY” (only if Colours are not on parade).

12. If the route is to be proved by the sector commander the SNCO is to accompany the sector commander along the area covered by the flight. As the sector commander approaches the flight the officer is to call the flight to Attention. As the sector commander approaches, the officer he is to salute and state his flight as follows: **“Number X Flight Sir”**. Once the sector commander has passed the flank of the flight the SNCO is to return to position, and Shoulder Arms. The officer is then to give the following command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT STAND AT EASE”

“STAND EASY” (only if Colours are not on parade).

ARRIVAL OF THE PROCESSION.

13. The officer must be thoroughly briefed when to bring the flight to Attention, Slope Arms, and Present Arms. For a Royal procession the following is the usual sequence. The mounted Police are the warning that the procession is approaching. When the advance points are visible the officer is to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT SHUN”.

14. When the NCO is visible the officer is to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT SLOPE ARMS”.

15. As the first Division of the Sovereigns Escort reaches the flank of the flight the officer is to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT PRESENT ARMS”.

16. The flight is to remain at the Present Arms until the fourth Division of the Sovereigns Escort has passed the far flank. The officer is then to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT SLOPE ARMS

NUMBER X FLIGHT SHOULDER ARMS”.

17. The flight may Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease. They may be at Stand Easy at this point providing no Colours are on parade.

18. The point at which the flight is to close up must be pre-briefed and thoroughly understood by the officer. At the point in the ceremonial that the officer has been briefed to close up the officer is to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT SHUN

NUMBER X FLIGHT SLOPE ARMS

NUMBER X FLIGHT INWARDS TURN

NUMBER X FLIGHT QUICK MARCH”.

19. The flight turn inwards towards the two NCOs who remain facing each other. The street liners in their pairs step off together the same number of paces that they extended and Halt. The officer is to step off and take up position approximately 2 paces to the right of and one pace forward of the JNCO marker. The officer is then to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT INWARDS TURN”.

20. The ranks turn to face each other. The officer is then to give the command:

“FRONT RANK BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

21. Just before the front rank reach the rear rank position the officer is to give the command:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT HALT
FRONT RANK ABOUT TURN”.**

22. The officer is then to take up position 3 paces in front of and in the centre of the flight. The officer is then to give the command:

**“NUMBER X FLIGHT WILL UNFIX BAYONETS
UNFIX BAYONETS SHUN
NUMBER X FLIGHT FORM THREE RANKS
NUMBER X FLIGHT RIGHT DRESS”**

23. The SNCO is to march out 5 paces (4, 1-2) and Halt, About Turn and adjust the dressing of the front rank. The SNCO is then to give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT EYES FRONT”

24. The SNCO is then to march back into position, execute a turn into line and Shoulder Arms. The officer is then to turn the flight into column of route and give the command:

“NUMBER X FLIGHT BY THE LEFT/RIGHT QUICK MARCH”.

25. The flight is then to be marched back to the assembly point dismissed in accordance with the officer’s briefing.

Note: If street lining Flights are escorting Colours or Standards they are to have Bayonets Fixed from the point before the Colour or Standard is marched on until they have been marched off at the end of the ceremonial.

PATROLLING.

26. If Street Lining flights are to be in position for a long period of time they may be authorised to patrol. All patrolling is to be controlled by the SNCO, who is to come to Attention, Slope Arms and march to the first pair of street liners on the opposite flank. The SNCO is then to give the command:

‘PATROL’.

The pair will come to Attention, Slope Arms and step off to commence patrolling. The pair are to patrol together, march to the opposite flank, About Turn together and march back into position, Halt turn to face each other, Shoulder Arms and adjust their dressing. Working on a nod from the senior street liner the pair are then to Stand At Ease and Stand Easy providing there are no Colours on parade. The SNCO may remain at this position to supervise the operation or move along to prepare the next pair as the SNCO sees fit. Apart from the first pair to patrol who are on the extreme flank all pairs are to patrol to the flank where the JNCO marker is positioned, About Turn, patrol to the opposite flank, About Turn and then march back into position.

CARPET LINING AND STEP GUARDS

27. On occasions when it is inappropriate to mount a Guard of Honour, units may be tasked with providing either a Carpet Lining or a Step Guard party. On these occasions the size of the guard is not to exceed 1 officer/WO and 30 personnel or 1 SNCO and 10 personnel respectively. The guard is to be unarmed, including sidearms, and are to parade in ceremonial white webbing and great coats as appropriate.

28. The guard is to be formed up in the mounting area in two ranks in close order. The officer or NCO commanding the guard is to give the word of command:

“LINING PARTY, SHUN”

“LINING PARTY MOVE TO THE LEFT/RIGHT IN FILE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”

“LINING PARTY BY THE LEFT/RIGHT QUICK MARCH”

(Depending on any factors that would affect the directing flank).

The party step off, in the event of a carpet guard the two files will need to open out the width of the carpet and cover off the edge, also they will need to extend the length of the area to be lined. If there is no carpet the guard will need to be pre briefed the distance that they will have to open out. In the event of a Step Guard the guard will need to be pre briefed and thoroughly rehearsed as to which steps each pair are to occupy and the method to be used for halting, turning into line, dressing and compliments.

The officer commanding is to give the following words of command:

“LINING PARTY HALT”

“LINING PARTY INWARDS TURN”

(The lining party turn inwards to face each other)

“LINING PARTY INWARDS DRESS”.

The dressing is adjusted by the WO or SNCO who is then to give the command:

“LINING PARTY EYES FRONT”.

The officer, WO or SNCO commanding is then to give the command:

“LINING PARTY STAND AT EASE”

“STAND EASY”.

On the arrival of the dignitary the commander is to give the command:

“LINING PARTY SHUN”.

The commander is to pay compliments at the appropriate time. When the dignitary has passed the commander is to give the command:

“LINING PARTY OUTWARDS TURN”.

(The lining party turn in the direction that they have been briefed to march off)

“QUICK MARCH”.

The lining party are to step off and close up into two closely formed ranks achieved by the leading pairs stepping short and the rear pairs stepping out. On arrival at the dismissing area the commander is to give the words of command:

“LINING PARTY HALT”

“LINING PARTY INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”

“LINING PARTY DISMISS”.

It is usual for an officer to hand over command of the lining party to a WO or SNCO to be dismissed in accordance with the customs and traditions of the service.

Note: In locations where lining parties are mounted involving aircraft it may be necessary for safety reasons to march on in 4 ranks, instead of 2. An example of this is at Heathrow airport where the wing tip of certain aircraft overhang the area covered by the lining party. In this instance the lining party are to remain in 4 ranks until the aircraft engines have cut and then be formed in 2 ranks and the dressing adjusted under the command of the officer, WO or SNCO in charge of the lining party.

PART 3 - CHAPTER 4

FORMING

1. The 'Form' enables a body of troops of over six files to change their direction to the right or left whilst remaining in line. It will be taught first in Slow Time to individual files from the Halt to the Halt and then practised by the whole squad. It will be carried out in close order. A squad must not have a person missing from the rank that is to the front when it is about to Form.

FORMING FROM THE HALT TO THE HALT (RIGHT FORM).

2. To change direction right by forming the instructor is to give the following words of command:

“CHANGE DIRECTION RIGHT AT THE HALT RIGHT FORM”.

The following actions are carried out by the squad:

- a. The right hand man of the front rank executes a Right Turn.
- b. The remainder of the front rank execute a Right Incline.
- c. The remainder of the squad stand still.

The instructor is then to give the following words of command:

“SLOW MARCH”.

The following actions are carried out by the squad:

- a. The right hand man of the front rank marches forward 5 paces in Slow Time and Halts.
- b. The right hand men of the centre and rear ranks Slow March to their positions one and 2 paces directly behind the right hand man respectively and Halt.
- c. The remainder of the squad Slow March into position halting in line with, and at the correct interval from, the man on their right.

3. **Common faults.** These are:

- a. Not halting with the correct interval between files.
- b. Increasing the length of pace and rate of marching.

Once the squad have mastered the movement it is then to be taught in Quick Time in exactly the same manner as in Slow Time.

FORMING FROM MARCHING TO THE HALT (RIGHT FORM)

4. This movement is to be taught first in Slow Time. The instructor is to give the following words of command:

“CHANGE DIRECTION RIGHT AT THE HALT RIGHT FORM”.

(The executive part of the word of command is given as the left foot strikes the ground).

- a. The right hand man of the front rank pivots through an angle of 90 degrees to the right, Slow Marches 5 paces forward and Halts.
- b. The remainder of the leading rank pivot through an angle of 45 degrees to their right, Slow March to their positions and Halt.
- c. The remainder of the squad follow round to their positions and Halt.

5. **Common faults:** The common fault is the leading rank not pivoting on receipt of the word of command: **“Form”**.

This movement is then to be taught in Quick Time. The word of command: **“Form”** is given as the left foot strikes the ground.

FORMING ON THE MARCH

6. If the words of command: **“At the Halt!”** is omitted the squad will Mark Time after Forming.

FORMING FROM THE HALT TO THE HALT (LEFT FORM).

7. To change direction left by forming the instructor is to give the following words of command:

“CHANGE DIRECTION LEFT AT THE HALT LEFT FORM”.

The following actions are carried out by the squad:

- a. The left hand man of the front rank executes a Left Turn.
- b. The remainder of the front rank execute a Left Incline.
- c. The remainder of the squad stand still.

The instructor is then to give the following words of command:

“SLOW MARCH”.

The following actions are carried out by the squad:

- a. The left hand man of the front rank marches forward 5 paces in Slow Time and Halts.
- b. The left hand men of the centre and rear ranks Slow March to their positions one and 2 paces directly behind the left hand man respectively and Halt.
- c. The remainder of the squad Slow March into position halting in line with, and at the correct interval from, the man on their left.

8. **Common faults.** These are:

- a. Not halting with the correct interval between files.
- b. Increasing the length of pace and rate of marching.

Once the squad have mastered the movement it is then to be taught in Quick Time in exactly the same manner as in Slow Time.

FORMING FROM MARCHING TO THE HALT.

9. This movement is to be taught first in Slow Time. The instructor is to give the following words of command:

“CHANGE DIRECTION LEFT AT THE HALT LEFT FORM”.

(The executive part of the word of command is given as the right foot strikes the ground).

- a. The left hand man of the front rank pivots through an angle of 90 degrees to the left, Slow Marches 5 paces forward and Halts.
- b. The remainder of the leading rank pivot through an angle of 45 degrees to their left, Slow March to their positions and Halt.
- c. The remainder of the squad follow to their positions and Halt.

10. **Common faults.** The common fault is the leading rank not pivoting on receipt of the word of command: **“Form”**.

FORMING ON THE MARCH.

11. If the word of command: **“At the Halt”** is omitted the squad will Mark Time after Forming.

PART 3 - CHAPTER 5

LONDON PUBLIC DUTIES

General Instructions

1. Guards and sentries are always to carry out their duties with smartness and precision. They are also to realise that they are in a position of great responsibility, and that they are to act with initiative.
2. With amendment the Guard mounting and dismounting procedure used for Public Duties at the Royal Palaces could be adapted for use on an RAF Station when the need arises. The SWO or a qualified Drill Instructor should be consulted to make any necessary amendments to ensure that the correct protocol is maintained.

Paying of compliments by Guards and Sentries

3. Guards (including Guards of Honour) mounted over persons of the Queen and other members of the Royal Family, are to pay no compliments except to the Queen and other members of the Royal Family. Guards (including Guards of Honour) over Governors General and Commanders-in-Chief, within their respective governments or commands, are to pay no compliments to officers or persons of lesser degree. When such guards are visited by officers on duty they are to turn out to them with rifles at the Slope Arms.
4. When Guards, Rounds, Reliefs, or other parties on the march, meet Her Majesty the Queen, or any member of the Royal Family, they are to Halt, turn in the required direction and Present Arms. To other persons entitled to a Salute they are to Halt, turn to the required direction and Salute. Rifles are to be carried at the Shoulder Arms when Halted and at the Slope Arms when in Quick Time.
5. All guards and sentries are to pay the same compliments to commissioned officers of the Royal Navy, Royal Marines, Army, Militia and Auxiliary Forces, when in uniform, as directed to be paid to officers of the Royal Air Force.

Occasions for Turning Out the Guard

6. Guards are to turn out and Present Arms in accordance with their orders which are to be read to and fully understood by all personnel of the guard by either the officer or senior Sergeant of the guard. Guards are to turn out when armed parties of any branch of the service approach their posts. To an armed Corps they are to Present Arms and for any other armed party they are to stand with their rifles at the Slope Arms. The expression “armed Corps” means an armed party of certain strength, or position, ie:

A regiment of cavalry.

A battery of RHA or RA.

Garrison artillery of not less than two companies.

Engineers of not less than three companies.

A battalion of infantry with or without Colours.

A battalion of tanks.

An armoured car company.

Royal Logistics Corps of not less three companies.

Armed units of the Royal Air Force (squadron and above).

A ships company of the Royal Navy or a party of 400 or more naval ratings.

Service Funerals.

Compliments by Sentries

7. Sentries are to be thoroughly briefed on the compliments to be paid to dignitaries before they are posted on relief in accordance with Queens Regulations for the Royal Air Force or Household Division Standing Orders.

Challenging

8. All methods of challenging are to be strictly in accordance with the current JSP in force and is to be read and thoroughly understood by all personnel before they are posted on relief.

Guard Mounting and Dismounting

9. This Chapter details the procedure to be used for Guard Mounting and Dismounting at Royal Palaces when undertaking Public Duties, using Wellington Barracks which is the usual mounting barracks for Public Duties in London. Drill Instructors are to note that the Ceremonial on Buckingham Palace forecourt is applicable to a Guard Mount using the North Centre Gate of Buckingham Palace.

Procedure at Wellington Barracks

10. The Squadron is to be sized by Detachments in three ranks with the St James' Detachment on the right flank at Stand Easy. The Flight Sergeant of the St James' Palace Detachment is to be in the centre of the formation and 12 paces forward of the front rank. As the Squadron WO approaches he is to give the commands:

“SQUADRON SQUADRON SHUN”.

The Flight Sergeant is to hand over command of Duties to the Squadron WO stating the strength by number and rank. He is then to return to his position to the right of the St James' Palace Detachment in line with the front Rank, Shoulder Arms, take up a dressing to his left, Stand At Ease and Stand Easy.

The Squadron WO is then to give the command:

“SQUADRON RIGHT MARKERS”.

The Squadron are to brace up and the Senior Sergeant of the St James' Palace Detachment (Flight Sergeant) and the Senior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment (both of whom are positioned on the right of their respective detachments in line with the front rank) come to Attention, Slope Arms and step off together and Halt after 7 paces (6, 1-2), together they are to Shoulder Arms, and Stand At Ease.

The Squadron WO is then to give the command:

“GET ON, - PARADE!”

The Squadron inclusive of the markers are to come to Attention, Slope Arms and step off together and Halt after 7 paces (ie 6, 1-2). The duties are to Shoulder Arms and Stand At Ease together without any further word of command.

The Senior Sergeant of the St James' Palace Detachment is then to give the words of command:

“ST JAMES' PALACE DETACHMENT STAND AT EASE”.

The Senior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment is then to give the words of command:

“BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT STAND AT EASE”.

The Squadron WO is then to give the words of command:

**“SQUADRON SHUN
IN OPEN ORDER RIGHT DRESS”.**

The Duties are to take alignment from the right. The Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment is to Slope Arms, execute a Right Turn and march out 5 paces (4, 1-2) to check and adjust the dressing of all three ranks. After adjusting the dressing of the rear rank he is to return to his position 5 paces from and facing the front rank and give the command:

“SQUADRON EYES FRONT”.

The Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment is then to march back 5 paces to his original position, execute a Right Turn, Shoulder Arms, take up a dressing from the left and move his head and eyes to the front.

The Squadron WO is then to give the command:

**“SQUADRON WILL FIX BAYONETS
FIX BAYONETS
SHUN
SQUADRON STAND AT EASE
STAND EASY”.**

When the OC approaches the Squadron WO is to give the following command:

“SQUADRON SQUADRON SHUN”.

The Squadron WO is to hand the Duties over to the OC (Captain of the Guard) and state that Duties are formed up for Guard Mount. The Squadron WO is then to march away and take up his position with the Colour Party.

The Captain of the Guard is to give the word of command:

**“SQUADRON STAND AT EASE
SQUADRON SHUN
FALL IN THE OFFICER”.**

The Junior Officer commanding the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to Salute, the Captain is to return the Salute. The Officer Commanding the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to step off and Halt 3 paces forward of, and centralised on, the Buckingham Palace Detachment facing the Captain.

The Captain is then to give the following command:

“OFFICERS INSPECT YOUR DETACHMENTS”.

Both the Officers are to step off and Halt 2 paces in front of their respective Senior Sergeant. The Senior Sergeants are to come to Attention, Slope Arms, take one pace forward and state their Detachments by numbers, rank and position:

- a. Sir, The St James’ Palace Detachment, one Senior Sergeant, one Junior Sergeant, two Corporals forming the Captains escort detached to the Colour and fifteen personnel, ready for inspection, Sir.
- b. Sir, The Buckingham Palace Detachment, one Senior Sergeant, one Junior Sergeant, two Corporals conducting reliefs and fifteen personnel, ready for inspection, Sir.

Both Officers are now to inspect their respective Detachments accompanied by their respective Senior Sergeant. The OC Buckingham Palace Detachment is to finish inspecting before Captain of the Guard and assume his original position in front of the Buckingham Palace Detachment. The Senior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT STAND AT EASE”.

Once the Captain of the Guard has finished inspecting the St James’ Palace Detachment he is to assume his original position in front of both Detachments. The Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“ST JAMES’ PALACE DETACHMENT STAND AT EASE”.

The movement is to be completed before the Captain of the Guard has reached his position.

The Captain of the Guard is then to give the command:

“SQUADRON STAND EASY”.

At the correct time the Captain of the Guard is to give the command:

“SQUADRON SQUADRON SHUN

SQUADRON SLOPE ARMS

IN CLOSE ORDER RIGHT DRESS”.

The Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment on completion of taking one pace rearwards is to Slope Arms, execute a Right Turn and march out 5 paces (4, 1 –2) and adjust the dressing of the front rank. He is then to give the command:

“SQUADRON EYES FRONT”.

The Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment is then to march back in to his original position and execute a Right Turn, Slope Arms, take up alignment from the left and move his head and eyes to the front.

The Captain of the guard is then to give the command:

“OFFICERS WILL DRAW SWORDS

DRAW SWORDS

MARCH ON THE QUEEN’S COLOUR FOR THE ROYAL AIR FORCE

IN THE UNITED KINGDOM PRESENT ARMS”.

The Colour Bearer is then to give the command:

“COLOUR PARTY BY THE CENTRE QUICK MARCH”.

The Colour Party marches into position 3 paces in front of and centralised on the front rank of the St James’ Palace Detachment. The Colour Bearer is then to order:

“COLOUR PARTY ABOUT TURN”.

The WO is to execute a Left Turn and march off to a position 2 paces from the rear of and centralised on the rear rank of the St James’ Palace Detachment.

The Colour Bearer is then to give the command:

“PRESENT ARMS”.

The Captain of the Guard is then to give the command:

“SLOPE ARMS

STAND FAST THE ST JAMES’ PALACE DETACHMENT

BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT MOVE TO THE RIGHT RIGHT TURN”.

The Captain of the Guard is then to step off and take up position 3 paces in front of and centralised on the Colour Bearer. He is then to give the command:

“SQUADRON TO YOUR DUTIES QUICK MARCH”.

The Duties are to step off together. The Buckingham Palace Detachment Mark Time for 4 paces prior to moving. Judging his words of command to allow the Buckingham Palace Detachment to be covered off behind the St James’ Palace Detachment when the following

movement is executed, the OC Buckingham Palace Detachment is to give the words of command:

“BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT INTO LINE LEFT TURN”.

The Duties are to execute a Left Wheel as they approach the railings and follow the railings along to the Birdcage Walk gates and execute a Right Wheel into the Spur Road.

As the Duties exit Wellington Barracks the WO is to give the command:

“ESCORTS OUT”.

The Corporals of the St James’ Palace Detachment (The Captains Escort) are to adopt the High Port Arms position and double forward 16 paces (14, 1-2), they then Halt, adopt the Slope Arms position and step off in unison in step with the Duties.

The Captains Escort are to march to the North Centre Gate of Buckingham Palace ensuring that no one passes between the Captain and the Colour. The Captains Escort are authorised to use minimum force if the need arises. Swords and Colours are to be at the Slope once out of Wellington Barracks and returned to the carry at Australia Gate.

Procedure on arrival at Buckingham Palace

11. The Duties are to execute a Left Wheel and enter the North Centre Gate of Buckingham Palace. (When the Colour has passed through the gate the Squadron are addressed as New Guard).

The Captain of the Guard is to give the command:

“DETACHMENTS INTO LINE”.

When the Junior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment is level with the Senior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment Old Guard, he is to indicate in a loud clear voice to the Captain of the Guard using the words:

“RIGHT SIR”.

The Captain of the Guard is then to give the command:

“LEFT FORM”.

When all forming is complete the WO is to indicate in a loud clear voice using the words:

“RIGHT SIR”.

The Captain is then to give the command:

“FORWARD”.

At the pre-determined place the Captain is to give the command:

“NEW GUARD HALT

NEW GUARD IN OPEN ORDER RIGHT DRESS”.

The WO is to march around to the right flank and position himself 5 paces from and level with the front rank. He is to adjust the dressing of all three ranks moving to each one in turn. He is then to return to the position level with the front rank and give the command:

“NEW GUARD EYES FRONT”.

The WO is then to step off and assume his position to the rear and central to the New Guard.

The Captain is then to give the command:

“NEW GUARD BY THE RIGHT SLOW MARCH”.

When in line with the second gold Orb from the North pillar of the Centre Gateway the Captain is to give the command:

“NEW GUARD HALT”.

The Captain of the Old Guard is then to give the command:

“OLD GUARD PRESENT ARMS”.

The Captain of the New Guard is then to give the command:

“NEW GUARD PRESENT ARMS”.

Both Captains are to return their swords to the Carry and step off together to the centre of the forecourt and exchange the ceremonial to Buckingham Palace. They are then to return to the centre of, and facing their guards approximately 3 paces from the Colour Bearer and OC Buckingham Palace Detachment.

The Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“OLD GUARD SLOPE ARMS”.

The Captain of the New Guard is to give the command:

“NEW GUARD SLOPE ARMS”.

The Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“OLD GUARD SHOULDER ARMS”.

The Captain of the New Guard is to give the command:

“NEW GUARD SHOULDER ARMS”.

The Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“OLD GUARD STAND AT EASE”.

The Captain of the New Guard is to give the command:

“NEW GUARD STAND AT EASE”.

The Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“OLD GUARD STAND EASY”.

The Captain of the New Guard is to give the command:

“NEW GUARD STAND EASY”.

Immediately on the receipt of this command, the Corporals of the Old Guard come to Attention, Slope Arms and march around to the front of their respective Detachments and Halt together facing the front rank. At the same time the Senior Sergeants from the St James’ and Buckingham Palace Detachments of both Guards come to Attention, Slope Arms and step off together to meet in the centre of the forecourt, the command to Halt being the responsibility of the Old Guard SNCOs. The Old Guard Senior Sergeants brief their counter parts on any known Royal movements, the number of Sentries posted, the current Police and Bikini Alert States, and any abnormalities relating to their respective locations. The officers of both the Old and New Guards take the following actions:

The Captains step off together, meet in the middle of the forecourt and take position at the centre arch and await the arrival of the Officers Commanding Buckingham Palace Detachments. Once this has been completed they report to the Privy Purse door to be informed of any Royal movements and thereafter patrol the forecourt. The Officers Commanding the Buckingham Palace Detachments (Subalterns in Army terminology) report to the Captains of both Guards and request permission to take over the Buckingham Palace Guardroom and thereafter patrol the forecourt.

In the event of a large Guard (HM the Queen in official residence) compliments must be paid by both Guards to the Queens LifeGuard when they pass Buckingham Palace. In this event once the word of command: **“Stand At Ease”** has been given by the Captain of the Old Guard, both Captains are to return their swords to the Carry and step off together and take position at the centre archway of Buckingham Palace central to both Guards and facing towards the railings. On the appearance of the Queen’s LifeGuard the Captain of the Old Guard is to assume command of both Guards and give the following words of command:

“OLD AND NEW GUARD SHUN

OLD AND NEW GUARD SLOPE ARMS

OLD AND NEW GUARD PRESENT ARMS”.

When the Queen's LifeGuard has returned compliments and have passed the Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“OLD AND NEW GUARD SHOULDER ARMS

OLD AND NEW GUARD STAND AT EASE

OLD GUARD STAND EASY”.

The Captain of the New Guard is then to give the command:

“NEW GUARD STAND EASY”.

The ceremonial is then to continue from the point at which the Captain of the New Guard gave the words of command:

“STAND EASY”.

When the briefing is complete the Old Guard Senior Sergeants are to give the command to step off, whereupon they execute an About Turn and step off. Halt, in their original positions About Turn, Shoulder Arms, Stand At Ease and Stand Easy; with the exception of the New Guard Senior Sergeants who march back to their respective Detachments to Halt 3 paces from and one pace to the right of their Detachments front rank. They remain at the Slope Arms position. The Senior Sergeant of the St James' Palace Detachment is then to give the command:

“NEW GUARD NEW GUARD SHUN”

“JUNIOR SERGEANT CORPORALS FIRST RELIEF AND THE OLD SOLDIER

SLOPE ARMS”.

The Senior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“JUNIOR SERGEANT CORPORALS FIRST RELIEF AND THE OLD SOLDIER

SLOPE ARMS”.

The Senior Sergeant of the St James' Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“FORM RELIEF QUICK MARCH”.

The Senior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“FORM RELIEF QUICK MARCH”.

The word of command must be given so when the Buckingham Palace Relief step off they are in step with the St James' Palace Detachment Relief. On this word of command the Buckingham Palace Detachment Senior Sergeant is to step off and Halt in his original position, About Turn, Shoulder Arms, take up alignment to his left and move his head and eyes to the front.

Approximately half way across the forecourt the Junior Sergeant of the St James' Palace Relief is to give the word of command:

“ST JAMES’ PALACE NEW RELIEF”.

Immediately after this the Junior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“BUCKINGHAM PALACE NEW RELIEF”.

The Junior Sergeants of both marching Reliefs are to step out to the left flank of their respective Relief and march round to a position in between the front rank and the Corporals of the Old Guard, facing the Corporals of the Old Guard. The Junior Sergeant of the St James' Palace New Relief is to give the command:

“RELIEF HALT”.

Immediately after this the Junior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace New Relief is to give the command:

“RELIEF HALT”.

The Junior Sergeant of the St James' Palace Relief is to give the command:

“ST JAMES’ PALACE RELIEF IN CLOSE ORDER RIGHT DRESS”.

The Junior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Relief is to give the word of command:

“BUCKINGHAM PALACE RELIEF IN CLOSE ORDER RIGHT DRESS”.

The Junior Sergeant of the St James' Palace Relief is to give the command:

“ST JAMES’ PALACE DETACHMENT EYES FRONT”.

The Junior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT EYES FRONT”.

The Junior Sergeant of the St James' Palace Detachment is to give the command:

**“ST JAMES’ PALACE DETACHMENT, MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN FILE, RIGHT
TURN”.**

The Junior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to give the command:

**“BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN FILE
RIGHT TURN”.**

The Junior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“ST JAMES’ PALACE RELIEF BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

The Junior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“BUCKINGHAM PALACE RELIEF BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

On receipt of their respective words of command both Reliefs step off to the relevant Guardrooms, The Buckingham Palace Relief paying compliments to the Sentry at Number 2 Post and the St James’ Palace Relief paying compliments to Number 3 Post. The St James’ palace is to enter St James’ Palace through Stable Yard Road gate and further pay compliments to the Sentry on Number 6 Post outside Clarence House.

As the Junior Sergeants of the New Relief are carrying out the dressing the Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“REMAINDER RIGHT DRESS”
(when the dressing is carried out there is no gap between Detachments).

After this word of command has been issued the WO is to step off and take up a position 5 paces from the right of the front rank and adjust the dressing of all 3 ranks in turn. He is then to return to the position 5 paces from the right of the front rank and give the command:

“NEW GUARD EYES FRONT”.

The WO is then to assume his original position at the rear centre of the Guard.

During the interlude of the first piece of incidental music the Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment Old Guard is to give the command:

“OLD GUARD OLD GUARD SHUN

OLD GUARD CHANGE ARMS

STAND AT EASE

STAND EASY”.

The Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment New Guard is then to give the command:

“NEW GUARD NEW GUARD SHUN

NEW GUARD CHANGE ARMS

STAND AT EASE

STAND EASY”.

During the interlude of the second piece of incidental music the Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment Old Guard is to give the command:

“OLD GUARD OLD GUARD SHUN

OLD GUARD CHANGE ARMS

STAND AT EASE

STAND EASY”.

The Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace New Guard is then to give the command:

“NEW GUARD NEW GUARD SHUN

NEW GUARD CHANGE ARMS

STAND AT EASE

STAND EASY”.

The Corporals of the Buckingham Palace Detachment New Guard are to report to the Captains who are patrolling and Halt. They are to pay compliments together after which the Senior Corporal is to state:

“SIR THE SENTRIES HAVE BEEN POSTED PRESENT AND CORRECT”.

The Junior Corporal is to state:

**“SIR, THE ORDER BOARDS AND SENTRY BOXES HAVE BEEN TAKEN OVER
IN GOOD ORDER PRESENT AND CORRECT.”**

They are to then to pay compliments and step off together to assume their original position on the left flank of the Buckingham Palace Detachment. The Corporals are not to speak until the paying of compliments has been completed and are not to leave the Captains until the Captain of the New Guard has completed his Salute.

The Corporal at the rear is then to give the command:

“HALT

SHOULDER ARMS

LEFT DRESS

EYES FRONT

STAND AT EASE

STAND EASY”.

The Corporals of the St James’ Palace Detachment New Guard are to report to the Captains and Halt. They are to pay compliments together after which the Senior Corporal is to state:

“SIR, THE SENTRIES HAVE BEEN POSTED PRESENT AND CORRECT.”

The Junior Corporal is to state:

**“SIR, THE ORDER BOARDS AND SENTRY BOXES HAVE BEEN TAKEN OVER
IN GOOD ORDER PRESENT AND CORRECT”.**

They are to pay compliments together, execute a Right Turn and step off together to a position on the right flank of the St James’ Palace Detachment between the Senior Sergeant and the rank and file. The Corporals are not to speak until the paying of compliments has been completed and are not to leave the Captains until the Captain of the New Guard has completed his Salute. On the approach of the Corporals the Senior Sergeant is to come to Attention, Slope Arms and take 2 paces to the right. The Corporal at the rear is then to give the command:

“HALT

SHOULDER ARMS

LEFT DRESS

EYES FRONT

STAND AT EASE

STAND EASY”.

The words of command are to be given quietly so only the Senior Sergeant and other Corporal can hear them. The Senior Sergeant is also to comply with these commands.

The Junior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment Old Guard will call the old Relief, Old Soldier and 2 Corporals out of the Guardroom. (Comprising 3 personnel and 2 Corporals for a Single Relief and 5 Personnel and 2 Corporals for a Double Relief). Giving the words of command:

“OUTSIDE THE BUCKINGHAM PALACE OLD RELIEF”.

The Junior Sergeant is then to inspect the Relief in Close Order for a Single Relief and in Open Order for a Double Relief. He is to move the Relief back into Close Order if it is a Double Relief. He is then to give the command:

**“MOVE TO THE LEFT IN FILE LEFT TURN
BY THE RIGHT QUICK MARCH”.**

The Junior Sergeant is to peel off to the left flank and step out to a position 1 pace in front of the front rank of his advancing Relief in line with the file on the right flank as it advances. As he approaches the Buckingham Palace Detachment he is to give the command:

“BUCKINGHAM PALACE OLD RELIEFS”.

Just as the Old Relief is approximately 2 paces from its sized position the Junior Sergeant is to give the command:

“RELIEF HALT”.

(Immediately on receipt of this word of command the left hand file of personnel for a single relief and, the left hand file and the personnel forming a blank file for a Double relief are to come to Attention).

The Junior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment is then to give the command:

“RIGHT DRESS

EYES FRONT

STAND AT EASE”.

(The left-hand file(s) are to respond to this word of command).

The Senior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment Old Guard is to come to Attention. The Junior Sergeant is to Halt 1 pace in front of the Senior Sergeant with his rifle remaining in the Slope Arms and report that the Old Relief is returned present and correct. The Junior Sergeant is then to step off to his position from which he previously left, 1 pace from the right hand file and give the command:

“RELIEF STAND EASY”.

(The left-hand file (s) are to respond to this word of command).

The Junior Sergeant of the Buckingham Palace Detachment Old Guard is to execute a Left Turn and step off to his position on the left flank of the Buckingham Palace Detachment front rank. Halt, About Turn, Shoulder Arms, adjust his dressing to his left, Stand At Ease and Stand Easy.

The Senior Corporal of the St James’ Palace Detachment Old Guard is to march out of the Guardroom at the Slope Arms, Halt, About Turn and give the command:

“OUTSIDE THE ST JAMES’ PALACE OLD RELIEF”.

The Senior Corporal is to inspect the Relief which comprises, 1 Corporal, 2 relieved Sentries and one Old Soldier for a Single Relief and 1 Corporal, 4 relieved Sentries and 1 Old Soldier for a Double Relief. A Single Relief is inspected in a Single Rank and a Double Relief in Open Order. (The Junior Sergeant of the St James' Palace Detachment Old Guard is to remain in the Guardroom and conduct the hand over to the New Guard. He is to be correctly dressed in Guard Order (or in accordance with the alert state in force) for the hand over. The Squadron WO is to arrange transport to collect the Junior Sergeant when the unit has dismounted Duties).

The Senior Corporal of the St James' Palace Old Relief is to give the command:

**“MOVE TO THE LEFT IN FILE LEFT TURN
BY THE RIGHT QUICK MARCH”.**

When the Old Relief is sighted in the Mall a drummer or trumpeter will report to the Senior Sergeant of the St James' Palace Detachment Old Guard and inform him. The Senior Sergeant is to then come to Attention, take 2 side paces to his right, Slope Arms and march forward 8 paces (7, 1-2), and About Turn to await the arrival of the Old Relief.

The Relief is to step off to the regulation rate of 116 paces to the minute and proceed to the forecourt of Buckingham Palace via Stable Yard Road, through Stable Yard Road gate and the Mall. On arrival at the South centre gate the Senior Corporal of the St James' Palace Old Relief is to give the command:

“RELIEF HALT”

Both Corporals are to pay compliments together. The Senior Corporal is to then give the command:

“RELIEF QUICK MARCH”.

The relief is to step off and form files ready to take a position on the right flank of the St James' Palace Detachment. At approximately half the distance from the St James' Palace Detachment the Senior Corporal is to give the command:

“ST JAMES' PALACE OLD RELIEFS”.

For a Single Relief the first file on the right flank of the Detachment is to brace up, for a Double Relief the first file on the right flank and the blank file is to brace up. As the Old Relief is marched back into position the Senior Corporal is to give the command:

“RELIEF HALT”.

On receipt of this word of command the File(s) on the right flank are to come to Attention.

The Senior Corporal is to remain at the Slope Arms and then give the command:

“RELIEF SHOULDER ARMS

LEFT DRESS

EYES FRONT

STAND AT EASE”.

The file(s) is/are to respond to these words of command.

The Senior Corporal is to then report to the Senior Sergeant who is positioned to the front of the St James’ Palace Detachment on the right flank, Halt and report that the Old Relief is returned present and correct. The Corporal is then to return to his position on the right flank of the Detachment in the rear rank and give the command:

“RELIEF STAND EASY”.

The Senior Corporal is then to Shoulder Arms, Stand At Ease and Stand Easy.

The Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment Old Guard is then to give the command:

“OLD GUARD

OLD GUARD SHUN

TALLEST ON THE FLANKS SHORTEST IN THE CENTRE IN THREE RANKS

SIZE

IN CLOSE ORDER RIGHT DRESS”.

The WO is to march around to a position 5 paces to the right of and facing the front rank and dresses the front rank only. The WO is then to give the command:

“OLD GUARD EYES FRONT”.

The WO is then to return to his position at the rear of and centralised on the Old Guard.

The band will then sound a drum flange, this is the signal for the Old Guard to brace up without any word of command.

The band will then sound another drum flange, which is the signal for the New Guard to brace up without any word of command, and for the officers of both Guards to cease patrolling and return to their respective Guards.

The Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“OLD GUARD SHUN”.

The Captain of the New Guard is to give the command:

“NEW GUARD SHUN”.

The Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“OLD GUARD SLOPE ARMS”.

The Captain of the New Guard is to give the command:

“NEW GUARD SLOPE ARMS”.

The Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“OLD GUARD BY THE RIGHT SLOW MARCH”.

The Captain of the New Guard is to give the command:

“NEW GUARD PRESENT ARMS”.

The Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“DETACHMENTS INTO LINE”.

At a point 2 paces from the right hand pillar of the centre gate the Senior Sergeant of the St James’ Palace Detachment Old Guard is to shout:

“RIGHT SIR”

to the captain to indicate that the Old Guard is in the correct position to execute a Right Form.

Over the next 2 consecutive paces the Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“RIGHT FORM”.

When all forming is complete the WO is to give the command:

“RIGHT SIR”.

The Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“FORWARD”.

As the right boot strikes the ground the officers of the Old Guard are to execute a flourish with the sword turning the head and eyes to the left and return to the Carry over a distance of 9 paces in Slow Time.

At the point where both the detachments of the Old Guard are clear of the centre gate the Captain of the Old Guard is to give the command:

“BREAK INTO QUICK TIME QUICK MARCH”.

When the Colour of the **Old Guard** have passed through the gates of Buckingham Palace they are addressed as **Duties or by unit title** and the **New Guard become Queen’s Guard**.

The Captain of the Queen’s Guard is then to give the command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD SLOPE ARMS

IN CLOSE ORDER RIGHT DRESS”.

The WO is to march to a position 5 paces from the right flank and level with the front rank and adjust the dressing of the front rank only. The WO is then to give the command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD EYES FRONT”.

The WO is to return to his position at the rear of and in the centre of the Guard.

The Captain of the Queen’s Guard is to give the command:

“STAND FAST THE BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT

ST JAMES’ PALACE DETACHMENT MOVE TO THE RIGHT

IN COLUMN OF ROUTE RIGHT TURN”.

After a pause the Captain, Colour Bearer and WO step off together and assume the following positions; the Captain 3 paces in front of the Colour Bearer, the Colour Bearer 3 paces in front of and central to the Detachment and the WO behind the Detachment opening up to a 2 pace distance when the Detachment steps off.

The Captain of the Queen’s Guard is to give the command:

“ST JAMES’ PALACE DETACHMENT BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

As the St James’ Palace Detachment commence the second Left Wheel the Officer Commanding the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to give the command:

“BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT PRESENT ARMS”.

As the St James’ Palace Detachment exit through the centre gates the WO is to give the command:

“OUT ESCORTS”.

The Corporals of the St James Palace Detachment (The Captains Escort) are to adopt the High Port Arms position and double forward 15 paces (14, 1-2), Halt, Slope Arms and step off together in step with the Detachment.

The Officer Commanding the Buckingham Palace Detachment is to give the command:

**“BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT SLOPE ARMS
MOVE TO THE RIGHT IN COLUMN OF ROUTE RIGHT TURN
BY THE LEFT QUICK MARCH”.**

The Buckingham Palace Detachment of the Queen’s Guard are then marched to the Guardroom and dismissed.

The St James’ Palace Detachment is to proceed up the Mall where the WO is permitted to order a Change Arms, the Detachment is then to Right Wheel into Marlborough Road and Right Wheel again into Friary Court. The Corporals are to Mark Time and face in towards each other, stepping off together when they are in line with the Colour Bearer. The St James’ Palace Detachment of the Queens Guard is dismissed to the Guardroom at Friary Court.

Falling in and dismissing from Guardrooms

Falling in

12. The Senior Sergeant of the Guard is to march out at the Slope Arms to a central position, About Turn and Halt. He is then to give the following words of command:

**“OUTSIDE THE ST JAMES’/BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT OF
THE QUEEN’S GUARD”.**

The Guard are to march out of the Guardroom in single file at the High Port Arms position. They are to Halt in files and Shoulder Arms under the control of the personnel at the rear of each file. The Senior Sergeant is then to give the command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD IN OPEN ORDER RIGHT DRESS”.

The Senior Sergeant will adjust the dressing of all three ranks in turn, he will then return to a position 5 paces from the flank of and facing the front rank and give the command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD EYES FRONT”.

The Senior Sergeant is then to return to his position front centre of the Detachment and give the following words of command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD STAND AT EASE STAND EASY”.

The Senior Sergeant is to then Shoulder Arms, Stand At Ease and Stand Easy. As the Officer of the Guard approaches the Senior Sergeant is to come to Attention Slope Arms and give the words of command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD”

“QUEEN’S GUARD SHUN”.

When the Officer Halts in front of him the Senior Sergeant is to salute and state the Guard. The officer is to return the salute and then the Officer accompanied by the Senior Sergeant inspects the Detachment. The Senior Sergeant is to pay compliments to the officer at the rear right flank of the rear rank. The officer and Senior Sergeant step off together and take up position as follows: the officer front and centre of the Detachment and the Senior Sergeant on the right flank of the front rank. The officer is then to give the command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD IN CLOSE ORDER RIGHT DRESS”.

The Senior Sergeant is to execute a Right Turn and march out 5 paces, Halt and About Turn. He is to adjust the dressing of the front rank only and then give the following words of command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD EYES FRONT”.

The Senior Sergeant is then to march back into his position, turn into line and adjust his dressing. If at St James’ Palace the Colour is to be marched on. At the appointed time the officer is to turn the Detachment into column of route and give the words of command:

“ST JAMES’/BUCKINGHAM PALACE DETACHMENT OF THE QUEEN’S GUARD BY THE RIGHT/LEFT QUICK MARCH”.

Dismissing

13. As the Detachment approach the dismissing position the officer is to peel from his position at the front centre of the Detachment and Halt at the central point to where the Detachment will be Halted. The officer is to then give the command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD HALT

QUEEN’S GUARD INTO LINE LEFT/RIGHT TURN”.

If the officer is commanding the St James’ Palace Detachment the Colour will be marched off at this point. The officer is then to give the command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD SHOULDER ARMS SENIOR SERGEANT”.

The Senior Sergeant is to answer by stating:

“SIR!”

He is then to Slope Arms and step off to a position in front of and facing the officer, Halt and pay compliments. The officer is to hand the Detachment to the Senior Sergeant and once clear is to give the command:

“QUEEN’S GUARD SLOPE ARMS

QUEEN’S GUARD TO THE GUARDROOM DISMISS”.

The detachment are to execute a Right Incline, and then on a series of near silent commands from the Senior Sergeant are to Salute and step off together forming a single file and adopting the High Port Arms position with the rifle as they advance. They are to march straight in to the Guardroom.

```

      W                C      C
    XXXXX            XXXXX
    XXXXX            XXXXX
  TXXXXXX +      + XXXXX

      CIC                O

      M

```

Duties formed up ready to step off at Wellington Barracks in line of Detachments.

```

      C      C
    XXXXX
    XXXXX
  +XXXXXX+

      O

      W

    XXXXX
    XXXXX
  TXXXXXX+

      CIC

      M

```

Duties advancing in quick time in Wellington Barracks after the Buckingham Palace Detachment has executed a left turn, in column of Detachments.

LEGEND

M = Captain of the Guard (Squadron Ldr)
O = Officer commanding the Buckingham Palace Detachment (Junior Officer)
I = Colour Bearer
W = WO
T = FS
+ = Sergeant
C = Corporal
X = Personnel of SAC/LAC rank

Positions on Parade

14. Positions on Parade are as shown below:

a. **In Line at Close or Open Order.**

Captain of the Guard	Three paces in front of the right hand file of the St James' Palace Detachment.
Colour Bearer (Ensign)	Three paces in front of the centre of the St James' Palace Detachment.
OC Buckingham Palace	Three paces in front of the centre of the Buckingham Palace Detachment.
Warrant Officer	Three paces to the rear of and central to both Detachments.
Senior Sergeants	On the right of their respective Detachments.
Junior Sergeants	On the left of their respective Detachments.
Corporals of the St James' Palace Detachment	On the right of the Detachment between the Senior Sergeant and the right hand file.
Corporals of the Buckingham Palace Detachment	Between the Junior Sergeant and the left hand file.

b. **In Column of Detachment at Close or Open Order.**

Captain of the Guard	Six paces in front of the centre of the St James' Palace Detachment.
Colour Bearer (Ensign)	Three paces in front of the centre of the St Palace Detachment.
OC Buckingham Palace	Three paces in front of the centre of the Buckingham Palace Detachment.
Warrant Officer	Two paces to the rear of the St James' Palace Detachment.
Senior Sergeants	On the right hand side of their Detachments.
Junior Sergeants	On the left hand side of their Detachments.
Corporals of both outer Detachments	In the rear of their Detachments covering off the files.

Notes regarding the Captains Escort

15. When the Queen's Guard or the St James' Palace Detachment is marching through the streets in Quick Time accompanied by a band, an Escort of two Corporals from the St James' Palace Detachment is to march forward of, and on either side of, the Captain of the Guard to prevent anyone from passing between the band and the remainder of the Guard. No escort is to be provided when the detachment is not accompanied by a band. As described in Guard Mounting in the text above, the escort is to be ordered out by the WO and takes post at the double with rifles at the High Port Arms. Specific places where escorts are to be ordered out and in are:

- a. Passing through the Barrack gate when mounting and dismounting.
- b. Entering or leaving the forecourt of Buckingham Palace.
- c. Entering or leaving Friary Court.